

HOLT



SPOKEN LANGUAGE SERIES

SPOKEN  
FINNISH

UNIVERSITY  
OF FLORIDA  
LIBRARIES



11/57









Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2013

<http://archive.org/details/spokenfinnish00sebe>

# *Spoken Finnish*

---

## BOOK ONE

by THOMAS A. ŠEBEOK<sup>50-463</sup>  
INDIANA UNIVERSITY

---



HENRY HOLT AND COMPANY

The Armed Forces edition of this book was published by the Linguistic Society of America and the Intensive Language Program of the American Council of Learned Societies.

Copyright, 1947, by Linguistic Society of America

47793-0519

No part of the material covered by this copyright may be reproduced in any form without written permission of the publisher.

Printed in the United States of America

## GENERAL FOREWORD

This is one of a series of self-teaching textbooks in more than thirty languages initially prepared and published for the Armed Forces and now offered to the general public. Like every other book in the series, it is the product of team-work between numerous collaborators. The authors of the various books have conformed throughout to the patterns developed by the experience of the group.

A brief review of the origin and growth of the program to produce these texts will not only be of general interest in itself but will also provide some indications of the manner in which they may be most efficiently used as well as some of the limitations of their employment.

Early in 1942, within a month of Pearl Harbor, the Joint Army and Navy Committee on Welfare and Recreation began consideration of the means whereby large numbers of troops might be instructed in the colloquial forms of the numerous languages spoken in the areas in which they were likely to be employed. A survey of materials already available for such instruc-

tion confirmed their suspected inadequacy. Many of the pertinent languages had never been taught in the United States; few of them had ever been studied or described by competent linguists. Only the unusual textbook was designed to teach the spoken forms to linguistically untrained students, and even when a book was available, it was, as often as not, written in French, German, or Dutch, or for some other reason, not susceptible of general use. Consequently, the first necessity was a program of basic implementation which would provide materials, as nearly uniform throughout the various idioms as practicable, for elementary teaching of spoken language to Americans without special linguistic training or, indeed, aptitude. The form of the materials had to be such that they could be used for self-instruction in situations where no competent teachers were available.

There had been little study of most of these languages in America. But the Army and Navy fortunately did not have to start completely from scratch, for several

months previously the American Council of Learned Societies had organized its Intensive Language Program for the purpose of developing teachers, teaching materials, and instruction in all languages not normally taught in the United States, yet likely to be necessary in the war effort. Most of the competent technical linguists in the country were gradually being absorbed into this Intensive Language Program through their membership in the Linguistic Society of America, that constituent of the Council most concerned with this subject-matter. The Joint Army-Navy Committee drew the Intensive Language Program into its deliberations and planned a development of language instruction for the Armed Forces. Responsibility for the prosecution of this development was entrusted to the Army Education Branch of what is now the Information and Education Division, A.S.F., functioning through its subsidiaries, the Language Section and the Editorial Staff of the United States Armed Forces Institute. These in turn called upon the Intensive Language Program of the Council for coöperation in the production of materials, a coöperation which has since been so intimate that it is impossible to tell what proportion of any single operation is the responsibility of each.

The series of more than thirty language textbooks

is one result of this coöperative effort. Each textbook is designed to provide materials for approximately the first two hundred hours of language study. It is divided into thirty learning units, the first twelve of which are accompanied by twenty-four double faced recordings of the foreign language material contained in them. Mastery of the thirty units will give the student not only a sufficient general vocabulary to perform all the language operations necessary for everyday life but enough skill in the manipulation of this vocabulary to provide adequate control of it. It is with respect to this latter—manipulation of the elements known—that most language instruction is weak. While the primary emphasis is upon the spoken tongue, the student should have begun reading well before the conclusion of the thirtieth unit, normally probably at about the twelfth, excepting in those cases where the spoken and the written forms are widely divergent.

The group responsible for the creation of this series believes that ideally one learns a foreign language most efficiently when taught intensively by a bi-lingual trained technical linguist while resident in the country to which the language is native. Since this happy state of affairs hardly ever exists, in practice recourse must be had to various successive approximations to it

approximations in which one or more of the desirable elements is attenuated or entirely wanting. This present series—text and records—is designed to be useful at the very lowest level of language learning, that is to say to the single student working by himself. In this case, the text takes the place of the trained linguist, and the records double for the native-speaker. Naturally, better results are obtained when, either in individual or classroom work, a native-speaker is available and utilized as the texts direct. Here the text takes the place of the trained linguist; the records are still very valuable but not absolutely essential. These latter are the conditions under which the series has most commonly been successfully used. So on for successive approximations to the ideal, and even when this is reached, the selected materials and the pedagogic devices provided by these texts will be useful.

Prosecution of the war created the need for these materials to teach *spoken* language. Perhaps it is not to be assumed that under peacetime conditions the demand for speaking, as against reading or writing, competence will be of the same order. Fortunately the several competences are not incompatible; indeed, a very substantial body of proof exists that the acquisition of spoken competence in a foreign language is the most

efficient first step towards the others. In addition there seems reason to believe that the second-half of the twentieth century will see much increased concern for instruction in *speaking* foreign languages, not only as the road to *reading* them but because the acquisition and the possession of colloquial control of a language not one's own is a humanistic educational experience in its own right not requiring justification by other criteria, because properly taught it is the most easily acquired of the several competences, because the multitude of foreign language broadcasts will dispose of the alleged uselessness of teaching spoken language to students who will never visit the countries in question, and because many more Americans than ever before will exercise their trades and professions abroad.

The coöperative nature of this enterprise can hardly be over-emphasized; not only has practically every listed author coöperated in the production of elements of the series other than his own, but also many of the most valued collaborators do not appear as authors at all. Linguistic scientists provided the descriptive analyses of the several languages; professional language teachers furnished pedagogical devices; specialists in education assisted in ordering the materials in accordance with the best principles of learning; printers, editors, and

textbook designers contributed their specialized competences; technicians in the recording of sound made possible success in the exceedingly exacting operation of keying the records to the printed texts. Under such conditions it would seem almost invidious to cite the names of those collaborators, in addition to authors, whose contributions are more readily identifiable than those of others. Yet for the sake of the record, perhaps this should be done. The Intensive Language Program of the American Council of Learned Societies, without which this series would not have been possible or would have been of completely different character, owes its existence to Mortimer Graves, Administrative Secretary of the Council. Colonel Francis T. Spaulding, Chief of the Army Education Branch above referred to, saw the implications of teaching language to American troops and assumed the responsibility for developing a program to this end. The detailed planning and construction of the series now presented owes more to Major (then Lieutenant) Henry Lee Smith, Jr., Officer in Charge of the Language Section in the Army Education Branch than to anyone else. Constant liaison with the Intensive Language Program was maintained through J Milton Cowan, its director during the preparation of the series. William E. Spaulding directed

the Editorial Staff of the United States Armed Forces Institute. The dean of American linguistic scientists, Leonard Bloomfield of Yale University, gave unstintingly in many ways—ways as difficult to appreciate too highly as they are to describe succinctly. Almost the same may be said of Lt. Morris Swadesh, Lt. Charles Hockett, Robert A. Hall Jr., Norman A. McQuown, Doris Goss: José Padín, and others who served from time to time on a special advisory and editorial board.

The series is offered in the hope that it may modestly conduce to the improvement of teaching the speaking of foreign languages to Americans. The authors make no claim to perfection, indeed they are rather appalled at the task which they set themselves, and their pride in completing it under the existent conditions is tinged with humility at the thought of the imperfections which must sooner or later come to light. But through the discovery of these imperfections will come progress, and nobody will be more greatly pleased than the collaborators on this enterprise if, a decade from now, the teaching of spoken foreign languages in America shall have reached such a developed stage that their first efforts will seem obsolete.



## AUTHOR'S PREFACE

Among my Finnish friends who contributed to this book I should like to thank especially Kerttu Cassen, Margit Gardberg, and Kyllikki Järvi, assistants at Indiana University during the 1943-44 Army Specialized Training Program. They generously worked overtime, night after night, in order to help prepare the text for next day's classes. They tested each unit in contact with the students; their advice was often incorporated in later revisions.

I owe my orientation in the Finnish area to Professor Kosti Arho of Suomi College and to Professor Sven Liljeblad of Harvard University. The changes brought about

by the war since the completion of the work may affect a few of the illustrations, especially in the later units, but they do not affect the principles underlying them.

We are greatly indebted to the Honorable K. T. Jutila, Finnish Minister to the United States, for assistance in making the phonograph recordings to accompany the text. He devoted a week of his valuable time to this exacting task. His understanding of the conditions under which this book was written is illustrated by the remark he made in response to the author's apology for peopling Finland, in one of the units, with American military forces. "They are, of course," he said, "on a good will mission."

Thomas A. Sebeok

*Indiana University*

*23 May 1947*



## INTRODUCTION

**1. What We Are Trying to Do.** This course in spoken Finnish is designed as an introduction to the Finnish language. It contains all the essential grammatical materials for learning to speak everyday Finnish, and its vocabulary, though small, is built around a number of the most useful common situations and current topics. It is based on the principle that you must *hear* a language if you are to understand it when spoken, and that you must practice speaking it in order to master its sounds and forms.

A teacher of Finnish will not always be available for those whom this book is written for. So the course has been made as nearly self-training as possible. This manual covers the course completely and requires no other reference material. It explains in detail what the group is to do, and provides the material to work with.

**2. The Finnish Language** is spoken by about four million people in Finland and in the adjoining regions of the Soviet Union and Scandinavia.

Take advantage of every opportunity to talk Finnish with native speakers. Listen for differences of expressions and pronunciation, and try to imitate

them just as you try to imitate the Finnish speaker in your group.

**3. How to Use This Manual.** To help you in learning to speak Finnish, you need only a native speaker of the language and this book. The two must be used together, and neither one is of any use without the other.

This manual is organized so that it can be used for study by yourself or in a group. The group may or may not have a regular teacher; if you have none, choose one of your own number (called the *Group Leader*) to lead the others and to direct the work.

**4. A Native Speaker** is the only good source of first-hand knowledge of the pronunciation and usage of any language. The method used in this manual requires a native speaker of Finnish, preferably one who can be on hand throughout the course, or next best, the voice of a native speaker recorded on phonograph records which are supplied with this manual. But even when a native speaker is present during the course, the records can always be used for additional practice between the regular meetings of the group.

The native speaker of Finnish is referred to as the Guide. He will give you the Finnish to imitate, and will check your work; but he is *not* the teacher and should not be asked to explain the material. The manual will furnish the explanations, as far as explanations can be given. For the most part, one has to accept languages as they are—what is said is correct, but why it isn't said another way, no one can answer. The Guide should be neither overeducated, nor too uneducated. He should speak naturally and without affectation.

**5. The Book** is divided into parts consisting of five *learning units* and one review unit<sup>1</sup> each. Each unit contains several sections. It is expected that the group will spend about fifty minutes on each section. Some of this time will be spent working individually on the materials, but for the most part the group will meet as a whole with the Leader and the Guide. The time schedule gives only a general idea, since the ability and previous preparation of the group members, the time they have to work by themselves, and other differences of rate of work will largely determine how.

---

<sup>1</sup>The key to the review units, as well as to the *What Would You Say?* exercises in the learning units themselves is published separately for students studying without the benefit of a native speaker.

much time is needed on any part. Here are the main divisions:

- A. Basic Sentences (with Hints on Pronunciation)
- B. Word Study and Review of Basic Sentences
- C. Further Review of Basic Sentences
- D. Listening In
- E. Conversation
- F. Further Conversation

These six sections are followed in each learning unit by a Finder List containing all the new words in the particular unit. Two complete vocabularies, Finnish-English and English-Finnish, are included at the end of this manual.

**6. The Basic Sentences** in each unit are arranged so as to give you a number of new words and a number of new ways of saying things; first broken up into words or short phrases, and then combined in complete sentences. On the printed page, they are presented in parallel columns, with the English equivalents on the left, and the ordinary Finnish spelling on the right.

Always work through the Basic Sentences with the Guide or the phonograph records in the manner described in Unit 1. Never try to read them by yourselves until you have been through it several times with the Guide or records to imitate. You are to learn

these expressions by heart, so the more you concentrate on them in the group, the less work will be left for you to do on your own.

**7. The Hints on Pronunciation** are to help you to speak as nearly as possible like a native Finn. No language has sounds exactly like any other; and in Finnish you will find some sounds that are unlike any in English. The Hints on Pronunciation will point out some of the differences between English and Finnish pronunciation of similar sounds and will tell you something about how to make the unfamiliar sounds. You can then imitate the Guide in special practices on the sounds discussed. These practices will follow the first reading of the Basic Sentences. On the next repetition of the Basic Sentences you can watch for other examples of the sounds practiced.

**8. Pronouncing to be Understood.** Of course the better you can pronounce Finnish, the more easily Finns can understand you. You must get away from your English speech habits as much as possible. The Hints on Pronunciation should help you with the more difficult points, but for the most part you must rely on imitating the speech of the Guide as completely as possible. Some of you will be better mimics than others, but you must all imitate tones of voice, gestures and all other peculiarities of pronunciation that

you can detect. A thorough-going imitation of your Guide will please him with its accuracy rather than offend him. Remember that when you are talking to foreigners, it is the differences between your speech and theirs that seems funny to you; if they imitated your speech more closely, you'd forget that they were foreigners. Put your whole effort into a complete imitation of your Guide, and take advantage of every opportunity to mimic him, either working with the group, or reciting alone.

**9. The Native Speaker is Always Right.** If the manual or the records indicate a pronunciation different from that of your Guide, follow the Guide. No two speakers of any language say exactly the same things in exactly the same way. Your Guide is a native speaker, understood by other speakers of Finnish, and from him you can learn much more about the pronunciation than you can from reading the Hints on Pronunciation or listening to the records. You can watch his lips and facial expressions and gestures as he talks. Use him always as the model for your Finnish.

**10. The Word Study** gives you new uses and new combinations of materials studied up to that point. You are taught how words are built up, so that you can make other forms on the same pattern, and can express more than the set phrases you have memorized.

The phrases you learn are the models used for the Word Study, so that much of the discussion is merely pointing out ways of expression with which you are very likely already familiar.

**11. The Listening In** gives you a number of conversations, anecdotes, or stories, which use the vocabulary and constructions you have learned. No new vocabulary is introduced, but you meet new combinations and can test your understanding of the language by trying to interpret it as the Guide speaks and you repeat after him. The conversations in this section will give you further models for practicing your own conversations.

**12. Conversation** represents the principal aim of the course. You should know by heart all the material of the Basic Sentences, and all the work covered in previous units. Then, when you take part in the conversation, try to talk as easily and naturally as you can, and see how much you can say, how many different things you can talk about, using only the material given so far. It is important especially at the beginning of the course, that you should keep close to the models that you have learned, but change the subject of discussion as much as you can. Do not ask the Guide

for new materials besides those given here. You have enough to learn thoroughly without adding to it.

**13. In Speaking Finnish** do *not* think out what you want to say in English and try to translate it into Finnish. Instead, think in terms of the expressions you have memorized that apply to the situation. Keep the conversation going by asking questions in turn as well as answering them. Avoid long and complicated sentences, or you will find yourself lapsing into English word-order and English habits of speech. Use instead patterns that you are sure of, and try always to think of how the Guide would say them.

When you are talking to a Finn who uses words and expressions that you do not know, try to ask him in Finnish to explain what he means. You will learn more this way. Take advantage of every opportunity during the course and after you have completed it, to talk with speakers of Finnish in their language. Carry along a notebook and jot down new phrases that you want to remember. During spare time waiting for someone, you can review the material. Always listen closely to the pronunciation of native speakers, and imitate them. As soon as you relax and forget to try to talk like them, you will lapse back into the English habits that you have been practicing all your life.

# CONTENTS

## PART ONE

Unit	Basic Sentences	Page	Pronunciation	Page	Word Study	Page
1.	Greetings and Simple Phrases. Directions. Designation. Foods. Price. Time. Numbers.	1	Pronunciation of the eight vowels. Short and long vowels. The sounds <i>ä, ää, y, ö.</i>	12		
2.	Meeting People.....	25	Double vowels. The sounds <i>ö, y, u.</i> Vowel groups.	32	Vowel harmony. Question suffix.	34
3.	What's Your Trade?....	46	Double consonants. Aspiration. The sounds <i>p, t, k.</i>	52	The suffixes <i>-mpi; -in; -ssa.</i>	54
4.	Where Are You From?..	65	The sounds <i>h, m</i> and <i>n</i> , and the combinations <i>nk, ng.</i>	70	Numbers from 11 up. The possessive suffixes. The suffixes <i>-lle; -sta.</i>	72
5.	Let's Talk About the Weather.	83	The sounds <i>d, v, l, r.</i>	90	Noun stems. The suffixes <i>-t; -n</i> (object relation); <i>-lta.</i> Summary of comments, units 1-5.	92
6.	Review.....	102				

## PART TWO

Unit	Basic Sentences	Page	Pronunciation	Page	Word Study	Page
7.	A Place to Live . . . . .	110	How to pronounce <i>tervetuloa</i> and <i>kolmekymmentä</i> . The sounds <i>s, j</i> . Foreign consonants: <i>b, f</i> , etc. Consonant groups: Table One.	117	Noun stem type II. Numeral stems. Personal verb suffixes.	120
8.	Sprucing Up . . . . .	131	Double consonants: <i>tt, kk, mm, nn, rr, ll, ss</i> . The letter ' '. Pronunciation of the catch. Substitutions for the catch.	137	Consonant stems. Verb stems (type I).	140
9.	Let's Eat . . . . .	151	Consonant groups with <i>h</i> . Vowel groups: Table Two. Double vowels: <i>ii, ee, ää, yy, uu, oo, aa</i> . Rise in pitch.	158	The <i>-(t)a</i> suffix and when to use it. Verb stems (type II).	161
10.	Seeing the Sights . . . . .	171	Combinations of three consonants: <i>ntt, nkk, rkk</i> . Vowel groups: vowel plus <i>i</i> ; vowel plus <i>u</i> ; vowel combinations.	177	The plural marker <i>-i-</i> . The verb suffix <i>-(s)i</i> . Automatic changes with <i>-i-</i> . The suffix <i>-ksi</i> . Stem of <i>puhelin</i> .	179



# PART TWO—*Continued*

Unit	Basic Sentences	Page
------	-----------------	------

11.	<b>Shopping.</b> Names of the Months. Days of the Week. Numbers. Dates.	189
-----	---	-----

12.	<b>Review</b> .....	211
-----	---------------------	-----

Pronunciation
---------------

Page
------

Word Study
------------

Page
------

More about numbers: abbreviated forms; ordinal numbers; multiplication; fractions. Time and dates. The suffix <i>-lla</i> . Some automatic consonant changes. Verb stems (type <b>II</b> , cont.). Summary of comments, units 1-11.	199
---	-----



## GREETINGS AND SIMPLE PHRASES

*To the Group Leader:* Each *Unit* of this course is divided into six *Sections*. It is suggested that the group spend not less than fifty minutes on each *Section*.

Before you get the group together to work on this first unit, read carefully the following material up to the heading *Useful Words and Phrases*, on page 2. When the group meets, read the material aloud to them or have some other member of the group do the reading. The students will follow the reading with their books open. Be sure that your Guide, or the phonograph and records, are ready before the Group meets for work on Section A. See that the Guide is supplied with a copy of the manual, *Ohjeita Kielenopastajalle*, which tells him just what he is to do and gives him the Finnish he is to speak to the group.

You should look through all of the sections of the unit, reading the directions carefully, so that you will have in mind the general plan of the work. Always get clearly in mind the directions for a section before you take that section up in group meeting.

This unit gives you the most immediate and necessary expressions that you will need in meeting people, asking your way, buying things, and counting. You will find that it is no easy matter to master all these words and phrases, but you will succeed if you really concentrate and follow instructions carefully. The amount of learning and memorizing required for this

first unit is considerably greater than that of any later unit. The reason you are given such a large dose at the start is that this unit is a kind of "language first aid" which gives you enough useful expressions to enable you to make your ordinary wants known and to carry on a simple conversation in Finnish from the very start.

## SECTION A—USEFUL WORDS AND PHRASES

In the list of *Useful Words and Phrases* which follows, the English equivalent of these words and phrases is given at the left of the page. Opposite is the Finnish. The Leader of the group will first read the English equivalent and pause for the Guide to speak the Finnish. Every member of the group then repeats after the Guide, imitating his pronunciation as closely as possible. The Guide will then say the Finnish a second time and everybody will repeat after him as before. The Leader will then read the next English equivalent and the Guide and group will follow the procedure indicated.

If no Guide is available, the phonograph records provided for the course should be used. When the group is ready, the Leader will begin playing the appropriate record and the group will repeat right after the Finnish speaker during the silences in the record. The phonograph records can be used with profit even in cases in which a Guide is available. They can be heard between meetings of the group, whenever it is convenient; they furnish additional practice in hearing Finnish; you may listen only to those portions which you have found difficult; and the records may be played as often as you wish. If the speaker on the records had a Finnish pronunciation different from that of your Guide, use the records only

for listening and understanding, and not for imitating.

Whether you are working with a Guide or only with the phonograph records, you must repeat each Finnish word and phrase in a loud, clear voice, trying at all times to imitate the pronunciation as closely as you can. Keep constantly in mind the meaning of the Finnish you are about to hear. When you are hearing the Finnish, keep your eyes on the Finnish spelling. This will help you catch on to the pronunciation. *But whenever the written form seems to you to differ from the spoken sound, follow the spoken sound always.*

Learning to understand and pronounce a language is not really hard. Every one of us learned to do this as a child, and all over the world children learn to speak all kinds of languages without any trouble. The difficulty an adult faces in learning a foreign language, as you are now learning Finnish, is that the adult already has a set of habits for pronouncing his own language, and this makes it harder for him to learn new ones than for a child who is starting from scratch. That is why it is so important that you should not be afraid of mimicking, even when what you hear may sound strange to you. Don't be afraid to let yourself go. You will never learn to speak a language if you don't plunge right in as soon as you can. Never mind if you do make mistakes at first. You will in any case. But

the important thing is for you to try to say the words and phrases. Imitate your Guide with the same spirit and enthusiasm you use in mimicking a person whose speech sounds peculiar to you. You will find that if you do this your Guide will not think you are making fun of him; instead, he will probably smile because what you have said sounds to him like Finnish.

In the first five units do not attempt under any circumstances to pronounce the Finnish before you have heard it. You will only make trouble for yourself if you try to guess the pronunciation by "reading" the spelling of the Finnish. Always wait until the Guide or phonograph record is ready before you begin your first work with the words and phrases.

If you are working with a Guide who does not understand English, ask the Leader of your group to tell you what hand signals to use to let the Guide know when you want him to read more slowly or to repeat.

The procedure to be followed is to listen to and then repeat the words and phrases with your book open. Listen and imitate carefully, and always try to keep in mind the meaning of the Finnish you are hearing and pronouncing. You will learn fastest if, when your book is open, you follow these steps:

1. Keep your eyes on the spelling as you listen carefully to the Finnish being spoken.
2. Repeat immediately what you have heard, imitat-

ing as closely as you can and saying it loud and clear.

3. Keep in mind the meaning of what you are saying. Remember, it is not just a noise, but something that can be understood by some three and a half million people.

Begin the words and phrases as soon as your Guide is ready or when the Leader of your groups is ready to play the first phonograph record.

*To the Group Leader:* Give the members of the group a chance to ask questions about the instructions. Make sure that everyone understands just what he is to do. Then have the students go through the list of *Useful Words and Phrases* once with books open, repeating in unison after the Guide.

Now go through the list a second time, just as you did before. And, finally, go through it a third time, but let the students take turns repeating individually after the Guide—a sentence to each student. Indicate the order in which the repetitions are to go, who is first, who next, and so on. Continue this individual repetition for the whole 50-minute period. Then, just before dismissing the group, read with them the paragraph headed *Check Yourself* on page 6.

Here are some hints that will help make the work of the group more effective:

1. Insist that everyone speak up. Don't allow any mumbling! Each member of the group must be able to hear what is being said at all times.
2. Indicate to the Guide that he is to repeat whenever the pronunciation is bad and to keep on repeating until he gets a pronunciation that sounds like Finnish.

3. Urge everyone to mimic to the limit every sound, every inflection, even the mannerisms of the Guide.
4. Keep the work moving. Don't let it drag at any time. See that everyone is listening, not only to the Guide, but to himself and to the others as they repeat after the Guide.
5. Go through all the work yourself. Repeat with the others

and take your turn at the individual repetitions. Remember that you are a student, too. Speak right up with the rest of them.

*Note on the Records:* The speaker on the records is Dr. K. T. Jutila, who is at present (1946) the Finnish Minister to the United States.

## 1. Useful Words and Phrases.

Here is a list of useful words and phrases you will need in Finnish. *You should learn these by heart.* Pay special attention to the difference between single and double vowel sounds, and between single and double consonant sounds.

### Greetings and General Phrases

Record 2B, after space

#### ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS

Good morning!

Good day!

Good-bye!

how

you

How are you?

thank you

I

I'm well

Thank you, I'm well.

4 [1-A]

#### FINNISH

*Hyvää huomenta.*

*Hyvää päivää.*

*Hyvästi.*

*kuinka*

*te*

*Kuinka te voitte?*

*kiitos*

*minä*

*minä voin hyvin*

*Kiitos, minä voin hyvin.*

Please *or* you're welcome.  
Excuse me!  
It doesn't matter!  
Yes.  
No.  
O.K. *or* fine.  
I understand.  
Yes, I understand.  
I don't understand.  
    what  
    say  
What did you say?  
    speak  
    more slowly  
Please speak more slowly.  
    do you speak?  
    English  
Do you speak English?  
    gentleman *or* Mister  
Mr. Toivonen.

*Olkaa hyvä.*  
*Anteeksi.*  
*Ei ansaitse!*  
*Kyllä.*  
*Ei.*  
*Hyvä on.*  
*Minä ymmärrän.*  
*Kyllä, minä ymmärrän.*  
*En ymmärrä.*  
    *mitä*  
    *sanotte*  
*Mitä te sanotte? or Mitä sanotte?*  
    *puhukaa*  
    *hitaammin*  
*Olkaa hyvä, puhukaa hitaammin.*  
    *puhutteko*  
    *englantia*  
*Puhutteko (te)<sup>1</sup> englantia?*  
    *herra*  
*Herra Toivonen.*

---

<sup>1</sup>Finnish sounds or words in parentheses in this unit may be omitted in colloquial speech.

Mrs.  
Mrs. Toivonen.

Miss  
Miss Toivonen.

where  
is  
the restaurant  
Where's the restaurant?

After you have gone through the *Useful Words and Phrases*, go through them again with your book open, following the same procedure as before. Repeat each word and phrase in a loud voice, immediately after hearing it. Let yourself go and say the phrases right out.

Go through the *Useful Words and Phrases* once more with your book open, but this time take turns letting each member of your group repeat individually until everybody has taken part. Remember that this is your first solo performance, so keep on the alert. If the Guide asks you to repeat, do so with enthusiasm and try to mimic him as best you can until he is satisfied with your pronunciation. When you have satisfied him, you can be sure that you are speaking understandable Finnish. Continue this individual repetition as long as time permits. If you are using only the phonograph records, your Leader will see to it that you

*rouva*  
*Rouva Toivonen.*

*neiti*  
*Neiti Toivonen.*

*missä*  
*on*  
*ravintola*  
*Missä on ravintola? or Miss on ravintola?*

repeat and that everyone gets the most out of this individual performance.

## 2. Check Yourself

Did you go through the *Useful Words and Phrases* at least twice in unison and at least once more individually?

Did you repeat each word and phrase in a loud, clear voice immediately after hearing it?

Did you follow the pronunciation you heard?

Did you keep in mind the meaning of each word and phrase as you heard and spoke the Finnish?

If you have failed at any point to carry out the instructions, go over the *Useful Words and Phrases* once again as soon as you can, being careful to follow every step in the procedure outlined.



## SECTION B—USEFUL WORDS AND PHRASES (*Cont.*)

Here are other useful words and phrases which you will want to use immediately if you are in a country where Finnish is spoken. These are being given to you as a "language first aid." *Learn them by heart.*

In working with this material, follow the same pro-

cedure you used with the *Useful Words and Phrases* in Section A. After you have gone through the list once, repeating in unison, read the *Hints on Pronunciation* which follow. Then go through the list a second and a third time, as in Section A.

### 1. Useful Words and Phrases (*Cont.*)

#### Record 3A, beginning

hotel  
Where's the hotel?  
I'm looking for  
some hotel  
I'm looking for the hotel.  
the station  
Where's the station?  
the toilet  
Where's the toilet?

*hotelli*  
*Miss(ä) on hotelli?*  
*etsin*  
*hotellia*  
*Minä etsin hotellia.*  
*asema*  
*Miss(ä) on asema?*  
*käymälä*  
*Miss(ä) on käymälä?*

#### Directions

To the right.  
it  
It's to the right.

*Oikealle.*  
*se*  
*Se on oikealle.*

To the left.  
It's to the left.  
    straight  
    ahead  
Straight ahead.  
Here.  
There.

*Vasemmalle.*  
*Se on vasemmalle.*  
    *suoraan*  
    *eteenpäin*  
*Suoraan eteenpäin.*  
*Täällä.*  
*Tuolla.*

#### Designation

    this  
What's this?  
Where's that?  
    this  
    in Finnish  
How do you say this in Finnish?  
    you want  
What do you want?  
    I want  
    some cigarettes  
I want some cigarettes.  
    some matches  
I want some matches.

*tämä*  
*Mitä tämä on?*  
*Missä se on?*<sup>2</sup>  
    *tämän*  
    *suomeksi*  
*Kuinka (te) sanotte tämän suomeksi?*  
    *haluatte*  
*Mitä te haluatte?*  
    *haluan*  
    *savukkeita*  
*Minä haluan savukkeita.*  
    *tulitikkua*  
*Minä haluan tulitikkua.*

---

<sup>2</sup>The record says *mitä* for *missä* here. This is an error.

word  
is pronounced  
How do you pronounce this word?

I should like  
to buy  
I'd like to buy.

to eat  
I'd like to eat.

I want  
some bread  
some meat  
some potatoes  
some milk  
some beer  
Do you want some coffee?

I want some milk.  
right here  
Here it is.

give  
to me  
some water  
I lease give me some water.

*sana*  
*äännetään*  
*Kuinka tämä sana äännetään?*

*haluaisin*  
*ostaa*  
*Minä haluaisin ostaa.*

*syödä*  
*Minä haluaisin syödä.*

## Foods

*Minä haluan*  
*leipää*  
*lihaa*  
*perunoita*  
*maitoa*  
*olutta*  
*Haluatteko te kahvia?*

*Minä haluan maitoa.*

*tässä*  
*Tässä se on.*

*antakaa*  
*minulle*  
*vettä*  
*Olkaa hyvä, antakaa minulle vettä.*

## Price

how much  
costs  
How much is this?

much  
you want  
How much do you want?

many  
How many do you want?

### Record 3B, beginning

too  
expensive  
It's too expensive.

cheap  
This is cheap.

some marks  
six  
It's six marks.

cheaper  
Give me the cheaper one.

very  
Very expensive.

10 [1-B]

*paljonko  
maksaa  
Paljonko tämä maksaa?*

*paljon  
tahdotte  
Kuinka paljon (te) tahdotte?*

*monta  
Kuinka monta te tahdotte?*

*liian  
kallis  
Se on liian kallis.*

*halpa  
Tämä on halpa.*

*markkaa  
kuusi  
Se on kuusi markkaa.*

*halvempi  
Antakaa minulle halvempi.*

*hyvin  
Hyvin kallis.*

it *or* its  
price  
ten  
some pennies  
It's (price is) ten pennies.

*sen*  
*hinta*  
*kymmenen*  
*penniä*  
*Sen hinta on kymmenen penniä.*

### Time

time *or* watch  
What time is it?  
three  
It's three o'clock.  
At what time?  
two  
At two.  
when  
train  
arrives  
When does the train arrive?  
four  
At four.  
leaves  
When does the train leave?  
five  
At five.

*kello*  
*Mitä kello on?*  
*kolme*  
*Kello on kolme.*  
*Mihin aikaan?*  
*kaksi or kaks*  
*Kahdelta.*  
*koska*  
*juna*  
*saapuu*  
*Koska juna saapuu?*  
*neljä*  
*Neljältä.*  
*lähtee*  
*Koska juna lähtee?*  
*viisi or viis*  
*Viideltä.*

movies  
they begin  
When does the movie begin?

*elokuvat*  
*alkavat*  
*Koska elokuvat alkavat?*

### Additional Numbers

One  
Seven  
Eight  
Nine  
Hundred  
Thousand  
and  
Two and two are four.  
Three and five are eight.

*Yksi* or *yks*  
*Seitsemän*  
*Kahdeksan*  
*Yhdeksän*  
*Sata*  
*Tuhat*  
*ja*  
*Kaksi ja kaksi on neljä.*  
*Kolme ja viisi on kahdeksan.*

## 2. Hints on Pronunciation

*To the Group Leader:* Read over with the group the following *Hints on Pronunciation*. Let different members of the group illustrate the proper sounds by reading the Finnish examples of sounds and groups of sounds. Take time to discuss these hints and make sure that everyone understands them. You will find each example on the phonograph records. Between each set of examples ("Practices") there is a clear space of record or *spiral*, so that you can play each set as often as necessary.

The pronunciation of Finnish does not involve any great difficulties. This, of course, does not mean that you can use English sounds in Finnish words and expect to be understood. But you will find that many of the sounds are sufficiently similar to your own so that you will have practically no difficulty with them. However, there are some Finnish sounds that are

different from anything in English. For that reason you must listen carefully and try hard to imitate your Guide. If you do this and follow the *Hints on Pronunciation* which will be given to you from time to time, you will be able to pronounce Finnish so that you can be readily understood.

### Record 1A, beginning

<i>Letter</i>	<i>Stands for</i>
<i>a</i>	a sound like <i>a</i> in <i>father</i> , but very short
<i>e</i>	a sound like <i>e</i> in <i>let</i>
<i>i</i>	a sound like <i>i</i> in <i>pink</i>
<i>o</i>	a sound like <i>o</i> in <i>note</i> , but very short
<i>u</i>	a sound like <i>oo</i> in <i>cool</i> , but very short

The important thing to remember about these five vowels is this: be sure at all times to pronounce them quite short; if you fail to do this, you may be misunderstood. The reason for this is that in Finnish each of these vowels may occur long (written by repeating the letter—*aa*, *ee*, *ii*, *oo*, *uu*), and when this happens, the word means something totally different. (Thus, while *te* means 'you,' *tee* means 'tea'; *maksa* means 'liver,' *maksaa* means 'costs'; *tuli* means 'fire,' *tuuli* means 'wind.')

In Finnish writing one letter stands generally for one and only one sound. There are eight vowel letters, each of which has approximately the same value. Five of them are quite easy:

### PRACTICE 1

<i>asema</i>	(station)
<i>te</i>	(you)
<i>minä</i>	(I)
<i>on</i>	(is)
<i>tuhat</i>	(thousand)

### PRACTICE 2

#### Record 1A, after first spiral

<i>ostaa</i>	to buy
<i>anteeksi</i>	I beg your pardon
<i>kiitos</i>	thanks
<i>kuusi</i>	six
<i>saapuu</i>	arrives

The letter *ä* may look somewhat unusual to you. It actually stands for a sound you have in English *hat*;

only, in pronouncing it, you should open your mouth somewhat wider and lower the flat of your tongue slightly.

### PRACTICE 3

Record 1A, after second spiral

*minä*  
*missä*  
*tämä*

Now try *ää*:

I  
where  
this

### PRACTICE 4

Record 1A, after third spiral

*äännetään*  
*täällä*

is pronounced  
here

In a number of expressions you have heard and imitated, you have doubtless noticed that there are some vowel sounds which are like nothing we have in English. Be careful not to substitute ordinary English sounds for these foreign sounds; in order to make the necessary distinctions between words, you must master the foreign sounds.

In Finnish there is a sound which is indicated in spelling by the letter *y*. To the English-speaking person, this sound seems to be somewhere between the

sound of *ou* (as in *group*) and of *ee* (as in *beet*); and, in fact, this new sound is like both. Pronounce *ee* as in *beet*; now, without moving your tongue from the position which it is in while you say *ee*, round your lips and push them out far—and pronounce the Finnish *y* sound. Practice this in the following words:

### PRACTICE 5

Record 1A, after fourth spiral

*kymmenen*  
*yksi*

ten  
one

There is another sound in Finnish, represented by *ö*, which is pronounced somewhat in the same way as *y*; but your jaw should be more relaxed, your mouth more open, and the tip of your tongue farther down, away from the roof of your mouth and behind the bottom teeth. Put your tongue in position to make a sound like *e* of *let*; now, without moving your tongue from the position which it is in while you say *e*, round your lips. With your tongue and lips in this position, you can make the Finnish *ö*-sound.

### PRACTICE 6

Record 1A, after fifth spiral

*syäädä, syödä*

to eat



In saying the last word, be sure to pronounce every one of the vowels: *sy-ö-dä*.

In Finnish, every word uttered in isolation is accented on the first syllable. In a phrase or sentence some words have no accent at all, but the ones which do are always stressed on their first syllable.

Before you leave this section, be sure you know how to pronounce the vowels here listed and explained. Of course, you will have plenty of opportunity to practice them as the course progresses, but if you are in doubt about any of them, *ask for aid right now*.

## SECTION C—REVIEW OF USEFUL WORDS AND PHRASES

If your group has time for outside assignments, sections marked *Individual Study* may be done between meetings of the group. Otherwise use them as independent study during a group meeting.

### 1. Covering the English (Individual Study)

Go back to the *Useful Words and Phrases* in Sections A and B. Cover up the English. Read the Finnish aloud. Keep your voice down if you are working with the rest of the group. Follow your Guide's pronunciation as nearly as you can remember, and test yourself to see if you can recall the meaning of each word and

### 3. Check Yourself

Did you keep in mind the meaning of each word and phrase as you heard and spoke the Finnish?

If you have failed at any point to carry out the instructions, go over the *Useful Words and Phrases* once again as soon as you can, being careful to follow every step in the procedure outlined.

phrase. Check the expressions you are not sure about, and after you have gone through the whole list, uncover the English and find their meaning. Repeat this procedure at least three times or until you are satisfied that you know every expression.

### 2. Review of Useful Words and Phrases

*To the Group Leader:* Read again for your information the numbered suggestions just preceding *Useful Words and Phrases* on pages 3-4. Your Guide has been directed in his manual to pay particular attention to the correct pronunciation of vowels. He may ask members of the group to repeat words or phrases a good many times in an effort to get a pronuncia-

tion that is more nearly correct. See that they listen closely, that they repeat promptly and loud enough so that everyone can hear them, and that they imitate the Guide to the last detail.

Go through the *Useful Words and Phrases* in *Sections A* and *B* twice. The first time, have the members of the group repeat individually after the Guide with books open. The second time, have them close their books. The Guide will give each Finnish expression twice, as before. Let the students take turns giving the English equivalent the first time they hear the Guide speak the Finnish and repeating the Finnish as usual the second time. This will help them to check on the meaning of all Finnish expressions in *Useful Words and Phrases*.

Go back to the *Useful Words and Phrases* in *Sections A* and *B*. The first time you go through the list, take

turns repeating the Finnish after the Guide. Keep your book open, and get all the help you can from the *Hints on Pronunciation*. Pay particular attention to what you have learned about the pronunciation of the vowels. Make every effort to satisfy your Guide with your pronunciation.

The second time you go through the list, check up on the meaning of the Finnish. Keep your books closed and take turns giving the English equivalent the first time you hear the Finnish expression and repeating the Finnish as usual the second time. If you have any trouble with the English, you should find time for more individual study of the *Useful Words and Phrases*, covering the English and checking up on the meaning when you read the Finnish.

## SECTION D—LISTENING IN

*To the Group Leader:* The conversations which appear in this section will be read to the group by the Guide or played on the phonograph records. English equivalents are omitted from the *Listening In* material so that students can get practice in understanding spoken Finnish which uses the vocabulary they know. Meaning, therefore, is to be emphasized.

The first time you go through the conversations, have the Guide repeat a conversation, if necessary to help clear up meaning, before you go on to the next conversation. If you have no Guide, lift the needle of the phonograph at the end of each conversation and let the students discuss the meaning of any sentences that are not understood.

Go through the conversations a second time without stopping. Pay about equal attention to pronunciation and meaning.

Finally, assign parts and have the students read the conversations. Give everyone a chance. Suggest that the actors actually take the parts, stand up and move around, sit at a table in the restaurant, stand behind the counter in the store, etc. Keep it moving. Get everyone to speak up! Take a part yourself.

Keep your book closed while the Guide reads the following conversations and repeat after him. If you have no Guide, you should use the phonograph records, repeating the Finnish immediately after you hear it. At the end of each conversation take time out to check up on the meaning of what you have heard and said. Ask someone in the group to give you the English equivalent of any expression you do not understand. If necessary, go back to the *Useful Words and Phrases* to find the meaning. Almost all the words and the expressions you have had in *Useful Words and Phrases* occur in the following conversations.

### Record 3B, after spiral

#### I. Asking Information

*John*

*Anteeksi,  
missä on ravintola?*

*Herra Toivonen*

*Suoraan eteenpäin.*

*John*

*Minä en ymmärrä.  
Olkaa hyvä,  
puhukaa hitaammin.*

<sup>3</sup>The record makes a mistake here.

*Herra Toivonen*

*Tämä on asema.*

*Hotelli on vasemmalle.*

*Suoraan eteenpäin on ravintola.*

*John*

*Kiitos, minä ymmärrän.<sup>3</sup>*

*Herra Toivonen*

*Hyvä on.*

*Hyvästi.*

### Record 4A, beginning

#### II. In the Restaurant

*Neiti*

*Hyvää iltaa.*

*John*

*Hyvää iltaa.*

*Minä haluaisin syödä.*

*Olkaa hyvä, antakaa minulle vettä.*

*Neiti*

*Kyllä.*

*Haluatteko te kahvia?*

*Ei kiitos.*  
*Minä haluan maitoa.*

*John*

*Mitä te tahdotte syödä?*

*Neiti*

*Minä haluaisin lihaa,  
perunoita ja leipää.  
Paljonko tämä maksaa?*

*John*

*Kymmenen markkaa  
ja viisi penniä.*

*Neiti*

*Minä haluaisin ostaa savukkeita.  
Olkaa hyvä, antakaa minulle tulitikkuja.*

*John*

*Tässä on.*

*Neiti*

*Kiitos.*  
*Neiti, mihin aikaan elokuvat alkavat?*

*John*

*Elokuvat alkavat viideltä.*

*Neiti*

*Mitä kello on?*

*John*

*Kello on neljä.*

*Neiti*

*Kiitos.*

*John*

*Ei ansaitse!*

*Neiti*

*Hyvästi.*

*John*

## 2. Check Yourself

Is there any expression in any of these conversations that you do not understand now? If there is, find the meaning of it or ask other members of your group before you proceed. If no one knows, refer to the *Useful Words and Phrases*.

Go through the conversations once more, following the same plan as before. Imitate carefully and be sure to keep in mind the English equivalent of everything you are saying in Finnish.

Finally, go through the conversations again, but this time take turns. The Leader will assign parts and the exercise is to continue at least until everyone has

had a chance to speak one of the parts. Keep this going as long as you have time. Remember that this is another solo performance and that you are to get the most out of it. When your turn comes, speak

clearly and with enthusiasm. Put yourself in the situation and let yourself go. If the Guide asks you to repeat, do so until he is satisfied with your pronunciation.

## SECTION E—CONVERSATION

### 1. Covering the Finnish (Individual Study)

Go back to the *Useful Words and Phrases* in Sections A and B. Cover up the Finnish. Read the English silently and test yourself to see if you can speak the Finnish for each word and phrase. Check the expressions you are uncertain about and after you have gone through the whole list, uncover the Finnish and review them. Go through the list once more and continue for at least three times or until you can give the Finnish readily for all the expressions. To make sure of this, pick out expressions at random and see if you can speak out the Finnish quickly. Speak the Finnish aloud and try to imitate your Guide's pronunciation as well as you can remember it.

### 2. Vocabulary Check-Up

*To the Group Leader:* Go to the *Useful Words and Phrases* in Sections A and B. Read to the group the English equivalent of the Finnish expressions. Call on different students (not

in any fixed order) asking for the correct Finnish for the English.

For instance, say to A, "*Kuinka te sanotte tämän suomeksi: Where's the restaurant?*" The students are to respond with their books closed. The Guide will indicate by a negative sign whenever he hears a Finnish expression that is wrong, or, if there is no Guide, the other members of the group will indicate that they do not agree. Immediately ask someone else to give the expression correctly. Any group member who has difficulty in giving the correct Finnish should be told to review the *Useful Words and Phrases* thoroughly before the next meeting of the group. Do not spend any time talking about the *Why* of the Finnish; stick to the *How*.

There are two precautions which the Leader must observe in all exercises of this sort and in the conversation practice throughout the course. Be sure that everyone understands them. They are as follows:

1. Every Finnish expression must be given smoothly and completely before the student's performance can be considered satisfactory. If there is an error in the first attempt, ask the student to give the expression over again in complete form. If he fumbles badly, turn to someone else.
2. Everyone must speak loud enough, so that all can hear.

Every student should be encouraged to call out "Louder, please!" if he can't hear. Check on this occasionally by pointing to the student who is listening to someone else's Finnish and asking "What did he say?"

If you do not observe these precautions, much time and effort may be wasted in group meetings.

In this section you are going to have your first chance to engage in conversation in Finnish. This, of course, is the most useful part of the entire unit and the part you should do with the greatest amount of pep and realism. Do it half-heartedly and you lose most of the value of the unit. Do it earnestly and enthusiastically and you will find that you can really say a great many things in Finnish, fluently and correctly. Read the instructions carefully, get everything you are to do straight in your mind, and then plunge in.

In order to fix in your mind the expressions you will need in the conversation, check yourself on your ability to speak the Finnish you have learned. By now you should not have to grope for it. The Leader of the group will ask you to supply in turn the Finnish expressions for the English equivalents which he reads from the *Useful Words and Phrases*. If you have done a thorough job of recalling the Finnish when you are looking only at the English equivalents, as suggested in Section E, you will have no difficulty in responding promptly and smoothly when you hear the English.

Your Guide will let you know if your Finnish expressions are not correct. If you have no Guide, the members of the group should be ready to correct faulty expressions.

### 3. Conversation

*To the Group Leader:* Read the following directions with the class. Encourage the students to strike out for themselves. Spend all the time you can on free conversation practice in an effort to get to the point where students can speak easily and smoothly with a minimum of *ums* and *ers*.

The Leader will assign parts and will ask you to take turns in pairs, carrying on the following conversations. The two persons who are talking together should stand up and act out their parts, speaking as smoothly and naturally as possible. Make it real and get some fun out of it. The Guide will help you if your Finnish is wrong or if your pronunciation is bad. The Leader will prompt you if you are not sure what comes next in your part.

#### I. Getting Directions

A approaches a stranger, B, and asks him for information.

1. A apologizes for speaking to B and asks him where there is (a) a restaurant, (b) a railroad station or (c) a hotel.

2. *B* gives *A* directions (a) to the right, (b) to the left or (c) straight ahead.
3. *A* apologizes again, explains that he does not understand, and asks *B* if he will please speak slowly.
4. *B* repeats slowly and clearly.
5. *A* says he understands. He adds he would like to buy cigarettes and matches.
6. *B* again gives directions.
7. *A* thanks *B*.
8. *B* says that *A* is welcome.

## II. At a Restaurant

*C* sits down at a table in a restaurant and is waited on by *D*.

1. *D* says (a) good morning, or (b) good day to *C* and asks how *C* is.

2. *C* says, thanks, he's well; he asks after *D*'s health.
3. *D* is also well and asks what *C* would like.
4. *C* orders a meal—he wants meat and potatoes and bread.
5. *D* asks if he wants coffee.
6. *C* says he wants beer.
7. After eating, *C* asks for some water and asks how much it all costs.
8. *D* says that it costs nine marks ten cents.
9. *C* thanks *D* and says good-bye.

If it is desired, particularly when the group is too large to give everybody a chance to participate in the conversation, the exercise may be continued for a generous length of time. It is also a good practice to give people who are having difficulties a second trial.

## SECTION F—CONVERSATION (*Cont.*)

*To the Group Leader:* You can tell from the work that you did on conversation in *Section E* whether or not the group needs to spend more time in preparing for successful conversation. If necessary, spend the first part of this section in individual study, having members of the group say the Finnish of the *Useful Words and Phrases* when they have the English expressions covered. Check up on their vocabulary as in *Section E*. Then continue the work with conversation which you started in *Section E*.

In this section you are to continue taking part in conversations. If the work didn't go well in *Section E*, take time to go through the *Useful Words and Phrases* again with the English covered and to give the Finnish of the English expressions as your Leader asks for it.

Put everything you can into the conversations. Act your part; don't hesitate to talk for fear of making a mistake. You'll make plenty of mistakes at first, but the important thing is to practice talking. You can't correct an error until you have made it.

Try out your Finnish whenever you get a chance. Don't wait for meetings of the group to practice what you have learned. Pair off between meetings and see what you can do with Finnish greetings and conversation. When you are alone, run over the list of Finnish expressions you know. Review them in your mind. Try saying them. See how much you can improve your pronunciation and control of the language in whatever time you can find between meetings of the group. Make this a regular practice throughout the course.

#### Finder List<sup>4</sup>

alkavat

they begin

<sup>4</sup>Note on the Finnish alphabet: the Finnish alphabet is similar to the English, but note that the letter *y* is followed by the letter *ä*, which is followed by the letter *ö*.

*antakaa  
anteeksi  
asema*

give  
excuse me  
station

*ei  
ei ansaitse  
elokuvat  
englantia  
en ymmärrä  
eteenpäin  
etsin*

no  
it doesn't matter  
movies  
English  
I don't understand  
ahead  
I'm looking for

*halpa  
haluaisin  
haluan  
haluatte  
halvempi  
herra  
hintaa  
hitaammin  
hotelli  
hotellia  
hyvin  
hyvä on  
hyvästi  
hyvää huomenta  
hyvää ilttaa  
hyvää päivää*

cheap  
I'd like  
I want  
you want  
cheaper  
gentleman, Mr.  
price  
slower  
hotel  
some hotel  
very  
O.K. or fine  
good-bye  
good morning  
good evening  
good day



<i>ja</i>	and	<i>minulle</i>	to me
<i>juna</i>	train	<i>missä</i>	where
<i>kahdeksan</i>	eight	<i>mitä</i>	what
<i>kahdelta</i>	at two	<i>monta</i>	many
<i>kahvia</i>	some coffee	<i>neiti</i>	Miss
<i>kaksi</i>	two	<i>neljä</i>	four
<i>kallis</i>	expensive	<i>neljältä</i>	at four
<i>kello</i>	watch <i>or</i> clock	<i>oikealle</i>	to the right
<i>kiitos</i>	thank you	<i>olkaa hyvä</i>	please <i>or</i> you're welcome
<i>kolme</i>	three	<i>olutta</i>	some beer
<i>koska</i>	when	<i>on</i>	is
<i>kuinka</i>	how	<i>ostaa</i>	to buy
<i>kuinka te voitte?</i>	how are you?	<i>paljon</i>	much
<i>kuusi</i>	six	<i>paljonko</i>	how much
<i>kyllä</i>	yes	<i>penniä</i>	some pennies
<i>kymmenen</i>	ten	<i>perunoita</i>	some potatoes
<i>käymälä</i>	toilet	<i>puhukaa</i>	speak
<i>leipää</i>	some bread	<i>puhutteko</i>	do you speak
<i>lihaa</i>	some meat	<i>ravintola</i>	restaurant
<i>liian</i>	too	<i>rouva</i>	Mrs.
<i>lähtee</i>	starts	<i>saapuu</i>	arrives
<i>maitoa</i>	some milk	<i>sana</i>	word
<i>maksaa</i>	costs	<i>sata</i>	hundred
<i>markkaa</i>	some marks	<i>sanotte</i>	you say
<i>mihin aikaan</i>	at what time		
<i>minä</i>	I		

*savukkeita*  
*se*  
*seitsemän*  
*sen*  
*suomeksi*  
*suoraan*  
*syödä*  
  
*tahdotte*  
*te*  
*tuhat*  
*tulitikkuja*  
*tuolla*  
*tämä*

some cigarettes  
it  
seven  
it *or* its  
in Finnish  
straight  
to eat  
  
you want  
you  
thousand  
some matches  
there  
this

*tämän*  
*tässä*  
*täällä*

this  
here  
here

*vasemmalle*  
*vettä*  
*viideltä*  
*viisi*

to the left  
some water  
at five  
five

*yhdeksän*  
*yksi*  
*ymmärrän*

nine  
one  
I understand

*äännetään*

is pronounced

## MEETING PEOPLE

## SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

*To the Group Leader:* Adopt the following steps as standard practice in conducting this course:

1. Before each meeting of the group, be sure to read carefully and get clearly in mind the instructions covering those sections of a unit which you expect to take up in the group meeting.
2. Before each group meeting, see that the Guide is available with his manual *Ohjeita Kielenopastajalle* or that phonograph and records are ready.
3. Have the members of the group read together the instructions that precede each piece of work they are to do before they try to do the work. Let one member of the group read these instructions aloud while the others follow the reading in their books.
4. Take time, following the reading of all instructions, to make sure that everyone understands exactly what he is to do.

In Section A of *Unit 2* follow the same procedure as that outlined for *Useful Words and Phrases* of Section A, *Unit 1*. Go through the *Basic Sentences* once with everyone repeating in unison after the Guide or phonograph record. Then take up the *Hints on Pronunciation* which follow. Come back to the *Basic Sentences* and go through them once more, this time having the members of the group repeat individually in turn after the Guide or the record. Pay particular attention to those items of pronunciation you have been working on. Finally, go through the *Basic Sentences* a third time with solo repetition. The Guide will call for as many repetitions as may be necessary to get a pronunciation that sounds to him like Finnish.

Everyone should speak up. Keep the work moving right along.

Begin this section by listening, in the manner already outlined in Section A of the preceding unit, to the *Basic Sentences* which follow. Be sure to keep in mind the meaning of the Finnish by reading silently the English

equivalent. Repeat each word loudly and clearly right after you hear it. As you pronounce the Finnish, do so as though you really meant what you are saying. Do not forget that these words and phrases convey a real meaning and it is up to you to say them as though you were actually using them. Go through the sentences in unison and with your book open.

The *Basic Sentences* are set up as conversations so that you may hear and speak the Finnish as you would hear and speak it if you were talking with Finnish people.

Although numerous characters are introduced in these *Basic Sentences*, it is not important for you to try to keep in mind just who they are or their relationship to one another. You are concerned rather with *what* they say and *how* they say it.

## 1. Basic Sentences

Record 4A, after space

*Herra Black talks to herra Toivonen about introductions.*

---

### ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS

### FINNISH

---

*Herra Black*

Good day!

*Hyvää päivää!*

*Herra Toivonen*

How are you?

*Mitä kuuluu?*

*Herra Black*

only or just  
Thanks, I'm just fine.

*vain  
Kiitos, hyvää vain.*

may I get?  
to ask for  
for your advice  
May I ask your advice?

*saanko  
pyytää  
neuvoanne  
Saanko pyytää neuvoanne?*

Sure:  
I'm able  
to do  
for you  
What can I do for you?

*Herra Toivonen*

*Tietysti!  
voin  
tehdä  
puolestanne  
Mitä voin tehdä puolestanne?*

tell  
Please tell me:  
how  
in Finland  
one addresses  
strange person  
how do you address a stranger in Finland?

*Herra Black*

*sanokaa  
Olkaa hyvä, sanokaa minulle:  
miten  
Suomessa  
puhutellaan  
vierasta henkilöä  
miten Suomessa puhutellaan vierasta henkilöä?*

*Herra Toivonen*

either  
using  
some word

*joko  
käyttäen  
sanaa*

or  
doctor  
manager  
Either by using the word 'Doctor,' 'Manager,' or  
'Mister.'

*tai*  
*tohtori*  
*johtaja*  
*Joko käyttäen sanaa 'tohtori,' 'johtaja,' tai 'herra.'*

as in  
As in 'Mr. Black,' 'Doctor Toivonen,' or 'Manager  
Smith.'

*kuten*  
*Kuten 'herra Black,' 'tohtori Toivonen,' tai 'johtaja*  
*Smith.'*

**Record 4B, beginning**

Thanks very much.

*Herra Black*  
*Kiitoksia paljon.*

I'd like some cigarettes.

*Herra Toivonen*  
*Minä haluaisin savukkeita.*

How many do you want?

*Herra Black*  
*Kuinka monta te tahdotte?*

box  
I'd like a pack of cigarettes.

*Herra Toivonen*  
*laatikon*  
*Minä haluaisin laatikon savukkeita.*

some Americans  
I have some American cigarettes.

*Herra Black*  
*amerikkalaisia*  
*Minulla on amerikkalaisia savukkeita.*

*Herra Toivonen*

Thanks very much.

would you like?  
to come  
with me  
for dinner

Would you like to come with me for dinner?

*Kiitoksia paljon.*

*haluaisitteko  
tulla  
kanssani  
päivälliselle*

*Haluaisitteko tulla kanssani päivälliselle?*

*Herra Black*

gladly  
Thanks, I'll be glad to.

would you present?  
me  
to your daughter

Would you introduce me to your daughter?

*mielelläni  
Kiitos, mielelläni.*

*esittäisittekö  
minut  
tyttärellenne  
Esittäisittekö minut tyttärellenne?*

*Herra Toivonen*

It'll be a pleasure.

*Mielelläni.*

*(At the Toivonen home)*

*Herra Black*

Hello!

*Terve!*

to present  
May I present Mr. Black?  
my daughter  
My daughter Eve.

gay  
to get acquainted  
I'm glad to meet you.

from New York  
Mr. Black is a New Yorker.

I was  
once  
in the United States  
I was in the United States once.

Excuse me.  
I don't understand.  
Please speak more slowly.

*Herra Toivonen*

*esitellä*  
*Saanko esitellä herra Black?*  
*tyttäreni*  
*Tytttäreni Eeva.*

*Herra Black*

*hauska*  
*tutustua*  
*Hauska tutustua.*

*Herra Toivonen*

*New Yorkista*  
*Herra Black on New Yorkista.*

*Neiti Toivonen*

*kävin*  
*kerran*  
*Yhdysvalloissa*  
*Kävin kerran Yhdysvalloissa.*

*Herra Black*

*Anteeksi.*  
*Minä en ymmärrä or en ymmärrä.*  
*Olkaa hyvä, puhukaa hitaammin.*



*Neiti Toivonen*

that  
I said that I was in the United States.

*että*  
*Sanoin, että kävin Yhdysvalloissa.*

*Herra Black*

Really?  
What time does the movie start?

*Niinkö?*  
*Mihin aikaan elokuvat alkavat?*

*Herra Toivonen*

At seven.

*Kello seitsemän.*

*Herra Black*

Miss Toivonen:  
would you come?  
to the movie  
tonight  
would you come to the movie with me tonight?

*Neiti Toivonen:*  
*tulisitteko*  
*elokuviin*  
*tänä iltana*  
*tulisitteko kanssani elokuviin tänä iltana?*

*Neiti Toivonen*

Thanks.  
I'll be glad to.

I like  
from the movies  
I like the movies.

*Kiitos!*  
*Mielelläni.*  
*pidän*  
*elokuvista*  
*Pidän elokuvista.*

## 2. Hints on Pronunciation

*To the Group Leader:* The explanations preceding each *Practice* should be read by the group and discussed before the *Practice* is attempted. The practice for *Hints on Pronunciation* is in the Guide's Manual and on the phonograph records. Follow the same procedure in working with the practice material that you have followed with the *Basic Sentences*. Go through as many times as may be necessary to give each member of the group reasonable control of the item of pronunciation that is being taught. Have the group repeat after the Guide, first in unison, then individually.

You will find that the *Practice* material is presented in sections on the phonograph record, with a narrow space of clear record between each section. This arrangement will make it possible for you to play each section of *Practice* as it is needed.

*Review of Vowel Sounds.* Make sure you can pronounce accurately the Finnish vowel sounds, both short and double, which were discussed in the preceding unit. If you are in doubt as to the sound of any vowel, remember it, listen for that vowel sound and make a special effort to imitate it well the next time you go through the *Basic Sentences*. Pay special attention to these points:

a. Pronounce single vowels short, double vowels long. Note these double vowels:

32 [2-A]

## PRACTICE 7

Record 1A, after sixth spiral

<i>kiitos</i>	thanks	<i>hyvää päivää</i>	good day
<i>laatikon</i>	box	<i>anteeksi</i>	excuse me

b. Imitate carefully the sounds represented by *ö* and *y*.

## PRACTICE 8

Record 1A, after seventh spiral

<i>henkilöä</i>	person	<i>käyttäen</i>	using
<i>tyttärellenne</i>	to your daughter	<i>niinkö</i>	really?
<i>Yhdysvalloissa</i> in the United States			

c. Note the vowel *u*. This vowel sound is not exactly the same as the vowel sound you hear in English *cool* (shortened). When you pronounce the Finnish *u*, your tongue becomes tense, is retracted further than in pronouncing the *oo* of *cool*, and is slightly lower down (that is, further away from your palate). Listen very carefully and try

## PRACTICE 9

Record 1A, after eighth spiral

<i>puhutellaan</i>	one addresses
<i>kuten</i>	as in

tulla  
tutustua

to come  
to get acquainted

d. In Finnish, as you now know, there are eight vowels, which may also occur double. Moreover, there are a great many other vowel combinations possible. You will find a detailed discussion of vowel combinations with practices in Unit 9, pages 158-61, and in Unit 10, pages 177-8. Note in the following preliminary examples how your Guide or the records pronounce these groups of vowels.

## PRACTICE 10

### Record 1A, after ninth spiral

käymälä	toilet	neuvoanne	for your advice
tietysti	sure	käyttäen	using
haluaisin	I'd like	seitsemän	seven

If you are uncertain about any of the points of pronunciation which have been discussed, ask your Guide to repeat the words and phrases with which you are having trouble, and try to correct your pronunciation. Remember that the discussion and written examples are at best an imperfect representation of the sounds. They are only intended as an aid to you.

When you are satisfied that you can pronounce correctly all the sounds, go through the *Basic Sen-*

*tences* taking turns and with your book open. As you repeat after your Guide, keep your eyes on the spelling and note in particular the examples of the sounds discussed. Do not hesitate to ask your Guide to repeat if you are uncertain about any sound.

Finally go through the *Basic Sentences*, again taking turns but with your book closed. Listen carefully to your Guide and make sure that your pronunciation satisfies him.

## 3. Check Yourself

Did you go through the *Basic Sentences* at least twice with your book open and then at least once more with your book closed?

Did you repeat each word and phrase immediately after hearing it in a loud, clear voice?

Did you follow the pronunciation you heard even if it seemed different from that shown in your book?

Did you keep in mind the meaning of each word and phrase as you heard and spoke the Finnish?

If your Guide asked you to repeat, did you do so eagerly and with plenty of pep as many times as necessary until he was satisfied with what you were saying?

Are you satisfied that you can pronounce the eight Finnish vowels?

If you have failed at any point to carry out the instructions, go over the *Basic Sentences*, being careful to follow every step in the procedure outlined.

## SECTION B—WORD STUDY AND REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

### 1. Word Study (Individual Study)

If your group has time for outside assignments, do the *Word Study* between meetings of the group. Otherwise make it independent study in the group meeting.

In this section we take up some of the words and expressions you have just learned and examine them to see how the language is built. First read the words and expressions in each list and make sure that you understand what they mean. Then read the comment which follows each list. This should make clear to you just how the words function and how they are put together. If there are any points that are not clear to you, make note of them and ask about them at the next meeting of the group. Follow the same procedure with each list and each comment.

#### *Comment One—Vowel Harmony*

<i>kymmenen</i> 'ten'	<i>ravintola</i> 'restaurant'
<i>käymälä</i> 'toilet'	<i>kahdeksan</i> 'eight'
<i>neljältä</i> 'at four'	<i>huomenta</i> 'morning'
<i>käyttäen</i> 'using'	<i>savukkeita</i> 'some cigarettes'
<i>päivälliselle</i> 'for dinner'	<i>vasemmalle</i> 'to the left'
<i>tyttäreni</i> 'my daughter'	<i>johtaja</i> 'manager'

These two columns contain half a dozen words each. All are of several syllables, and were selected more or less at random from among those you know. Write down the vowels in these words: thus, *yee, äää, eää*, and so forth, in the lefthand column, and *aioa, aeo, uoea*, and so forth, in the righthand column. Study the two columns, and you will observe an interesting fact about Finnish words: certain vowels never occur in the same word with certain other vowels.

The eight Finnish vowels fall into three groups: *y, ö, ä*; *u, o, a*; and *i, e*. Let's call the first the *y-group*, the second the *u-group*; and the last two *neutral vowels*. All but a handful of Finnish words contain more than one syllable. It is consequently important that you understand the following statements about vowel harmony:

If the first syllable of a Finnish word contains a vowel of the *y-group*, the following syllables of the same word must have either vowels of the *y-group* or *neutral vowels* (that is, *y, ö, ä, i, e*).

If the first syllable of a Finnish word contains a vowel, of the *u-group*, the following syllables of the same word must have either vowels of the *u-group* or *neutral vowels* (that is, *u, o, a, i, e*).

If the first syllable of a Finnish word contains a *neutral vowel*, the second syllable may contain any

vowel; if the second vowel is of the *y*-group the vowels thereafter will follow the first rule; if the second vowel is of the *u*-group the vowels thereafter will follow the second rule; and if the second vowel is *neutral*, the earliest *y*-group or *u*-group vowel in the word (if any), will determine all succeeding vowels.

There is but one exception to the above three statements: a word belonging to the *y*-group and one of the *u*-group may be compounded into a single word (that is, a sequence of syllables with a single stress). But these exceptions are apparent rather than real, because compound words are easily broken into two (by placing a stress on the first syllable of the second part of the compound).

### Comment Two—Question Suffix

<i>paljonko</i> <i>tämä maksaa?</i>	how much is this?
<i>saanko</i> <i>pyytää neuvoanne?</i>	may I ask for your advice?
<i>haluaisitteko</i> <i>tulla kanssani?</i>	would you like to come with me?
<i>esittäisittekö</i> <i>minut</i> <i>tyttärellenne?</i>	would you present me to your daughter?
<i>niinkö?</i>	really?

As you study the structure of a Finnish word, you will see that it is generally composed of two parts:

a *stem*, and one or more *suffixes*. We will examine the stem more closely later, but for a while you must learn some suffixes.

Now read the five sentences carefully and note what they have in common. The first three sentences have this in common: the first word of each sentence ends in *-ko* (*paljon-ko*, *saan-ko* and *haluaisitte-ko*). The first word of the remaining sentences ends in *-kö* (*esittäisitte-kö*, *niin-kö*). These endings *-ko* and *-kö* are suffixes; moreover, *-ko* and *-kö* are one and the same suffix. The reason for the different vowels is of course that a suffix in Finnish must be capable of being joined both to a word with *y*-group vowels, and word with *u*-group vowels; consequently, unless the suffix has a neutral vowel *e* or *i*, you may assume that it will have, potentially, two vowels; depending on what stem it is added to, it will appear with *y* or *u*; *ö* or *o*; *ä* or *a*. It follows that it is unnecessary to refer to a suffix by both vowels, for, unless neutral, the other will always be possible. Thus, we can list *-ko*, *-kö*, simply as *-ko*. We will always list suffixes, and refer to them in the *Word-Study*, by the form with the *vowel* of the *u*-group (because it is easier to write).

To return, then, to the *-ko* suffix. This suffix indicates that the sentence is a question (also shown by a question mark after the last word). The suffix is always appended to the first word in the sentence, which is most often a verb (*saan* 'I get', *haluaisitte* 'you would

like', *esittäisitte* 'you would introduce'), but which can be another word (*paljon* 'much', *niin* 'so'). Still another example: *tulisitteko kanssani tänä iltana* 'would you come with me tonight' (*tulisitte* 'you will come').

## 2. Covering English and Finnish of Word Study

Read aloud several times all the examples given you in the *Word Study*. Then cover the English and see if you know the meaning of every item. Repeat the operation until you are sure that you know every expression. As a final test, cover the Finnish and see if you can speak out the Finnish expressions by simply

looking at the English. Skip about the test yourself thoroughly.

## 3. Review of Basic Sentences

Review the first half of the *Basic Sentences* with your Guide or the phonograph record. Go through them as many times as you can, taking turns repeating the Finnish individually. Try it with books closed and see how you get along without the help of the *Aids to Listening*. But *always* keep in mind the meaning of the Finnish you are hearing and speaking. As you go through the *Basic Sentences* be on the lookout for examples of the points in *Word Study* you have just covered.

# SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES (Cont.)

## 1. Review of Basic Sentences (Cont.)

Review the second half of the *Basic Sentences* with your Guide or the phonograph record. For the detailed procedure to be followed read again the instructions given above for the review of the first half of *Basic Sentences*.

## 2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Here is your chance to find out just how well you

have learned the meaning of the Finnish expressions you have had up to this point. Go back to the *Basic Sentences* in Section A and cover the English. Read the Finnish aloud and see whether you can supply the English equivalents of the words and phrases. Mark those you are not sure about and after reading the list through, uncover the English and look up their meaning. Cover the English again and repeat the procedure until you can go through the entire list giving all the meanings without difficulty.

When you are satisfied that you can go through the *Basic Sentences*, giving the meaning for any expression you say in Finnish, try the following exercise:

### 3. What Would You Say?

I. For each of the following situations two or more Finnish expressions are given. Read all the expressions aloud and check the one you think best fits each situation. Be sure you know why the other choices are not suitable. At the next meeting of the group you will be asked to say what you have chosen and you will have a chance to test your answers. Do not write anything down.

1. You meet a young lady before lunch and you say:
  - a. *Hyvää iltaa.*
  - b. *Hyvää huomenta.*
  - c. *Hyvää päivää.*
2. She asks about your health, saying:
  - a. *Kuinka te voitte?*
  - b. *Koska juna saapuu?*
  - c. *Missä on käymälä?*
3. You ask what you can do for her, saying:
  - a. *Saanko pyytää neuvoanne?*
  - b. *Mihin aikaan juna lähtee?*
  - c. *Mitä voin tehdä puolestanne?*

4. She asks you for a match, saying:
  - a. *Se on liian kallis.*
  - b. *Minä haluaisin ostaa perunoita.*
  - c. *Minä haluaisin tulitikkuja.*
5. You give her a box, and she thanks you:
  - a. *Tietysti.*
  - b. *Kiitos, paljon.*
  - c. *Mielelläni.*
6. Then she asks you when the movie begins:
  - a. *Kuinka tämä sana äännetään?*
  - b. *Kuinka monta te tahdotte?*
  - c. *Koska elokuvat alkavat?*
7. You ask if she would like to go to the movies with you.
  - a. *Mitä te tahdotte syödä?*
  - b. *Tulisitteko kanssani elokuviin?*
  - c. *Mihin aikaan elokuvat alkavat?*

II. Make questions of the following statements:

1. *Asema on vasemmalle.*
2. *Haluan monta olutta.*
3. *Tämä maksaa viisi markkaa.*
4. *Suomessa voin ostaa paljon perunoita.*
5. *Juna lähtee kahdelta.*

## SECTION D—LISTENING IN

### 1. What Did You Say?

*To the Group Leader:* Read the English describing the situations in *What Would You Say?* of Section C, *Unit 2*, and call on different students, not in any fixed order, to speak the Finnish which the situation calls for. Encourage the students to give the Finnish, if they can, without reading it from their books. Then ask different members of the group to give the meaning in English of the different Finnish expressions listed for each situation.

Go back to the last exercise in the preceding section. The leader will ask different members of the group to speak the Finnish to be used in each of the situations given. Other members of the group will criticize the choices made if they do not agree with them. The Leader will also ask for the English equivalents of all the other expressions offered as choices, taking turns around the group.

### 2. Word Study Check-Up

*To the Group Leader:* As a further check on the students' understanding of the *Word Study*, read the English equivalent of the Finnish expressions given before each comment under *Word Study*. Call on different students, not in any fixed order, to give the correct Finnish for the English. For instance, say to A: *Kuinka te sanotte suomeksi . . . ?*, asking for the various Finnish expressions given as examples in the *Word Study*. The Guide will at this point indicate by a negative sign whenever he hears a Finnish expression that is wrong. If there is no Guide, the other members of the group will signal that they do not agree. Immediately ask someone else to give the right answer. Any member of the group who

has difficulty in giving the correct Finnish should be told to review the *Word Study* thoroughly before the next meeting of the group. Do not take time to this exercise to talk about the *Why*. Stick to the *How*.

The Leader will ask different members of the group to give the correct Finnish for the English equivalents of the expressions you studied in the *Word Study*. If you give the wrong answer, the Guide will let you know by making a negative sign; or, if there is no Guide, the other members of the group will indicate that they think your answer is wrong. The Leader will then immediately call on someone else for the right answer. If you have difficulty in giving the correct Finnish, review the *Word Study* thoroughly.

### 3. Listening In

*To the Group Leader:* Re-read the note *To the Group Leader* in Section D of *Unit 1*. Follow the same procedure as outlined there. The first time you go through the conversation. Then go through all of them a second time without stopping.



Finally, assign parts and have the students read the conversations. Get them to do a little acting if you can. Encourage them to speak up and to get into the spirit of the situation.

Keep your book closed while the Guide reads the following conversation and repeat after him in unison. If you have no Guide, you should use the phonograph records, repeating the Finnish immediately after you hear it. At the end of each conversation take time out to check up on the meaning of any word or phrase about which you are in doubt. Ask some other member of the group to give you the English equivalent or in case no one knows, go back to the Basic Sentences of this unit and make sure that you understand everything before you proceed any further. Go through the conversations a second time, repeating after the Guide individually. Then take parts in the conversations. This Exercise contains most of the new words you have learned in this unit.

### Record 5A, beginning

*I. John and Eve are out on a date.*

*John*

*Hyvää iltaa.*

*Eeva*

*Hyvää iltaa.  
Mitä kuuluu?*

*John*

*Kiitos hyvää vain.  
Mihin aikaan elokuvat alkavat?*

*Eeva*

*Kello viisi.*

*John*

*Haluaisitteko tulla kanssani?*

*Eeva*

*Kiitos mielelläni.  
Minä pidän elokuvista.*

*John*

*Hyvä.  
Paljonko elokuviin maksaa?*

*Eeva*

*Kahdeksan markkaa.*

*(After the movie.)*

*John*

*Missä on ravintola?*

*Eeva*

*Ravintola Helsinki on vasemmalle.  
Haluaisitteko syödä?*

*John*  
*Kyllä, minä haluaisin leipää ja maitoa.*

*Eeva*  
*Ja minä haluaisin kahvia ja leipää.*

*John*  
*Neiti Toivonen, puhutteko te englantia?*

*Eeva*  
*Kyllä kävin kerran Yhdysvalloissa.*

*John*  
*Niinkö?*

*Neiti*  
*Tässä on kahvia leipää ja maitoa.*

*John*  
*Paljonko<sup>1</sup> se maksaa?*

*Neiti*  
*Kuusi markkaa ja kymmenen penniä.*

*John*  
*Olkaa hyvä.*

*Neiti*  
*Kiitoksia paljon.*

*John*  
*Haluan laatikon tulitikkuja.*

*Neiti*  
*Tässä on.*

*John*  
*Kiitos.*  
*Antakaa minulle amerikkalaisia savukkeita.*

*Neiti*  
*Laatikon hinta on neljä markkaa.*

*Eeva*  
*Paljonko kello on?*

*John*  
*Kello on kymmenen.*

*Eeva*  
*Minä haluaisin vettä.*

---

<sup>1</sup>The record says "Paljoko".

*Neiti*

*Tässä on.  
Olkaa hyvä.*

*Eeva*

*Kiitos.  
Hyvästi.*

**Record 5A, after spiral**

*II. Mr. Black asks Herra Toivonen for information  
about trains.*

*Herra Black*

*Saanko pyytää neuvoanne?*

*Herra Toivonen*

*Tietysti!  
Mitä voin tehdä puolestanne?*

*Herra Black*

*Anteeksi, minä en ymmärrä.  
Olkaa hyvä, puhukaa hitaammin.*

*Herra Toivonen*

*Mitä voin tehdä puolestanne?*

*Herra Black*

*Missä on asema?*

*Herra Toivonen*

*Asema on suoraan eteenpäin.*

*Herra Black*

*Mihin aikaan juna saapuu?*

*Herra Toivonen*

*Se saapuu kello yksi.*

*Herra Black*

*Ja koska juna lähtee?*

*Herra Toivonen*

*Juna lähtee kello kolme.*

*Herra Black*

*Kiitoksia paljon.*

Is there any word or phrase in this conversation that you do not understand now? If there is, be sure to find out its meaning by asking members of your group or looking it up in the *Basic Sentences*.

Go through the conversation again following the

same plan as before. Imitate carefully and keep in mind the meaning of everything you are saying in Finnish.

Finally go through the conversation a third time. Take turns speaking the parts and continue until everybody has had a chance to speak at least one of

the parts. Keep this exercise going as long as you have time. Get the most out of this solo performance and when your turn comes, speak clearly and with feeling. The Guide will correct any errors he hears by asking you to repeat. Make every effort to satisfy him with your pronunciation.

## SECTION E—CONVERSATION

### 1. Covering the Finnish of Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Go back to the *Basic Sentences* of this unit. Cover up the Finnish. Read the English silently and test yourself to see how many words and phrases you can say in Finnish. Check the words you are uncertain about and after you have gone through the whole list, uncover the Finnish and review them. Go through the list once more and continue for at least three times or until you can give the Finnish readily for all the expressions. This test is hard, but if you succeed in saying the Finnish for all the sentences by merely looking at the English, you are doing well indeed. To make sure of this, after you are certain you know the material, pick out expressions at random and see if you can still speak the Finnish quickly. As you practice, you must always speak the Finnish aloud and

try to imitate the pronunciation of your Guide as well as you can recall it.

### 2. Vocabulary Check-Up

*To the Group Leader:* Go to the *Basic Sentences*. Read to the group the English equivalents of the Finnish expressions. Call on different students, not in any fixed order, asking for the correct Finnish for the English. This check-up is to be conducted in the same way as the *Vocabulary Check-Up* of Section E in Unit 1. If you have any question about the proper procedure, review the note *To the Group Leader* in that Section. Remember not to spend any time talking about the *Why* of the Finnish; stick to the *How*.

Prepare the following conversations by checking yourself on your ability to speak the Finnish you have learned up to this point. As in the *Vocabulary Check-Up* of Unit 1, the Leader of the group will ask you to supply in turn the Finnish expressions for the English

equivalents which he reads from the *Basic Sentences*. Figure out how to say the Finnish for each English phrase or sentence, whether it is your turn to speak or not. Only in this way can you get the most value out of the Check-Up. If there is much of the Finnish which you don't know, review the *Basic Sentences* at the first opportunity outside of the group meeting.

### 3. Conversation

*To the Group Leader:* This section represents the real purpose of the entire unit. The course is intended to teach you to speak Finnish and to understand it when you hear it spoken. Follow the instructions and give all the time you can to the free conversation practice. Any members of the group who have special difficulty recalling the Finnish words and phrases they need to express a meaning should be told to do more work with the *Useful Words and Phrases* and the *Basic Sentences*. They need, in particular, more practice in covering the Finnish and recalling it when they read the English. Practice in getting the meaning of the *Listening In* records will also help. Arrangements should be made for students to play and listen to the records whenever they can between meetings of the group.

Turn to the conversation of *Listening In*. Assign parts and ask the students to act out part of the scene and conversation of *Listening In*. Vary the situations and suggest to the students that they vary the Finnish slightly as they gain confidence in their speaking. Remember to keep the speaking loud enough so that everyone can hear. See that everyone is listening and trying to understand the Finnish that is being spoken.

The Leader will assign parts and will ask you to reproduce the conversational situations of *Listening In*. Act your part. Don't be afraid to vary the conversation if you are sure of your Finnish and use the Finnish you have learned in Unit 1 as well as in Unit 2. Continue with this practice until everyone can speak any part of the conversations even though slight changes in the situations are introduced. The following situations may be used to start with:

A is introduced to B.

- (1) A asks how B is.
- (2) B says, he's fine.
- (3) A asks B to speak more slowly, and asks if B speaks English.
- (4) B says he speaks only Finnish.
- (5) A wants to know where the station is, when the train leaves (arrives).
- (6) B says the train leaves (arrives) at five.
- (7) A thanks B and says good-bye.

Here are several other conversations, to give more students a chance to participate:

1. X asks for Y's advice. Y says, he'll gladly help him; what can he do for X? X wants to meet Y's daughter. Y will be happy to introduce him to her, and does.

2. C, an American, meets a Finnish girl, and invites her to a movie, and afterwards to a restaurant. They order beer, and smoke American cigarettes. The girl walks C to the station, where he's leaving that night.

3. Q explains to R how you must address a stranger in Finnish. R understands little, and asks Q to speak more slowly. Q says he's sorry, but he can't speak English. He finally invites R for dinner.

Throw yourself into these conversations. Do the best you can with pronunciation and with the Finnish, but don't worry too much about mistakes. Think more of acting your part and speaking smoothly and as though you meant what you were saying. The Guide will help you correct your errors. If you can do this work well, it means that you are actually conversing in Finnish, and that, of course, is your chief aim in this course.

## SECTION F—CONVERSATION (Cont.)

Read again the instructions given in Section F of the preceding unit. If necessary, spend the first part of the group meeting in individual study of the *Basic Sentences* or checking up on vocabulary, as in Section E. Then continue the conversations which you started in Section E.

### Finder List

The new words and expressions and suffixes introduced in this unit, with their English equivalents, are listed below in alphabetical order for your convenient reference.

<i>amerikkalaisia</i>	some American(s)
<i>elokuvista</i>	from the movies
<i>esitellä</i>	to present

<i>esittäisitte</i>	you would present
<i>että</i>	that
<i>haluaisitte</i>	you would like
<i>hauska</i>	gay
<i>hyvää vain</i>	I'm just fine
<i>johtaja</i>	manager
<i>joko</i>	either
<i>kanssani</i>	with me
<i>kerran</i>	once
<i>-ko</i>	?
<i>kuten</i>	as in
<i>käyttäen</i>	using
<i>kävin</i>	I was
<i>laatikon</i>	box

*mielelläni  
minulla on  
minut  
miten  
mitä kuuluu*

gladly  
I have  
me  
how  
how are you?

*neuvoanne  
New Yorkista  
niinkö*

for your advice  
from New York  
really

*pidän  
puhutellaan  
puolestanne  
pyytää  
päivälliselle*

I like  
one addresses  
for you  
to ask for  
for dinner

*saan  
sanaa  
sanoin*

I get  
some word  
I said

*sanokaa  
Suomessa*

tell  
in Finland

*tai  
tehdä  
terve*

or  
to do  
hello

*tietysti  
tohtori  
tulisitte  
tulla*

sure  
doctor  
you would come  
to come

*tutustua  
tyttärellenne  
tyttäreni  
tänä iltana*

to get acquainted  
to your daughter  
my daughter  
tonight

*vain  
vierasta henkilöä  
voin*

only *or* just  
strange person  
I'm able to

*Yhdysvalloissa*

in the United States

## WHAT'S YOUR TRADE?

## SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

*To the Group Leader:* Read carefully the note to the *Leader* preceding Section A of Unit 2. Then go through the *Basic Sentences* once, and take up the *Hints on Pronunciation*. Go through the *Basic Sentences* at least twice more individually, paying especial attention to pronunciation.

Go through the *Basic Sentences*, in unison, the same way you did for Section A of the preceding unit. Be sure to put plenty of life into your repetition of the sentences. After you have gone through the *Basic Sentences* once in unison and have done the *Hints on Pronunciation*, come back to the *Basic Sentences*. Pay particular attention to the points of pronunciation you have just been working on and go through the sentences at least twice more individually.

## 1. Basic Sentences

Record 5B, beginning

*Liisa and Herra Stone talk about family and trades.*

## ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS

## FINNISH

*Liisa*

you have  
some brothers  
some sisters

*teillä on  
veljiä  
sisaria*

Have you any brothers or sisters, Mr. Stone?

*Onko teillä veljiä tai sisaria, Herra Stone?*



some brother  
sister

Yes, I have two brothers and one sister.

*Herra Stone*

*veljeä  
sisar*

*Kyllä, minulla on kaksi veljeä ja yksi sisar.*

are  
they  
married

Are they married?

*Liisa*

*ovat  
he  
naimisissa*

*Ovatko he naimisissa?*

*Herra Stone*

Two brothers are married.

but  
my sister  
goes  
some school

But my sister goes to school.

*Kaksi veljeä on naimisissa.*

*mutta  
sisareni  
käy  
koulua*

*Mutta sisareni käy koulua.*

*Liisa*

I have only one sister, and she is married.

*Minulla on vain yksi sisar, ja hän on naimisissa.*

*Herra Stone*

he or she has  
some children

Has she any children?

*hänellä on  
lapsia*

*Onko hänellä lapsia?*

some son *or* some boy  
Yes, she has two sons.

*poikaa*  
*Kyllä, hänellä on kaksi poikaa.*

old  
How old are they?

*Herra Stone*

*vanhoja*  
*Kuinka vanhoja he ovat?*

older  
some year  
old  
The older one's eight.

*Liisa*

*vanhempi*  
*vuotta*  
*vanha*  
*Vanhempi on kahdeksan vuotta vanha.*

younger  
healthier  
The younger is six, and he is healthier.

*nuorempi*  
*terveempi*  
*Nuorempi on kuusi vuotta vanha, ja hän on terveempi.*

to ask  
you do  
What do you do, may I ask?

*Herra Stone*

*kysyä*  
*teette*  
*Saanko kysyä, mitä te teette?*

I am  
in work  
in office  
I work in an office.

*Liisa*

*olen*  
*työssä*  
*konttorissa*  
*Olen työssä konttorissa.*

businessman  
I'm a businessman.

*Herra Stone*

*liikemies*  
*Olen liikemies.*

your  
your brothers'  
occupation  
What's your brothers' occupation?

*Liisa*

*teidän*  
*veljienne*  
*toimi*  
*Mikä on teidän veljienne toimi?*

oldest  
youngest  
farmer  
The oldest is a doctor and the youngest is a farmer.

*Herra Stone*

*vanhin*  
*nuorin*  
*maanviljelijä*  
*Vanhin on tohtori ja nuorin on maanviljelijä.*

his  
his farm  
Where is his farm?

*Liisa*

*hänen*  
*maatilansa*  
*Missä on hänen maatilansa?*

**Record 6A, beginning**

outside  
of Helsinki  
It's outside of Helsinki.

*Herra Stone*

*ulkopuolella*  
*Helsingin*  
*Se on Helsingin ulkopuolella.*

your father's  
What does your father do?

*isänne*  
*Mikä on teidän isänne toimi?*

of the bank  
He's manager of the bank.

*Liisa*  
*pankin*  
*Hän on pankinjohtaja.*

of which  
Which bank is he the manager of?

*Herra Stone*  
*minkä*  
*Minkä pankin johtaja?*

he or she  
Finland<sup>1</sup>  
He's manager of the Bank of Finland.

*Liisa*  
*hän*  
*Suomi<sup>1</sup>*  
*Hän on Suomen Pankin johtaja.*

what  
trade  
What's your father's trade?

*mikä*  
*ammatti*  
*Mikä on teidän isänne ammatti?*

shoemaker  
He's a shoemaker.

*Herra Stone*  
*suutari*  
*Hän on suutari.*

Has he any brothers or sisters?

*Liisa*  
*Onko hänellä veljiä tai sisaria?*

<sup>1</sup>This line should read: "of Finland . . . Suomen".

some sister  
Yes, he has three brothers and two sisters.

all  
Are they all here?

No, they're in the United States.

Where are they working?

tailor  
One's a tailor.

other  
barber  
The other is a barber.

third  
dentist  
The third is a dentist.

And the two sisters are married.

*Herra Stone*

*sisarta*  
*Kyllä, hänellä on kolme veljeä ja kaksi sisarta.*

*Liisa*

*kaikki*  
*Ovato he kaikki täällä?*

*Herra Stone*

*Ei, he ovat Yhdysvalloissa.*

*Liisa*

*Missä he ovat työssä?*

*Herra Stone*

*räätäli*  
*Yksi on räätäli.*

*toinen*  
*parturi*  
*Toinen on parturi.*

*kolmas*  
*hammaslääkäri*  
*Kolmas on hammaslääkäri.*  
*Ja kaksi sisarta on naimisissa.*

to visit  
I'd like to visit the United States.

*Liisa*

*käydä*  
*Haluaisin käydä Yhdysvalloissa.*

## 2. Hints on Pronunciation

*To the Group Leader:* Follow the same procedure as for the *Hints on Pronunciation* of Unit 2. Have the group read and discuss the explanations, and then go through the *Practice* for each *Hint* with the Guide or phonograph record.

You had opportunity to practice the vowel sounds—single, double, and in groups. You have probably noticed that consonants also occur single, double, or in groups. It is particularly important for you to pronounce double consonants as double. (This subject is taken up in more detail later, in Unit 8, pages 137-9.

### PRACTICE 11

Record 1A, after tenth spiral

<i>ammatti</i>	trade	<i>herra</i>	mister
<i>penniä</i>	some pennies	<i>vasemmalle</i>	to the left
<i>kaikki</i>	all	<i>tyttärellenne</i>	to your daughter

Most of the single consonants are easy for you to pronounce. We'll take these up now in turn. But first:  
*Aspiration:* the sounds *p*, *t*, and *k* in English, espe-

52 [3-A]

cially at the beginning of a word and when followed by a vowel, are pronounced with a puff of breath as the lips part: *p<sup>h</sup>*, *t<sup>h</sup>*, *k<sup>h</sup>*. Try this by holding a slip of paper before your lips as you say *put*, *top*, *cook*, and you will see that the slip will bend backwards and wave as the puff of breath hits it. The Finnish *p*, *t*, *k* are pronounced entirely without the puff of breath. Try the words below, in Practices 12-14, with the slip of paper before your mouth, paying special attention to pronouncing the consonants without the <sup>h</sup>. (It would be more effective to try the experiment described with the flame of a candle in place of the slip of paper. The Guide should demonstrate, if possible.)

*Consonant p:* this consonant is very similar to the *p* in English *spin*. (You will find *p* in Finnish at the beginning of a word, or in the middle, but never at the end.)

### PRACTICE 12

Record 1A, after eleventh spiral

<i>paljon</i>	much	<i>lapsia</i>	some children
<i>ulkopuolella</i>			outside

*Consonant t:* this consonant is very similar to the *t* in English *stick*, but in pronouncing it the tip of your tongue should press against the back of your upper front teeth with some force. (You will find *t* at the beginning, in the middle, and at the end of Finnish words.)

### PRACTICE 13

Record 1A, after twelfth spiral

<i>työ</i>	work	<i>ovat</i>	they are
	<i>tohtori</i>		doctor

*Consonant k:* this consonant resembles the English *c* of *scan* or *k* of *skin*. (It occurs at the beginning, the middle, but never the end of Finnish words.)

### PRACTICE 14

Record 1A, after thirteenth spiral

<i>kyllä</i>	yes	<i>mikä</i>	which
	<i>kaksi</i>		two

The remaining consonants will be taken up in the coming units. Go back over the Practices in units 1-2, and make sure you can pronounce all Finnish vowels correctly.

Now go through the *Basic Sentences* once more individually, with your book open. As you repeat after your Guide, keep your eyes on the *Aids to Listening* and note in particular the examples of the sounds discussed. Again, do not hesitate to ask your Guide to repeat if you are uncertain about any sound.

Finally, go through the *Basic Sentences* at least once again, this time taking turns in doing solo work. Keep your book closed, listen carefully to your Guide and make sure that your pronunciation satisfies him.

### 3. Check Yourself

Did you pronounce very carefully all the vowels in each of the illustrations in this and the previous unit?

Were you especially careful in pronouncing single sounds as single and double sounds as double?

Can you pronounce *p*, *t*, *k* without the aspiration following?

## SECTION B—WORD STUDY AND REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

### 1. Word Study (Individual Study)

As in Section B of unit 2, read the words and expressions in each list and make sure that you understand the meaning of the Finnish. Then read the Comments which follow each list. When you have finished the Word Study ask other members of the group about points which are not clear to you.

#### Comment One—Suffix *-mpi*

<i>halvempi</i>	cheaper	<i>vanhempi</i>	older
	<i>nuorempi</i>	younger	

The suffix *-mpi* corresponds to the English suffix *-e* (as in 'big', 'bigger'; *not* 'work', 'worker'!). It is added to a class of Finnish words called *adjectives*. The latter differ from nouns only in two respects, namely, that they can take the *-mpi* suffix, and one other suffix (see below). Note that the vowel of the *-mpi* suffix being the neutral *i*, it might be added to any stem irrespective of vowel harmony.

You have learned the word for 'old': *vanha*. Note that when you add the suffix *-mpi*, the last *a* of *vanha* is replaced by an *e*. Whenever the suffix *-mpi* is added to a word which consists of two syllables (*van-ha*), the second of which ends in an *-a* (or *-ä*), the last vowel is

replaced by an *e*. Note these further examples: *terveempi* (from *terve* 'healthy', stem form *tervee-*) 'healthier', *kalliimpi* (from *kallis* 'expensive', stem form *kallii-*) 'more expensive', *hauskempi* (from *hauska* 'gay', stem *hauska-*, with replacement of final *-a-* by *-e-* before *-mpi*) 'gayer'. (Note: the formation of stems will be explained in later units.)

#### Comment Two—Suffix *-in*

<i>vanhin</i>	the oldest	<i>nuorin</i>	the youngest
---------------	------------	---------------	--------------

The suffix *-in* corresponds to the English suffix *-est* (as in 'big', 'biggest'). It is added to the same class of words (adjectives) to which *-mpi* is added. This suffix has a neutral vowel *i*, and may therefore be added to any stem, irrespective of vowel harmony.

Again note the word for 'old': *vanha*. You will see that when you add the suffix *-in*, the final *a* of *vanha* disappears altogether: *vanh-in*.

Also note the word for 'young': *nuori*. You will see that when you add the suffix *-in*, the final *i* or *nuori* disappears altogether: *nuor-in*.

Final *-a*, *-ä*, *-e*, *-i* always disappears before *-in*; double vowels always become single before *-in*.

Note these further examples: *tervein* (*tervee-in* re-



placed by *tervein*.) 'healthiest', *kallein* (*kallii-in* replaced by *kalli-in*, replaced by *kallein*, the latter being due to a rule that the *-i-* of a stem is replaced by *-e-* before the *-in* suffix) 'most expensive', *hauskin* (*hauska-in* replaced by *hauskin*) 'gayest'.

Two important words which you have had, *hyvä* 'good', and *paljo(n)* 'much', as well as some half dozen other words, change their stems completely when the suffixes *-mpi* or *-in* are added. These forms (*parempi* 'better', *enempi* 'more'; *parhain* or *paras* 'best', *enin* 'most') must be memorized separately, of course.

### Comment Three—Suffix *-ssa*

*olen työssä konttorissa* I work in an office

Note this sentence carefully. The literal translation goes, 'I am in work in an office.'

<i>Yhdysvalloissa</i>	in the United States
<i>Suomessa</i>	in Finland

These words all end in the suffix *-ssa* (in *työ-ssä* the vowel of the *u*-group is replaced by the corresponding

vowel of the *y*-group in the suffix.) The rough meaning of this suffix is 'in', 'inside' but the exact meaning must be learned by context, that is, from seeing it function in many sentences. (*Note:* this is true of all suffixes, and, indeed, of all word-meanings as well.)

<i>missä</i>	where	<i>tässä</i>	here
--------------	-------	--------------	------

Note that the suffix *-ssa* appears also in the above words.

## 2. Covering English and Finnish of Word Study

Review this Word Study by reading aloud all of the Finnish expressions. Then cover the English and make sure that you know the meaning of every item. Finally, cover the Finnish and see if you can say each Finnish expression when you are looking only at the English.

## 3. Review of Basic Sentences

With Guide or records, review the first half of *Basic Sentences* for better pronunciation, meaning, and examples of points in the Word Study.

## SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES (Cont.)

### 1. Review of Basic Sentences (Cont.)

Review the second half of the *Basic Sentences*. Follow the procedure suggested above.

### 2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Go back to the *Basic Sentences* in Sections A and B, cover the English and test yourself by reading the Finnish, just as you did in Section C of the previous unit. If you are not sure about the meaning of any words or phrases, when you have finished reading the Basic Sentences aloud, uncover the English and look up their meaning. Keep this up until you know all the meanings completely.

### 3. What Would You Say?

A. In the following exercise you have certain situations presented for which you are to choose the correct expression in Finnish. Read the situation, *repeat aloud all of the solutions for each situation*, and then indicate for the next class meeting the answer you consider most appropriate.

*Mr. Stone and Mr. Toivonen discuss their relatives and occupations.*

1. Mr. Stone asks Mr. Toivonen what his occupation is.
  - a. *Mitä te teette?*
  - b. *Mikä on teidän isänne toimi?*
  - c. *Kuinka te voitte?*
2. Mr. Toivonen tells him that he's a shoemaker.
  - a. *Hän on tyttäreni.*
  - b. *Sisar käy koulua.*
  - c. *Minä olen suutari.*
3. Mr. Stone says he's a tailor.
  - a. *Minä olen räätäli.*
  - b. *Toinen on hammaslääkäri.*
  - c. *Hän on pankinjohtaja.*
4. Mr. Stone asks him whether he has any brothers or sisters.
  - a. *Onko teillä veljiä tai sisaria?*
  - b. *Ovatko he naimisissa?*
  - c. *Missä ovat ravintola ja asema?*

5. Mr. Toivonen says he has a sister.

- a. *Kävin kerran Yhdysvalloissa.*
- b. *Minulla on kolme veljeä.*
- c. *Minulla on yksi sisar.*

6. Mr. Toivonen says he is a farmer.

- a. *Hänen maatilansa on Helsingin ulkopuolella.*
- b. *Minä olen maanviljelijä.*
- c. *Minä olen naimisissa.*

7. Mr. Stone wants to know whether the farm is straight ahead.

- a. *Onko se oikealle?*
- b. *Onko se Helsingin ulkopuolella?*
- c. *Onko se suoraan eteenpäin?*

8. Mr. Toivonen asks Mr. Stone to come with him.

- a. *Sisar käy koulua kanssani.*
- b. *Tulisitteko kanssani?*
- c. *Johtaja ja tohtori ovat Yhdysvalloissa.*

B. Read all of the Finnish expressions aloud and choose the best ones to express the following situations.

- 1. You say it doesn't matter.
- 2. You say there is a toilet in the restaurant.
- 3. You say you would like to buy some meat.

4. You say that eight and one are nine.

5. You want to know how to address a stranger in Helsinki.

6. You say that your third daughter is the gayest in school.

7. You want to be excused.

8. You say you have only one sister.

9. You say that this dentist is more expensive, but he's the best.

10. You say that you work in the United States.

- a. *Minä haluaisin ostaa lihaa.*
- b. *Seitsemän ja kaksi on yhdeksän.*
- c. *Ravintolassa on käymälä.*
- d. *Kahdeksan ja yksi on yhdeksän.*
- e. *Haluaisitteko tulla kanssani päivälliselle?*
- f. *Ei ansaitse.*
- g. *Miten Helsingissä puhutellaan vierasta henkilöä?*
- h. *Kolmas tyttäreni on hauskin koulussa.*
- i. *Tämä hammaslääkäri on kalliimpi, mutta hän on parhain.*
- j. *Minä olen työssä Yhdysvalloissa.*
- k. *Minulla on vain yksi sisar.*
- l. *Tämä johtaja on vanhempi.*
- m. *Mutta minulla on sisaria.*
- n. *Onko hänellä lapsia?*
- o. *Anteeksi.*

## SECTION D—LISTENING IN

### 1. What Did You Say?

*To the Group Leader:* Follow the same procedure as for Section D of unit 2. Call on different students (not in any fixed order) to give their answers in Finnish for the exercise *What Would You Say?* in Section C of this unit. Encourage them to give the answers directly and not from the books, if possible. Then check on the students' knowledge of the meaning in English of the different expressions in Finnish.

Go back to the last exercise in the preceding section. The Leader will call for your answers in Finnish for the exercises. If you can, give the correct answers without reading from the book. Other members of the group will criticize the choice made if they disagree. The Leader will then call for the English equivalents of all the expressions in the exercises.

### 2. Word Study Check-Up

*To the Group Leader:* Follow the same procedure as for this part of Section D of unit 2. Call on various students for the correct Finnish for the English equivalents of the expressions given in the Word Study. Make sure that all the students have learned the material thoroughly.

Go back to the Word Study in Section B. The Leader will ask different members of the group to give the correct Finnish for the English equivalents of the expressions you went over in the Word Study. Be sure you are able to give the correct form without having to

read it from the book. If you have difficulty in giving the correct Finnish, review the Word Study thoroughly.

### 3. Listening In

*To the Group Leader:* Follow the same procedure as for *Listening In* in Section D of unit 2. Check up on the meaning at the end of each conversation on the first time through; then, after the second time through, assign parts and have the students read the conversation.

Keep your book closed while the Guide reads the following conversations, or while they are played on the phonograph, and repeat the Finnish immediately after hearing it. At the end of each conversation, check up on the meaning of any word or phrase about which you are in doubt, either by asking some other member of the group or by going back to the *Basic Sentences* if no one knows.

Go through the conversation again, with your books

open, being sure to imitate carefully and to keep in mind the meaning of everything you are saying. Then take turns speaking the parts. Make the conversations real. Say your part as though you meant it.

**Record 6A, after first spiral**

*I. Mr. Black meets Liisa and invites  
her to go to a movie*

*Herra Black*

*Hyvää päivää.  
Kuinka te voitte?*

*Liisa*

*Kiitos, minä voin hyvin.*

*Herra Black*

*Onko isänne täällä?*

*Liisa*

*Ei. Hänen maatilansa on Helsingin ulkopuolella.*

*Herra Black*

*Niinkö!  
Tulisitteko kanssani elokuviin?  
Elokuvat alkavat kello kuusi.*

*Liisa*

*Mielelläni.*

**Record 6A, after second spiral**

*II. Eeva inquires about a dentist.*

*Herra Black*

*Paljonko kello on?*

*Eeva*

*Kello on seitsemän.*

*Herra Black*

*Haluaisitteko tulla kanssani päivälliselle?*

*Eeva*

*Kiitos ei, juna saapuu kello kymmenen;  
mutta saanko pyytää neuvoanne?  
Missä on hammaslääkäri?*

**Record 6B, beginning**

*Herra Black*

*Hammaslääkäri on hotellissa.*

*Eeva*

*Tämä hammaslääkäri on liian kallis.  
Olkaa hyvä, antakaa minulle vettä.*

*Herra Black*

*Tässä on.  
Helsingin ulkopuolella on hyvä ja halvempi hammas-  
lääkäri.*

*Eeva*

*Kiitoksia paljon.  
Hyvästi.*

**Record 6B, after first spiral**

*III. Mr. Brown and Liisa in the restaurant are talking  
about relatives*

*Herra Brown*

*Kahvia ja leipää, olkaa hyvä.  
Neiti Toivonen, onko teillä sisaria?*

*Liisa*

*Minulla on kaksi veljeä.*

*Herra Brown*

*Ovatko he koulussa?*

*Liisa*

*Toinen käy koulua ja toinen on työssä.*

*Herra Brown*

*Onko vanhempi tai nuorempi työssä?*

*Liisa*

*Vanhempi on konttorissa työssä.*

*Herra Black*

*Onko hän liikemies?*

*Liisa*

*Kyllä, hän on liikemies.  
Mikä on teidän veljienne ammatti?*

*Herra Brown*

*Minulla on kolme veljeä.  
Nuorin on maanviljelijä,  
vanhempi on hammaslääkäri,  
vanhin on pankinjohtaja.*

*Liisa*

*Ovatko he naimisissa?*

*Herra Brown*

*Kyllä, vanhin on naimisissa.*

*Hänellä on kaksi poikaa.*

*Liisa*

*Kuinka vanhoja he ovat?*

*Herra Brown*

*Nuorempi on kolme vuotta  
ja vanhempi viisi vuotta vanha.*

*Liisa*

*Tahdotteko enempi kahvia?*

*Herra Black*

*Kiitos ei.*

*Mutta haluan savukkeita ja tulitikkuja.*

*Liisa*

*Minulla on savukkeita ja tulitikkuja.*

*Tässä on, olkaa hyvä.*

*Herra Black*

*Kiitoksia paljon.*

## SECTION E—CONVERSATION

### 1. Covering the Finnish in Basic Sentences

(Individual Study)

Just as you did in Section E of unit 2, go back to the *Basic Sentences* of this unit, cover up the Finnish, and test yourself to see how many words and phrases you can say in Finnish when you are looking only at the English.

### 2. Vocabulary Check-Up

*To the Group Leader:* As in unit 2, go around the class calling on various students and asking them 'Kuinka sanotte suomeksi ...' for the English equivalents in the *Basic Sentences*, with their books closed. If any student does not answer in a reasonable time, do not allow hemming and hawing; call on another student. Make sure that every student speaks up loud enough so that all can hear. Do not allow any mumbling. Any student who cannot give satisfactory answers needs more review of the *Basic Sentences*.

As you did in unit 2, supply the Finnish expressions for the English equivalents in the *Basic Sentences*, when the Leader calls on you in turn. Do not fool around and waste time; give your answers in a clear, loud voice, so that everyone can hear you.

### 3. Conversation

*To the Group Leader:* Follow the same procedure as for Section F of unit 2. Have the students converse, first following closely the model of the conversations in *Listening In*, and then changing the situations slightly.

As you did in the *Conversation* in Section F of unit 2, first go through the *Basic Sentences* and *Listening In* sections of this Unit, taking turns reading them with your book open. As soon as you can speak the parts smoothly without looking at your books, then pass to acting them out in front of the group; keep this up until you can do this easily and smoothly.

Then you can change the situations somewhat, and introduce material from the previous units. Use your imaginations in thinking up various combinations of situations. Here are some suggestions:

- a. Two friends meet. One asks the other where you can find a barber. The other answers, there's a barber in the hotel. The friends walk to the barber talking on the way about the work each of them does (one is a farmer, the other a shoemaker), and about the work of their fathers, brothers, sisters, sons, daughters.
- b. A works in an office, and he's telling his girl about it. He then invites her for dinner to a restaurant just outside Helsinki. At the restaurant they drink beer, then they go to a movie. After the movie, A must go to the station. Then follows a discussion about time, arrival and departure of trains. He says good-bye.
- c. B wants to know if C is going to school. C says, no, he's going to the dentist, and asks B if he would be good enough to introduce him. A promises to do it. B says he's glad, because he doesn't speak Finnish. A tells him to speak more slowly. B thanks him and they part.

In this way, you can go on conversing until everyone is able to speak every part of the conversation *with absolute ease* and *without errors*.



## SECTION F—CONVERSATION (Cont.)

Continue the conversations started in Section E. If necessary to make the conversations smoother and more successful, review parts 1 and 2 of Section E.

### Finder List

This finder list has all the new words and suffixes used in this unit. These, as well as those of the previous two units, are words and expressions that you should know perfectly by this time.

<i>ammatti</i>	trade
<i>enempi</i>	more
<i>enin</i>	most
<i>hammaslääkäri</i>	dentist
<i>he</i>	they
<i>Helsingin</i>	of Helsinki
<i>hän</i>	he <i>or</i> she
<i>hänellä on</i>	he <i>or</i> she has
<i>hänen</i>	his
<i>-in</i>	-est
<i>isänne</i>	your father's
<i>kaikki</i>	all
<i>kolmas</i>	third

<i>konttori</i>	office
<i>koulua</i>	some school
<i>kysyä</i>	to ask
<i>käy</i>	goes
<i>käydä</i>	to visit
<i>lapsia</i>	some children
<i>liikemies</i>	business man
<i>maanviljelijä</i>	farmer
<i>maatilansa</i>	his farm
<i>mikä</i>	what
<i>minkä</i>	of which
<i>-mpi</i>	-er
<i>mutta</i>	but
<i>naimisissa</i>	married
<i>nuori</i>	young
<i>olen</i>	I am
<i>ovat</i>	they are
<i>pankin</i>	of the bank
<i>paras</i>	best
<i>parempi</i>	better
<i>parhain</i>	best
<i>parturi</i>	barber
<i>poikaa</i>	some son <i>or</i> some boy

*räätäli*  
*sisar*  
*sisareni*  
*sisaria*  
*sisarta*  
*-ssa*  
*Suomi*  
*suutari*  
  
*teette*  
*teidän*  
*teillä on*

tailor  
sister  
my sister  
some sisters  
some sister  
inside  
Finland  
shoemaker  
  
you do  
your  
you have

*terve*  
*toimi*  
*toinen*  
*työ*  
  
*ulkopuolella*  
  
*vanha*  
*vanhoja*  
*veljeä*  
*veljienne*  
*veljiä*  
*vuotta*

healthy  
occupation  
other  
work  
  
outside  
  
old  
old (they)  
some brother  
your brothers'  
some brothers  
some year

## WHERE ARE YOU FROM?

## SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

Go through the *Basic Sentences* in unison. Then work on the *Hints on Pronunciation* and after that go through the *Basic Sentences* at least twice more individually.

## 1. Basic Sentences

Record 6B, after space

*Herra Jussila and Mr. Smith talk about their homes and families.*

---

**ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS**


---

**FINNISH**


---

*Herra Smith*

your home  
Where's your home?

*kotinne*  
*Missä on teidän kotinne?*

*Herra Jussila*

from Turku  
I'm from Turku.

*Turusta*  
*Minä olen Turusta.*

*Herra Smith*

Turku  
to the north  
to the south  
from Helsinki

*Turku  
pohjoiseen  
etelään  
Helsingistä*

Is Turku to the north or to the south of Helsinki?

*Onko Turku pohjoiseen tai etelään Helsingistä?*

*Herra Jussila*

No.

*Ei.*

to the west  
Turku is to the west of Helsinki.

*länteen  
Turku on länteen Helsingistä.*

**Record 7A, beginning**

*Herra Smith*

far<sup>1</sup>  
How far is Turku from Helsinki?

*kaukana  
Kuinka kaukana on Turku Helsingistä?*

*Herra Jussila*

about  
some kilometer<sup>2</sup>  
It's about a hundred kilometers from Helsinki.

*noin  
kilometriä  
Se on noin sata kilometriä Helsingistä.*

---

<sup>1</sup>This line was omitted from the records.

<sup>2</sup>One kilometer equals 5/8 of a mile, and is abbreviated km.

long time  
you have been  
How long have you been in Finland?

*Herra Smith*

*kauan  
olette olleet  
Kuinka kauan olette olleet Suomessa?*

I've been  
some month  
I've been here for three months.

*Herra Jussila*

*olen ollut  
kuukautta  
Olen ollut täällä kolme kuukautta.*

very  
well  
some Finnish  
You speak Finnish very well!

*Herra Jussila*

*oikein  
hyvin  
suomea  
Te puhutte suomea oikein hyvin!*

Thank you.

*Herra Smith*

*Kiitos.*

if  
slowly  
I understand better when you speak slowly.

*jos  
hitaasti  
Minä ymmärrän paremmin, jos te puhutte hitaasti.*

everything  
I say  
Do you understand everything I say?

*Herra Jussila*

*kaiken  
sanon  
Ymmärrättekö te kaiken, mitä minä sanon?*

*Herra Smith*

Yes, indeed, if you only speak more slowly.

*Kyllä, jos vain te puhutte hitaammin.*

*Herra Jussila*

your wife  
also  
Is your wife here too?

*vaimonne  
myöskin  
Onko teidän vaimonne myöskin täällä?*

*Herra Smith*

No, she's in America.

*Ei ole, hän on Amerikassa.*

my son  
army  
My son is in the army.

*poikani  
armeija  
Poikani on armeijassa.*

soldier  
He's a soldier, and he's in the United States too.

*sotilas  
Hän on sotilas, ja hän on myöskin Yhdysvalloissa.*

*Herra Jussila*

Does your daughter go to school?

*Käykö tyttärenne koulua?*

*Herra Smith*

No.  
My daughter works.

*Ei.  
Tyttäreni käy työssä.*

How old is she?

*Herra Jussila*

*Kuinka vanha hän on?*

She's twenty years old.

*Herra Smith*

*Hän on kaksikymmentä vuotta vanha.*

Where does she work?

*Herra Jussila*

*Missä työssä hän on?*

In an office.

*Herra Smith*

*Hän on konttorissa.*

Where?

*Herra Jussila*

*Missä?*

factory  
clerk  
She's a clerk in a factory.

*Herra Smith*

*tehdas  
konttoriapulainen  
Hän on konttoriapulainen tehtaassa.*

In a factory?

*Herra Jussila*

*Tehtaassako?*

*Herra Smith*

Yes, in an armament factory, but she's here with me. *ase*  
*Kyllä, asetehtaassa, mutta hän on kanssani täällä.*

*Herra Jussila*

Is this factory here in Helsinki? *Onko tehdas täällä Helsingissä?*

*Herra Smith*

No. *Ei.*  
to the east *itään*  
It's to the east of Helsinki. *Se on itään Helsingistä.*

*Herra Jussila*

How old is your son? *Kuinka vanha on teidän poikanne?*

*Herra Smith*

twenty-two *kaksikymmentäkaksi*  
He's twenty-two. *Hän on kaksikymmentäkaksi.*

## 2. Hints on Pronunciation

In the previous unit you were introduced to some of the Finnish consonants, and you will now have opportunity to practice some of the others.

*Consonant h:* In English, the consonant *h* is restricted pretty much to the beginning of words (*hat*) or, at any rate, to the beginning of syllables (*be-have*);



it does not occur either at the end of syllables, or at the end of words. The situation in Finnish is quite different. The *h* occurs both at the beginning and the end of syllables (and at the beginning of words). You must listen carefully and imitate especially those words where *h* ends syllables.

## PRACTICE 15

### Record 1B, beginning

<i>halpa</i>	cheap	<i>tuhat</i>	thousand
<i>vanha</i>	old	<i>kahdeksan</i>	eight
<i>tohtori</i>	doctor	<i>yhdeksän</i>	nine

*Consonants m and n:* The letter *n* has several pronunciations. It is pronounced *n* always at the beginning and the end of words; it is pronounced *n* also in the middle of words, except when it occurs before either a *p* or a *k* or a *g*. Before a *p* you are likely to hear an *m* instead of an *n*:

## PRACTICE 16

### Record 1B, after first spiral

*eteenpäin, eteenpäin* ahead  
(Pronounced as *eteempäin*.)

The combination *nk* is pronounced similarly to the English *nk* combination as in *inky*. When *n* is followed by *kk*, pronounce *nk* followed by *k*, somewhat as the *nk c* is pronounced in *mink cape*.

## PRACTICE 17

### Record 1B, after second spiral

*minkä* of which *pankki* bank

The combination *ng* is pronounced similarly to the English *ng* in *singing*; but while in English the back of your tongue is pressed against the rear of your palate but for an instant, in Finnish it is pressed there almost twice as long, especially when the *ng* comes between vowels.

## PRACTICE 18

### Record 1B, after third spiral

*Helsingistä* from Helsinki *englantia* English

The consonant *m* is pronounced similarly to *m* of English *maim*. Remember, again, that the letter *n* before *p* is pronounced *m*. (The *m* is found as word initial, and occurs inside words, but never at the end.)

## PRACTICE 19

Record 1B, after fourth spiral

<i>minä</i>	I	<i>halvempi</i>	cheaper
<i>tämä</i>	this	<i>armeija</i>	army

Now go through the *Basic Sentences* once more individually, with your book open. Again, as you re-

peat after your Guide, pay special attention to the examples of the sounds you have just practiced; if there is anything you are uncertain about, ask your Guide to repeat.

Then go through the *Basic Sentences* at least once more, taking turns in doing solo work, and with books closed. Listen carefully to the Guide, and make sure that your pronunciation satisfies him.

## SECTION B—WORD STUDY AND REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

### 1. Word Study (Individual Study)

In doing the *Word Study*, follow the same procedure as in earlier units.

*Comment One—More About Numbers*

<i>seitsemäntoista</i>	seventeen
------------------------	-----------

The numbers from eleven through nineteen are formed by adding *-toista* to the digits. For example: *yksitoista* 'eleven', *kolmetoista* 'thirteen', *kahdeksantoista* 'eighteen', *yhdeksäntoista* 'nineteen'.

<i>kaksikymmentäkaksi</i>	twenty-two
---------------------------	------------

Numbers 20, 30, 40, and so forth, through 90, are formed by adding *-kymmentä* to the digits. For example, *neljäkymmentä* 'forty', *viisikymmentä* 'fifty', *seitsemänkymmentä* 'seventy'.

To form the numbers between 21 through 29, 71 through 79, and so forth, you must add the given digit to the number in question. For example, *kolmekymmentäviisi* 'thirty-five', *kuusikymmentäyksi* 'sixty-one', *kahdeksänkymmentäyhdeksän* 'eighty-nine', *yhdeksänkymmentäseitsemän* 'ninety-seven'.

*Comment Two—Suffix -ni*

<i>poikani</i>	my son	<i>tyttäreni</i>	my daughter
----------------	--------	------------------	-------------

The suffix *-ni* in Finnish indicates possession by the

speaker and is translated as 'my'. Note these examples: *hotellini* 'my hotel', *vaimoni* 'my wife', *maitoni* 'my milk', *pankkini* 'my bank', *veljeni* 'my brother', *sisareni* 'my sister', *isäni* 'my father'.

Comment Three—Suffix *-nsa*  
*maatilansa* his farm

The suffix *-nsa* in Finnish indicates possession by 'him, her, it, them', and is translated as 'his' or 'their'. Note these examples: *ravintolansa* 'his (or their) restaurant', *johtajansa* 'his (or their) manager', *työnsä* 'his (or their) work', *konttorinsa* 'his (or their) office', *lapsensa* 'his (or their) children'.

Comment Four—Suffix *-nne*  
*kotinne* your home      *vaimonne* your wife

The suffix *-nne* in Finnish indicates possession by 'you' and is translated as 'your'. Note these examples: *asemanne* 'your station', *koulunne* 'your school', *toimenne* 'your occupation', *parturinne* 'your barber'.

#### Comment Five—Possessive Suffixes

The suffixes *-ni* 'my', *-nsa* 'his . . .', *-nne* 'your', are known together as *possessive suffixes*. Other suffixes which come under this classification, but which you

haven't yet encountered are: *-s(i)* and *-mme*. The suffix *-s(i)* indicates possession by the second singular 'thee' and is translated 'your' (or literally as 'thy'). You use it when you address people whom you know well and when you talk informally. Some of your Guides will pronounce it as *-si*, but you may well run across the form *-s*. The suffix *-mme* indicates possession by 'us' and is translated 'our'. Note these examples: *kotimme* 'our home', *päivällisesi* 'your dinner', *poikasi* 'your son', *räätälisi* 'your tailor', *suutarimme* 'our shoemaker', *vaimosi* 'your wife'.

*kanssani* with me

Note the appearance of the suffix *-ni* in this word. You can say: *kanssasi* 'with you', *kanssaan* (or *kanssansa* more rarely) 'with him or them', *kanssamme* 'with us', *kanssanne* 'with you'.

Comment Six—Suffix *-lle*  
*oikealle* to the right      *vasemmalle* to the left  
*päivälliselle* to dinner

This suffix means, roughly, 'to' or 'for'. Note these examples: *tulisitteko kanssani kahville* 'would you come with me for (some) coffee?', *junalle* 'to the train', *maatilalle* 'to the farm', *koululle* 'to the school' (but 'to (attend) school': *koulua!*).

*Comment Seven—Suffix -sta*

*Turusta* from Turku      *Helsingistä* from Helsinki

This suffix means, roughly, 'from'. Note these examples: *asemasta* 'from the station', *ravintolasta* 'from the restaurant', *käymälästä* 'from the toilet', *kodista* 'from the home'.

**2. Covering English and Finnish of Word Study**

Review this Word Study by reading aloud all of the

Finnish expressions. Then cover the English and make sure that you know the meaning of every item. Finally, cover the Finnish and see if you can say each Finnish expression when you are looking only at the English.

**3. Review of Basic Sentences**

With Guide or records, review the first half of *Basic Sentences* for better pronunciation, meaning, and examples of points in the Word Study.

**SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES (Cont.)**

**1. Review of Basic Sentences (Cont.)**

Review the second half of *Basic Sentences*.

**2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences**

Go back to the Basic Sentences in Section A, and read them aloud covering up the English. Note any words or phrases you are not sure about, and, when you have finished reading the *Basic Sentences*, uncover the English and look up the meaning of what you did not get. Keep this up until you know all the meanings completely.

**3. What Would You Say?**

I. The following sentences contain one or more words followed by —. These blanks indicate that a suffix is to be supplied by you. In some cases more than one solution is possible.

- a. *On — konttori vasemma —?*
- b. *Ravintola — on perunoita.*
- c. *Koti — on kaukana Turu —.*
- d. *Hotelli — on asema — kolme kilometriä.*
- e. *On — sotilas armeija —?*
- f. *He ovat veljiä — ja sisaria —.*

- g. *Tämä ravintola on kallii* —.  
 h. *Terve* — *tytär käy koulua* —.

II. In the following sentences a word is missing, but it appears in the list following the sentences. Fill in from the list the appropriate blanks.

- a. *Herra johtaja, kuinka monta* — *on teidän konttorissanne?*  
 b. *Koulu on asemasta* —.  
 c. *Sotilas ja hänen* — *ovat junassa.*  
 d. *Minä* — *olutta.*  
 e. — *ja veljeni ovat Turussa.*  
 f. *Hän on* — *pankissa.*  
 g. *Koulussa on* — *poikaa.*  
 h. *Olkaa hyvä* — *suomea.*

- i. *Maanviljelijä on* — *mies.*

1. *vaimonsa*
2. *oikealle*
3. *parturi*
4. *työssä*
5. *konttoriapulaista*
6. *yksi*
7. *kotimme*
8. *nuorin*
9. *tuhat*
10. *haluaisin*
11. *puhukaa*
12. *isäni*
13. *räättäli*

## SECTION D—LISTENING IN

### 1. What Did You Say?

Give your answers in Finnish for the last exercise in the preceding section, when the Leader calls for them. Do it without reading from the book, if possible. Other members of the group will criticize your choice if they disagree with it. Then give the English equivalents of all the expressions in the exercise.

### 2. Word Study Check-Up

Give the correct Finnish for each English expression in the Word Study, without having to read it from the book. If you cannot do this easily, it means you need to put in more work on the Word Study. The Group Leader will give the English and call on different members of the group for the Finnish.

### 3. Listening In

With your book closed, repeat the Finnish of the following conversations immediately after the Guide or the record. After each conversation, check up on the meaning of anything you do not understand, by asking someone else or by going back to the *Basic Sentences* if necessary.

Go through the conversation again with books open, following the same plan as before, imitating carefully and keeping in mind the meaning of everything you say.

#### Record 7B, beginning

*I. Mr. Black and Mr. Toivonen have a discussion while waiting for a train.*

*Herra Black*

*Saapuuko junanne kello neljä?*

*Herra Toivonen*

*Ei, junani saapuu Turusta kello kuusi.*

*Herra Black*

*Onko teidän vaimonne junassa?*

*Herra Toivonen*

*On kyllä, ja poikani myöskin.*

*Herra Black*

*Onko teidän poikanne armeijassa?*

*Herra Toivonen*

*On.*

*Herra Black*

*Kuinka vanha hän on?*

*Herra Toivonen*

*Poikani on kaksikymmentäseitsemän vuotta vanha.*

*Herra Black*

*Onko tyttärenne koulussa?*

*Herra Toivonen*

*Ei, hän on asetehaassa työssä.*

*Herra Black*

*Haluaisitteko syödä kanssani?*

*Herra Toivonen*

*Kiitos mielelläni!*

*Herra Black*

*Haluaisin esitellä vaimoni ja tyttäreni.*

*Herra Toivonen*

*Hauska tutustua.*

*Herra Black*

*Onko teidän maatilanne kaukana Helsingistä?*

*Herra Toivonen*

*Se on noin ykstoista kilometriä*

*Helsingin ulkopuolella.*

*Herra Black*

*Niinkö kaukana!*

*Herra Toivonen*

*Tulisitteko kanssani maatilalleni?*

*Herra Black*

*Haluaisin käydä hammaslääkärissä.*

*Herra Toivonen*

*Veljeni on hammaslääkäri.*

*Hänen konttorinsa on kolme kilometriä maatilasta.*

*Herra Black*

*Missä täällä on parturi ja suutari?*

*Herra Toivonen*

*Hotellissa on parturi, mutta täällä on halvempi.*

*Herra Black*

*Onko hotellissa myöskin suutari?*

*Herra Toivonen*

*Ei.*

*Suutari on asemasta vasemmalle.*

*Herra Black*

*Onko hän kallis?*

*Herra Toivonen*

*Ei, hän on halpa ja hyvä.*

**Record 7B, after first spiral**

*II. Mr. Stone tells Mr. Jussila about Finnish and English; then they speak about his family and home.*

*Herra Stone*

*Anteeksi, puhutteko englantia?*

*Herra Jussila*

*Minä ymmärrän vain suomea.*

*Herra Stone*

*Minä olen Amerikasta.*

*Herra Jussila*

*New Yorkistako?*

*Herra Stone*

*Ei, Floridasta.*

*Herra Jussila*

*Oletteko olleet kauan Suomessa?*

*Herra Stone*

*Vain kuusi kuukautta.*

*Herra Jussila*

*Puhutteko suomea Yhdysvalloissa?*

*Herra Stone*

*Kyllä, vaimoni on Suomesta.*

*Herra Jussila*

*Niinkö!*

*Oletteko olleet kauan naimisissa?*

*Herra Stone*

*Kaksikymmentäyksi vuotta.*

*Herra Jussila*

*Onko vaimonne myöskin Suomessa?*

*Herra Stone*

*Kyllä, hänellä on maatila Helsingin ulkopuolella.*

**Record 8A, beginning**

*Herra Jussila*

*Ovatko poikanne täällä?*

*Herra Stone*

*Ei, minulla on vain tytär.*

*Herra Jussila*

*Kuinka vanha hän on?*

*Herra Stone*

*Hän on yhdeksäntoista vuotta vanha.*

*Herra Jussila*

*Mikä on teidän tyttärenne ammatti?*



*Herra Stone*

*Hän on maanviljelijä.*

*Herra Jussila*

*Suomessako?*

*Herra Stone*

*Niin, hän on vaimoni kanssa.*

**Record 8A, after first spiral**

*III. Paul and John meet and discuss the price of cigarettes and matches.*

*Paul*

*Terve!*

*John*

*Terve, terve!*

*Paul*

*Minä haluaisin amerikkalaisia savukkeita.*

*John*

*Liike on suoraan eteenpäin.*

*Paul*

*Kuinka paljon on laatikon hinta?*

*John*

*Se maksaa neljä markkaa.*

*Paul*

*Saanko minä myöskin tulitikkuja?*

*John*

*Ei, tulitikkulaatikko maksaa viisikymmentä penniä.*

*Paul*

*Haluaisitteko tulla kanssani kahville?*

*John*

*Kiitos, ravintolassa on kahvia.*

## SECTION E—CONVERSATION

### 1. Covering the Finnish in Basic Sentences

### 2. Vocabulary Check-Up

As in previous units, the Group Leader will call on various members of the group to give the Finnish expressions which correspond to the English in the *Basic Sentences*.

### 3. Conversation

The Leader will assign parts in the *Listening In* conversation. Act them out in front of the group; keep this up until you can do it easily and smoothly. Then change the situations somewhat. You now have material which you can work into your conversations. Invent the same kind of conversation which you did for the previous units. One person meets another, and conversation takes place on models such as these:

1. An American soldier meets a Finn in Turku. The American asks for directions and how he can find a barber. He excuses himself for his inability to speak

good Finnish. The Finn asks him if he has a family, whereupon he explains that, indeed, he has several children. The Finn says he is a farmer and invites the American to his farm for dinner.

2. The American is now at the farm of his new Finnish friend. The Finn introduces the American to his wife and his daughter. The daughter spent years in Minnesota. The American speaks at length about his family describing occupation of his son and ages of his younger children.

3. The Finns then talk about their relatives describing where their homes are with regard to distance and direction from Turku. Then he talks about the business of his father (who is a tailor), his brother's trade (he's a shoemaker), and his son's (he's a bank-clerk). His son is married to the daughter of the bank-manager.

4. The American thanks him for the dinner. He says he must go to the station to inquire about trains to Helsinki. They all say good-bye.

## SECTION F—CONVERSATION (Cont.)

Continue the conversations started in Section E. If necessary for better conversations, review parts 1 and 2 of Section E by covering the English and making sure that you can give the Finnish for every English expression. Keep this up until you can do absolutely everything easily. Then test yourself by picking English expressions at random and making sure you can give the Finnish when the Finnish is covered.

Review the entire unit. Check up on your knowledge of the spoken Finnish by covering all English equivalents and making sure that you know the meaning of every Finnish expression in the unit. Then cover the Finnish and see if you can speak it promptly and easily when you are looking only at the English.

### Finder List

Here is the alphabetical list of the new items to be learned in the unit.

<i>armeija</i>	army
<i>ase</i>	weapon
<i>aselehdas</i>	armament factory

<i>etelään</i>	to the south
<i>hitaasti</i>	slowly
<i>hyvin</i>	well
<i>itään</i>	to the east
<i>jos</i>	if
<i>kaiken</i>	everything
<i>kauan</i>	long time
<i>kaukana</i>	far
<i>kilometriä</i>	some kilometer
<i>konttoriapulainen</i>	clerk
<i>koti</i>	home
<i>kuukautta</i>	some month
<i>länteen</i>	to the west
<i>-lle</i>	to or for
<i>-mme</i>	our
<i>myöskin</i>	also
<i>-ni</i>	my
<i>-nne</i>	your

<i>noin</i>	about
<i>-nsa</i>	his, her, its, their
<i>rikein</i>	very
<i>olen ollut</i>	I've been
<i>ollette olleet</i>	you have been
<i>poika</i>	son <i>or</i> boy
<i>pohjoiseen</i>	to the north

<i>sanon</i>	I say
<i>-s(i)</i>	yours ( <i>or</i> thy)
<i>sotilas</i>	soldier
<i>-sta</i>	from
<i>suomea</i>	some Finnish
<i>tehdas</i>	factory
<i>vaimo</i>	wife

## LET'S TALK ABOUT THE WEATHER

## SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

Once through the *Basic Sentences*, in unison, then the *Hints on Pronunciation*, then twice more through the *Basic Sentences* individually.

## 1. Basic Sentences

Record 8A, after space

*Eero Anttila and Väinö Sara sit in the lobby of a hotel and talk about the weather*

## ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS

## FINNISH

*Eero Anttila*

yesterday  
was  
nice *or* beautiful  
day

It was a nice day yesterday.

*eilen  
oli  
kaunis  
päivä*

*Eilen oli kaunis päivä.*

*Väinö Sara*

today  
cold  
But it's cold today.

*tänään  
kylmä  
Mutta tänään on kylmä.*

you  
have lived  
Have you lived in this hotel long?

Yes, about four months.

I live in  
I live in this hotel, too.

It's a fine hotel.

just now  
I just got back from the bank.

still  
outside  
it is raining  
Is it still raining outside?

*Eero Anttila*

*sinä  
olet asunut  
Oletko sinä asunut kauan tässä hotellissa?*

*Väinö Sara*

*Kyllä, noin neljä kuukautta.*

*Eero Anttila*

*asun  
Minä asun myöskin tässä hotellissa.*

*Väinö Sara*

*Tämä on hyvä hotelli.*

*Eero Anttila*

*juuri  
Minä kävin juuri pankissa.*

*Väinö Sara*

*vielä  
ulkona  
sataa  
Vieläkö ulkona sataa?*

Record 8B, beginning

warm  
No, it's quite warm out

*Eero Anttila*<sup>1</sup>  
lämmiin  
*Ei, ulkona on lämmin.*

let's go  
to the restaurant  
beer  
Let's go to the restaurant for some beer

*Väinö Sara*  
mennään  
ravintolaan  
olut  
*Mennään ravintolaan oluelle.*

Sure, let's go.  
Cold beer is what I want.

*Eero Anttila*  
*Mennään vain.*  
*Kylmä olut on juuri mitä haluan.*

he comes  
mother  
into town  
Is your mother coming to town today?

*Väinö Sara*  
tulee  
äiti  
kaupunkiin  
*Tuleeko äitisi tänään kaupunkiin?*

Yes, she's coming tonight.

*Eero Anttila*  
*Kyllä, hän tulee tänä iltana.*

<sup>1</sup>The next two lines are repeated twice, once at the end of record 8A, once at the beginning of record 8B.

*Väinö Sara*

Is she coming for dinner?

*Tuleeko hän päivälliselle?*

*Eero Anttila*

Yes, and she'll be leaving on the ten o'clock train for  
her farm.

*Kyllä, ja lähtee kello kymmenen junassa maatilallensa.*

*Väinö Sara*

lunch  
Why not have lunch here?

*lounas  
Eikö syödä lounas täällä?*

*Eero Anttila*

No thank you!  
more  
I'd only like to have some more beer.

*Kiitos eil  
lisää  
Haluaisin vain lisää olutta.*

*Väinö Sara*

Miss!  
Two more beers, please!

*Neiti!  
Kaksi olutta, olkaa hyvä.*

*Eero Anttila*

There comes my mother!

*Tuolla tulee äitini!*



How do you do, Mrs. Anttila!

Hello mother!

you want  
Would you like some beer?

Hello Väinö!

Hello son!

No thank you, I'd like some coffee.

you like  
How do you like Helsinki?

always  
I like Helsinki, but it's always so cold here.

fall  
winter  
they are cold  
Fall and winter are cold in Helsinki.

*Väinö Sara*

*Hyvää päivää, rouva Anttila!*

*Eero Anttila*

*Päivää äiti!*

*haluat  
Haluatko olutta?*

*Rouva Anttila*

*Päivää Väinö!*

*Päivää poikani!*

*Ei kiitos, haluan kahvia.*

*Väinö Sara*

*pidätte  
Mitä pidätte Helsingistä?*

*Rouva Anttila*

*aina  
Pidän Helsingistä, mutta täällä on aina niin kylmä.*

*Eero Anttila*

*syksy  
talvi  
ovat kylmät  
Syksy ja talvi ovat kylmät Helsingissä.*

*Rouva Anttila*

I never  
during summer  
I haven't been  
I've never been in Helsinki during the summer.

*en koskaan  
kesällä  
en ole ollut  
En ole koskaan ollut Helsingissä kesällä.*

*Väinö Sara*

must see  
You must see Helsinki in summer.

*on nähtävä  
Teidän on nähtävä Helsinki kesällä.*

*Rouva Anttila*

next  
during next summer  
I come  
Next summer I'll come, if I can.

*ensi  
ensi kesänä  
tulen  
Ensi kesänä tulen, jos voin.*

when  
you come  
But Väinö, when are you coming to our farm?

*milloin  
sinä tulet  
Mutta Väinö, milloin sinä tulet maatilallemme?*

**Record 9A, beginning**

*Väinö Sara*

during the week  
with Eero  
I'll come with Eero next week.

*viikolla  
Eeron kanssa  
Tulen Eeron kanssa ensi viikolla.*

your  
soon  
Mother, your train'll leave soon.

*Eero Anttila*

*sinun  
pian  
Äiti, sinun junasi lähtee pian.*

At ten o'clock.  
now  
It's nine o'clock now.

*Rouva Anttila*

*Kello kymmenen.  
nyt  
Kello on nyt yhdeksän.*

How many kilometers is it to your farm?

*Väinö Sara*

*Kuinka monta kilometriä on maatilallenne?*

About sixty kilometers from Helsinki.

*Eero Anttila*

*Noin kuusikymmentä kilometriä Helsingistä.*

hour's  
trip  
About an hour's trip by train?

*Väinö Sara*

*tunnin  
matka  
Noin tunninko junamatka?*

at home  
No, I'll be at home around twelve o'clock.

*Rouva Anttila*

*kotona  
Ei, olen kotona noin kello kaksitoista.*



some other sound instead of the *d*. This *d* in Finnish resembles the English *d* of *deed*, but it's without aspiration (see discussion of aspiration in unit 3, p. 52.)

## PRACTICE 20

Record 1B, after fifth spiral

<i>kahdeksan</i>	eight	<i>syödä</i>	to eat
<i>käydä</i>	to visit	<i>tehdas</i>	factory

**Consonant *v*:** The Finnish *v* is generally similar to the English *v* of *very*, but you will hear some Finnish speakers pronounce it more like an English *w* or some sound between *v* and *w*. Always imitate the pronunciation of your own Guide. (The *v* will occur at the beginning and the middle, but not the end of words.)

## PRACTICE 21

Record 1B, after sixth spiral

<i>veljeä</i>	some brother	<i>kahvia</i>	some coffee
<i>savukkeita</i>	some cigarettes	<i>terve</i>	hello
<i>rouva</i>		<i>Mrs.</i>	

**Consonant *l*:** The Finnish *l*, before a vowel is quite similar to the English *l* of *lily* or *polo*. (It may be found at the beginning, middle, and, rarely, the end of words.) Before a consonant, you may think you

hear a very short vowel (*hal<sup>a</sup>pa*), as pronounced by some speakers.

## PRACTICE 22

Record 1B, after seventh spiral

<i>liikemies</i>	businessman	<i>neljä</i>	four
<i>haluan</i>	I want	<i>halpa</i>	cheap

**Consonant *r*:** The Finnish *r* is rather different from the English *r*. When you pronounce it, your tongue should be tapping against the hard ridge behind your upper teeth. The sound may be just a single flap or a trill of several flaps in rapid succession. The nearest sound to this Finnish *r* is the *tt* of *butter*, as pronounced by some speakers of English. (The *r* sound may be found at the beginning, the middle, and end of words.)

## PRACTICE 23

Record 1B, after eighth spiral

<i>rouva</i>	Mrs.	<i>hammaslääkäri</i>	dentist
<i>parturi</i>	barber	<i>sisar</i>	sister

## Check Yourself

Are you taking every opportunity to practice your Finnish by talking with other members of the group or with Finnish speaking people whom you may meet?

## SECTION B—WORD STUDY AND REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

### 1. Word Study (Individual Study)

#### *Comment One—Noun Stems*

If you take a Finnish noun and strip it of all suffixes at the end, you will arrive at a theoretical form known as *stem*. Stems are of two kinds, and it is essential that you know to which of the stem types a given word belongs before you can add the necessary suffixes.

#### *Type I.*

<i>syksy</i>	fall	<i>koulu</i>	school
<i>työ</i>	work	<i>vaimo</i>	wife
<i>isä</i>	father	<i>johtaja</i>	manager

If you examine the nouns in the left-hand column, you will note that each ends in what we have called a vowel of the *y*-group and the nouns in the right-hand column end in what we have called a vowel of the *u*-group. When a noun, stripped of all suffixes, ends in any of the above vowels it belongs to stem type I. A given suffix will be added directly to this stem (but subject to certain automatic changes in the stem, which will be pointed out later). Thus:

<i>syksy + stä</i>	from the fall	<i>koulu + mme</i>	our school
<i>työ + ssä</i>	in work	<i>vaimo + lle</i>	to the wife
<i>isä + ni</i>	my father	<i>johtaja + nsa</i>	his manager

Now note these stems:

<i>ammatti</i>	trade	<i>konttori</i>	office
<i>tohtori</i>	doctor	<i>parturi</i>	garber
<i>räättäli</i>	taylor	<i>suutari</i>	shoemaker

If you study these words you will find that they have two things in common: they all end in *-i*; they all consist of three syllables. It may be stated that all stems ending in *-i* and consisting of three (or more) syllables belong to stem type I. See how suffixes are added directly to the stem:

<i>ammatti + ssa</i>	in trade
<i>tohtori + mme</i>	our doctor
<i>räättäli + stä</i>	from the tailor
<i>konttori + lle</i>	to the office
<i>parturi + si</i>	your (informal) barber
<i>suutari + nsa</i>	his shoemaker

#### *Comment Two—Suffix -t*

<i>elokuvat</i>	(movie) pictures	<i>pojat</i>	boys
-----------------	------------------	--------------	------

The suffix *-t* is one of several plural markers. Its distinguishing characteristic is that no suffixes can follow it. It is added regularly to vowel stems: *rouvat*

'ladies', *tohtorit* 'doctors'. The change in the stem of *poika* to *pojat* in the plural is one of the regular, automatic changes which take place in Finnish; others occur in *laatikko*, becoming *laatikot* 'boxes', *ammatti* becoming *ammattit* 'trades'; these will be taken up in detail later.

### Comment Three—Suffix -n and the Object Relation

<i>kuinka te sanotte tämän suomeksi?</i>	how do you say this in Finnish?
<i>minä haluaisin laatikon savukkeita</i>	I want a pack of cigarettes

In the English sentence *John hit Paul* the only way of telling who is the actor and who the sufferer, is by the relative position of the two names to the verb *hit*—the object of the hitting follows the verb. In the sentence *he hit him*, the actor (*he*) differs from the sufferer (*him*) in form as well as in relative position. In Finnish, the object relationship is indicated by the suffix *-n* (*tämä+n*, *laatiko+n*) when the noun is in the singular; in the plural, as in English, actor and sufferer are not differentiated in form. Note these examples: *minä haluan savukkeen* 'I want a cigarette', *antakaa savukkeet minulle* 'give me the cigarettes'; *haluan hyvän kellon* 'I want a good watch', *antakaa minulle hyvät kellot* 'give me good watches'; *ymmärrän sen* 'I under-

stand that'; *haluan halvat suutarit ja räätälit* 'I want inexpensive shoemakers and tailors'.

### Comment Four—Suffix -lta

<i>kahdelta</i>	at two	<i>neljältä</i>	at four
<i>asemalta</i>		from the station	

This suffix, like the *-sta* suffix discussed in unit 4, page 74, means roughly 'from'. But while *-sta* means 'from the inside', *-lta* means 'from the outside'. When added to numbers, as in the examples above, *-lta* means 'at'—'at one' *yhdeltä*, 'at three' *kolmelta*, and so on (note the stem-change in *yksi* becoming *yhdeltä*). To say 'from a given time' you use *-sta*—'from one' *yhdestä*, 'from two' *kahdesta*, 'from five' *viidestä*, and so on. Note these expressions: *maatilalta on seitsemän kilometriä asemalle* 'from the farm it's seven kilometers to the station'; *koululta on tunnin matka asemalle* 'it's an hour's trip from the school to the station'; and *tuleeko hän koulusta* 'is he coming from (inside) school?'.

### Comment Five—Summary

This is what you've learned about Finnish words up to this point:

1. Two classes of words were mentioned: *nouns* and *verbs*. Any noun or verb may be broken down into a

*stem* and one or more *suffixes*. A noun stem is distinguished from a verb stem by a particular set of suffixes it takes.

2. There are two types of noun stems: the first type was discussed.

3. Noun stems take a characteristic set of suffixes known together as *case* suffixes. You've had so far five of these case suffixes, namely, *-n*, *-lle*, *-lta*, *-ssa*, *-sta*. Another set of suffixes characterising nouns are known together as *possessive* suffixes. You've had all five: *-ni*, *-s(i)*, *-nsa*, *-mme*, *-nne*. Nouns also take the plural suffix *-t*.

4. Some nouns take the *-mpi* and *-in* suffixes, and are known as *adjectives*.

5. You've had the *-ko* suffix, which is most often

added to verbs and makes a question out of a statement.

6. You've learned that in a given stem only certain vowels will occur, and not others. A given suffix is joined to a stem in accordance with vowel harmony.

## 2. Covering English and Finnish of Word Study

Check yourself on your knowledge of *Word Study* by covering, first the English, then the Finnish, and making sure you know everything thoroughly.

## 3. Review of Basic Sentences

With the Guide or records, review the first half of *Basic Sentences* as in previous units.

# SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES (Cont.)

## 1. Review of Basic Sentences (Cont.)

### 2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences

Go through the *Basic Sentences* in Section A and B, covering up the English and read aloud the Finnish. Check up on anything you do not know, until you are sure of everything.

## 3. What Would You Say?

Read aloud the following and pick out the expression you think most suitable.

1. You ask someone to go for some beer.

a. *Haluan olutta.*

b. *Mennään oluelle.*

c. *Olutta, olkaa hyvä.*



2. You say you like your hotel.
  - a. *Hotellinne on hyvin kaukana.*
  - b. *Se on hyvä hotelli.*
  - c. *Pidän hotellistani.*
3. You say fall is warm.
  - a. *Talvi on kaunis ja kylmä.*
  - b. *Ulkona sataa tänään.*
  - c. *Syksy on lämmin.*
4. You say you are thirty-three years old.
  - a. *Isäni on vanha liikemies.*
  - b. *Olen kolmekymmentäkolme vuotta vanha.*
  - c. *Poika on kolme vuotta vanha.*
5. You say hello.
  - a. *Näkemiin.*
  - b. *Hyvää yötä.*
  - c. *Terve.*
6. You say it is far away from here.
  - a. *Se on tuolla.*
  - b. *Se on kaukana täältä.*
  - c. *Tässä se on.*
7. You say your mother is beautiful.
  - a. *Veljesi on sotilas.*
  - b. *Sisareni on naimisissa.*
  - c. *Äitini on kaunis.*
8. You ask for your father's occupation.
  - a. *Onko isänne työssä tehtaassa?*
  - b. *Mikä on isäsi toimi?*
  - c. *Mikä on ammattisi?*
9. You say your mother is coming to town.
  - a. *Äitini lähtee maatilalle.*
  - b. *Äitimme on vanha.*
  - c. *Äitisi saapuu kaupunkiin.*
10. You say you'll come next week.
  - a. *Hän tulee ensi viikolla.*
  - b. *Tulen ensi viikolla.*
  - c. *Elokuvat alkavat ensi viikolla.*

### Combinations

Read all the Finnish words and phrases aloud. Then say aloud each expression in the left-hand column and follow it with a word in the right-hand column. Make

as many combinations as you can, but see that they do not conflict with common sense, or with grammar.

- |                               |                        |                                     |                         |
|-------------------------------|------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. <i>haluan lisää</i>        | a. <i>kilometriä</i>   | 13. <i>asun kaukana</i>             | m. <i>on kylmä</i>      |
| 2. <i>juuri nyt</i>           | b. <i>niinkö</i>       | 14. <i>sisareni käy</i>             | n. <i>koulua</i>        |
| 3. <i>onko äitisi</i>         | c. <i>tunnin matka</i> | 15. <i>missä on teidän</i>          | o. <i>sen</i>           |
| 4. <i>pian tulee</i>          | d. <i>miten</i>        | 16. <i>puhutteko</i>                | p. <i>talvi</i>         |
| 5. <i>mennään</i>             | e. <i>lähtee</i>       | 17. <i>juna lähtee</i>              | q. <i>mikä</i>          |
| 6. <i>ravintolaan on</i>      | f. <i>viikolla</i>     | 18. <i>missä on</i>                 | r. <i>kahvista</i>      |
| 7. <i>oletko asunut kauan</i> | g. <i>suomea</i>       | 19. <i>mitä laatikko savukkeita</i> | s. <i>hammaslääkäri</i> |
| 8. <i>tänään tulee kaunis</i> | h. <i>päivä</i>        | 20. <i>ulkona</i>                   | t. <i>kaupungissa</i>   |
| 9. <i>asemalle on viisi</i>   | i. <i>kaupunkiin</i>   |                                     | u. <i>aikaan</i>        |
| 10. <i>näkemiin ensi</i>      | j. <i>maksaa</i>       |                                     | v. <i>täältä</i>        |
| 11. <i>milloin juna</i>       | k. <i>kotona</i>       |                                     | w. <i>hyvää vain</i>    |
| 12. <i>pidätkö</i>            | l. <i>satsa</i>        |                                     | x. <i>kotinne</i>       |
|                               |                        |                                     | y. <i>olutta</i>        |
|                               |                        |                                     | z. <i>hitaasti</i>      |

## SECTION D—LISTENING IN

### 1. What Did You Say?

*To the Group Leader:* There is a new type of exercise in the preceding section of this unit. In this exercise, *Combinations*, read the Finnish expressions in the left-hand column, one at a time and ask different members of the group to repeat them, combining with them appropriate words from the right-hand column. The Guide or members of the group will correct any faulty Finnish they hear. Make sure that everyone understands the English equivalents of all the Finnish expressions in this exercise.

Give your answers in Finnish for each of the exercises in the preceding section, when the Leader calls for them. Do it without reading from the book, if possible. The Guide or other members of the group will criticize your Finnish if it is not correct. Then give the English equivalents of all the expressions in the exercise.

## 2. Word Study Check-Up

As you have done in the previous units, go back to the *Word Study* and give the correct Finnish for each English expression, without having to read it from the book. The Leader or one of the members of the group should read the English.

## 3. Listening In

With your book closed, listen to the following conversations as read by the Guide or phonograph record. Repeat the Finnish immediately after hearing it. After the first repetition of each conversation, check up on the meaning of anything you do not understand, by asking someone else or by going back to the *Basic Sentences* if no one knows. Then take parts and carry on the conversation.

### Record 9A, after first spiral

*Väinö Anttila visits his friend Eero Sara and his mother at their home:*

*Väinö Anttila*

*Hyvää päivää, rouva Sara.*

*Onko Eero kotona?*

*Rouva Sara*

*Päivää, päivää, Väinö.*

*Eero on työssä.*

*Hän tulee pian.*

*Väinö Anttila*

*Ulkona on hyvin kylmä tänään.*

*Rouva Sara*

*Niin on, ja eilen oli niin lämmin.*

*Väinö Anttila*

*Mihin aikaan Eero tulee?*

*Rouva Sara*

*Hän on kotona kuudelta.*

*Väinö Anttila*

*Onko Eero vielä tehtaassa?*

*Rouva Sara*

*Ei, hän on elokuvissa.  
Tuolla hän tulee.*

*Eero Sara*

*Terve Väinö!  
Mitä kuuluu?*

*Väinö Anttila*

*Terve, hyvää vain.  
Sisareni saapuu tänä iltana Amerikasta.*

*Eero Sara*

*Niinkö, käykö hän koulua?*

*Väinö Anttila*

*Ei, hän on työssä pankissa.*

*Eero Sara*

*Kuinka vanha hän on?*

*Väinö Anttila*

*Hän on yhdeksäntoista vuotta vanha.*

*Eero Sara*

*Haluatko esitellä minut sisarellesi?*

*Väinö Anttila*

*Tietysti.*

*Not recorded from here to the end*

*Haluatko tulla kanssamme päivälliselle.*

*Eero Sara*

*Kiitos mielelläni.  
Mihin aikaan?*

*Väinö Anttila*

*Kello kahdeksalta.*

*Rouva Sara*

*Kahville, pojat!  
Väinö, ovatko äitisi ja isäsi täällä?*

*Väinö Anttila*

*Kyllä, isä ja äiti ovat täällä.  
Haluatteko tulla myöskin kanssamme.*

*Rouva Sara*

*Ei kiitos.  
Olen kotona mielelläni.  
Ulkona on niin kylmä.*

*Väinö Anttila*

*Haluan savukkeita.*

*Eero Sara*

*Tässä on, ja tulitikkiä myöskin.*

*Rouva Sara*

*Minun on nähtävä sisaresi.  
Tahdotteko tulla maatilallemme ensi viikolla.*

*Väinö Anttila*

*Kiitoksia paljon.*

*Rouva Sara*

*Haluatko lisää kahvia.*

*Väinö Anttila*

*Kiitos kyllä.*

## SECTION E—CONVERSATION

### 1. Covering the Finnish in Basic Sentences

(Individual Study)

Cover the Finnish of the *Basic Sentences* and practice saying the Finnish equivalents of the English expressions.

### 2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Give the Finnish expressions for the English equivalents in the *Basic Sentences* as the Leader calls for them.

### 3. Conversation

As you have done in the *Conversation* in the previous units, begin to converse by following the model of *Listening In* fairly closely; then change the situations somewhat. By now you have a fair amount of material that you can bring into your conversations. Invent new combinations of subject-matter, on models such as these:

1. An American soldier is walking along a street in Turku. He is trying to find the railway station. He

addresses a stranger with apologies and asks him for directions to the station. The stranger says he regrets, he cannot speak English. The soldier says it doesn't matter provided he speaks slowly. The Finn then explains that the station is not far from the school, and the school is to the left. The soldier asks the stranger for his advice: he wants to find a good restaurant. The Finn asks him what time his train leaves and he learns that the train is not leaving till the evening. He therefore asks the soldier to come to his home for lunch. The soldier accepts gladly.

2. The soldier is now in the home of the Finn, whose name is Mr. Toivonen. He says his son will be home from work and his daughter will be home from school very soon. Then they begin to talk about the weather.

3. The daughter comes home from school. She is seventeen years old. She says she was in the United

States at the age of eleven. The soldier inquires about details as to the amount of time she spent there, what towns she visited, and so on.

4. Meanwhile the younger Mr. Toivonen has come home. He's a doctor. He says that he just came from the barber, and asks the soldier to accompany him later to the tailor, the shoemaker and the bank. Mr. Toivonen, it seems, is manager of the bank of Turku.

5. Mrs. Toivonen begins to serve lunch, which consists of meat and potatoes, bread, milk, and coffee.

You can go on combining situations in this way indefinitely. Try to develop originality and use your imagination in inventing combinations; and remember at all times that the most important thing is to have something in Finnish on the tip of your tongue. Try to be as quick as you can and keep the ball rolling.

## SECTION F—CONVERSATION (Cont.)

Continue the conversations started in Section E with a review of parts 1 to 5 if necessary.

### Finder List

Here is the alphabetical list of the new words to be learned in this unit.

100 [5-F]

<i>aina</i>	always
<i>asun</i>	I dwell
<i>eilen</i>	yesterday
<i>en koskaan</i>	I never
<i>en ole ollut</i>	I haven't been

<i>ensi</i>	next
<i>ensi kesänä</i>	during next summer
<i>haluat</i>	you want
<i>hyvää yötä</i>	good-night
<i>juuri</i>	just now
<i>kanssa</i>	with
<i>kaunis</i>	nice <i>or</i> beautiful
<i>kaupunkiin</i>	into town
<i>kesällä</i>	during summer
<i>kotona</i>	at home
<i>kylmä</i>	cold
<i>lisää</i>	more
<i>lounas</i>	lunch
<i>-lta</i>	from the outside
<i>lämmin</i>	warm
<i>matka</i>	trip
<i>mennään</i>	let's go
<i>milloin</i>	when
<i>-n</i>	object relation
<i>nyt</i>	now
<i>näkemiin</i>	so long
<i>olet asunut</i>	have lived
<i>oli</i>	was

<i>olut</i>	beer
<i>on nähtävä</i>	must see
<i>pian</i>	soon
<i>pidätte</i>	you like
<i>päivä</i>	day
<i>ravintolaan</i>	to the restaurant
<i>sanoitte</i>	you said
<i>sataa</i>	it's raining
<i>sinun</i>	your
<i>sinä</i>	you
<i>syksy</i>	fall
<i>-t</i>	plural suffix
<i>talvi</i>	winter
<i>tulee</i>	he
<i>tulen</i>	I come
<i>tulet</i>	you come
<i>tunnin</i>	hour's
<i>tänään</i>	today
<i>ulkona</i>	outside
<i>vielä</i>	still
<i>viikolla</i>	during the week
<i>äiti</i>	mother
<i>äidin kanssa</i>	with mother

## REVIEW

## SECTION A—WHAT DO YOU KNOW IN FINNISH?

*To the Group Leader:* This unit is intended to furnish the group with a thorough review of all the work done to date: understanding of vocabulary, use of vocabulary, and grammar. Pronunciation should be the object of attention whenever the students are talking. Either the Guide or, if there is no Guide, the Leader and other students should correct faulty pronunciation.

*Section A* consists of four parts. Part I is a true-and-false quiz which is to be read to the group by the Guide or the phonograph records. Each student is to write the numbers from 1 to 20 on a sheet of paper. After hearing each statement in Finnish, the students are to mark T opposite the number of that statement if they consider it a true statement, and an F if they consider it false. If the students understand the Finnish they will have no difficulty in deciding whether or not the statements are generally true or false.

Use the first item in the quiz as a practice item. When you are ready to start, announce "Statement 1," and give the signal to the Guide to begin, or put on the phonograph record. The Guide or record will then read the Finnish statement: "*Kaksi ja seitsemän on kahdeksan*" and will repeat the statement once more. Explain to the group that, since the meaning of the statement is: "Two and seven are eight" they should write an F after the figure 1 on their papers. Then announce "Statement 2" and continue with the Guide or phonograph record. Each statement in Finnish is to be presented twice. Part I will be found on Record 9B, beginning.

Part II is a pattern exercise. The Guide or the phonograph records will read to the group twenty series of words or phrases. In each series one word is obviously out of place. Each student is to write the numbers from 21 to 40 on a sheet of paper. After hearing each series in Finnish he is to pick out the word or phrase that doesn't belong and write it opposite the number of the series. Use the twenty-first item in the quiz as a practice item: "*Yksi, kaksi, kylmä, neljä*". Explain to the group that since the meaning of the series is: "One, two, cold, four" they should write "cold" after the figure 21 in their papers. Each series in Finnish should be presented twice (but is read on the records only once). Part II will be found on record 10A, beginning.

Part III is a completion exercise. The Guide or the records will read to the group ten incomplete statements in Finnish, each followed by three completions (a, b, c) in Finnish, of which one is obviously the right one. Each student is to write the numbers from 41 to 50 on a sheet of paper. After hearing each statement in Finnish and three comple-



tions in Finnish, he is to pick out the correct one and write "a", "b", or "c" opposite the number of the question. Use the forty-first item "*kolme ja viisi on*" "a. *Kaksi*; b. *Yhdeksän*; c. *Kahdeksan*" in the quiz as a practice item. Explain to the group that since the incomplete statement reads "three and five are" they should write "c" after the figure 41 in their papers, since the answer is "eight". Each statement and completions should be presented twice (but are read on the records only once). Part III will be found on record 10B, beginning.

Part IV is a true-and-false quiz of a different sort. The Guide or records will present a series of four brief conversations in Finnish. After each conversation the Guide or records will read a number of statements referring to the immediately preceding conversation. Each statement will be true or false in terms of the conversation. Each student is to write the numbers 51 to 70 on a sheet of paper. After hearing each conversation and the relevant statements he should write T (true) or F (false) opposite the number of the statement. Each conversation in Finnish will be read only once, but the statements about it will be read twice. Part IV, Conversation I, will be found on record 10B, after space, and the true-and-false sentences after the spiral which follows. Conversations II-III, and the appropriate statements, are on record 11A. Conversation IV and the appropriate statements, are on record 11B, beginning and after the first spiral.

When working with a Guide, continue to call the number of each item throughout the quiz so that the students will have no trouble keeping the proper place.

In the back of the Guide's manual you will find a list giving the correct answers for each Finnish item, together with the English translations. After the quiz is over, read to the group the correct answers for each item. The students are to check their papers. Find the average number of correct answers per student for your group. Any student who gets less than the average number of answers or less than 80% (whichever is higher) correct, needs more thorough study and review of the preceding units. Be sure that the students understand the meaning of all the items which they got wrong; those are the items on which they are weak and need further study.

This unit provides several tests which will help you to make sure that you have thoroughly covered the work of the first five Learning Units of the course. They will show you what you may need to restudy or review.

Section A consists of four parts. After you have marked the numbers 1 to 70 on a sheet of paper, your Leader will have the Guide read or will play the phonograph records containing a number of items in

Finnish. Items 1, 21 and 41, are practice items, and will show you just how to proceed with the rest of the items.

After you have done each part, the Leader will go through your answers with you as a group and will tell you the correct solutions. Score your paper, counting one for each correct answer. The Leader will figure out the average score for your group. If your score falls below the average of the group as a whole, you need

more study and review of the previous units. For each item on which you are wrong, be sure that you understand why you are wrong, and what the true meaning of the item is.

If you come out pretty well on this quiz, that indicates that you have a pretty good understanding of practically all the work you have covered to date.

## SECTION B—HOW WOULD YOU SAY IT?

(Individual Study)

Go through the following English sentences and prepare to say the equivalents for the English at your next group meeting. *Do not write anything down*, but say the Finnish equivalents out loud and keep practicing them aloud until you have the Finnish down so cold that when the English is fired at you point-blank you can fire the Finnish right back without any hesitation.

### I

1. Let's go get some coffee.
2. Eve is my daughter.
3. Is it cold outside?
4. I understand English.
5. I've got matches.
6. He works in a factory.
7. My son is a soldier.

8. His daughter goes to school.
9. How much does this cost?
10. It's too expensive.

### II

1. The train arrives at five.
2. Would you introduce your brother to me?
3. The school is to the right.
4. Give me some cigarettes.
5. Would you like some coffee?
6. Give me some water.
7. How many do you want?
8. How far is the hotel?
9. Five and six are eleven.
10. I like movies.

### III

1. What do you want to eat?
2. May I ask, where is the restaurant?
3. Is your brother in Finland?
4. He is a farmer.
5. Is he a good dentist?
6. Have you got some American cigarettes?
7. How old is your daughter?
8. I've been in the United States.
9. He's from New York.
10. May I present my daughter now?

### IV

1. Glad to meet you.
2. Does the train leave at four?
3. I'd like to buy some potatoes.
4. What time does the movie start?

5. Is your brother married?
6. Have you many children?
7. What's your occupation?
8. My youngest brother is a doctor.
9. Is your father manager of a bank?
10. Have you been in Helsinki?

### V

1. It's five kilometers from the farm to the station.
2. He's a good tailor, and reasonable.
3. Do you like your hotel?
4. He has three sons; the barber is the third.
5. The shoemaker in this hotel is too expensive.
6. The restaurant is to the left of the station.
7. Helsinki is ten kilometers to the east of Turku.
8. Have you been in Finland long?
9. Do you speak Finnish well?
10. A cold winter is better.

## SECTION C—HOW DID YOU SAY IT?

*To the Group Leader:* Simply follow the directions given below.

This Section is a drill on the work you have done in Section B of this unit. Keep your book closed. The Leader will call on members of the group (but not in any fixed order) to speak the Finnish equivalents of the English sentences given in Section B. The work

must be kept moving rapidly, and interest should never lag. If the Guide is present he is to listen and correct your pronunciation and expressions.

This section is intended to give you a check on your ability to use the vocabulary you have learned.

## SECTION D—HOW WOULD YOU SAY IT? (*Cont.*)

(Individual Study)

Do the following exercises. Read all sentences aloud with correct solutions. Have everything well fixed in your mind, and ready to speak in the next group meeting.

### I

Make questions of these statements:

1. *Hän käy ulkona jos ulkona on lämmin.*
2. *Olen aina ollut kaupungissa syksyllä ja talvella.*
3. *Isäni koti on pohjoiseen asemastanne.*
4. *Hänen äitinsä lähtee junalla maatilallensa kello kaksi päivällä.*
5. *Äiti pyytää lapsia päivälliselle.*

### II

This is an exercise on the case suffixes. In each sentence below there is one word in English. Translate this word; fit it into its sentence. Say each sentence aloud.

6. *Ensi viikolla ostan* (hotel).
7. (Station) *saapuu paljon lapsia.*
8. *Hänellä on* (weapon).
9. (Shoemaker) *haluaa syödä kotonansa.*
10. *Olen ollut kauan* (army).
11. (Four days) *juna saapuu kaupunkiin.*
12. (Restaurant) *ostan olutta.*
13. *Sanon sen* (boy) *suomeksi.*

14. *Koululta* (station) *on monta kilometriä*.
15. *Mennään* (trip) *ensi kesänä*.
16. (Father) *ovat aina työssä*.
17. *Saan sen* (mother).
18. (Train) *lähtee hitaasti asemalta*.
19. *Minun on nähtävä tämä* (home).
20. *Olen täällä* (summer).
21. (Farmer) *saan vettä*.
22. *Haluan ostaa* (weapon) *pojalleni*.
23. *Hän saapuu* (city) *tänään*.
24. *Etsin poikaa* (movies).
25. *Tahdon kysyä neuvoa* (clerk).
26. *Pidän hyvin paljon tästä* (boy).
27. *Te teette* (work) *hyvin*.
28. *Haluan esitellä* (my mother).
29. *Antakaa* (child) *minulle*.
30. *Tahdotteko tämän* (box)?
31. (Child) *alkavat käydä koulua*.
32. *Hän tulee kanssani ravintolaan* (lunch).
33. (Autumn) *ovat kauniit*.

34. *Vaimoni* (work) *on hyvä*.
35. *Isä ja äiti ovat* (movies).

### III

Can you do these additions in your head?

36. *Kolmekymmentäseitsemän ja neljäkymmentäviisi on*  
...
37. *Yhdeksänkymmentäkaksi ja kahdeksantoista on* ...
38. *Neljätoista ja seitsemäntoista on* ...
39. *Viisikymmentäyksi ja kaksitoista on* ...
40. *Seitsemänkymmentäkuusi ja kolmetoista on* ...

### IV

Translate these sentences illustrating the use of adjectives.

41. Yesterday it was colder; today it's a warmer day.
42. This is the best school in this town.
43. I want a cheaper watch.
44. He is my healthiest and youngest child.
45. This is a more expensive but better restaurant.

## SECTION E—HOW DID YOU SAY IT? (Cont.)

*To the Group Leader:* Simply follow the directions given below.

As in Section C, the Leader will go around the group and ask various members to supply (with books closed) the correct solutions of the exercises in the previous Section. If the Guide is present, he will

listen and correct pronunciation and expressions.

This section is intended to give you a check on your understanding of the way the language is built and functions.

## SECTION F—CONVERSATION

The members of the group will carry on short conversations lasting not more than 1 to 2 minutes each, in which the entire contents of the preceding units should be used. Everyone should have a chance to take part as many times as possible. The situations of the conversations should be varied and combined as much as possible. Each conversation should begin with greetings and inquiries after each other's health and should end with formal leave-taking. Here are just a few out of many possibilities for conversations:

### 1. Getting around.

(Include: asking for directions to specific places; orientation as to prices in hotels, shops, restaurants; train times and destinations.)

### 2. Introducing people.

(Include: introducing a friend or relative to someone; questions as to where from, languages spoken; offering cigarettes and light; asking where going now; arranging future date.)

### 3. In a restaurant.

(Include: questions and answers about food and drink preferences; ordering a meal; asking prices, discussion of prices, adding total and paying.)

### 4. Buying things.

(Include: purchase of some article or articles; discussion with sales girl; arguing about prices; adding totals and paying.)

5. A social call.

(Include: discussion of weather; offering refreshments; coffee or beer; offering smokes; going out to the movies together.)

6. Going on a trip.

(Include: inquiring about trains; directions; prices; accommodations; weather conditions there; if a farm, how far from what town.)

7. Meeting a friend on a street.

(Include: questions about each other's health; discussion of family affairs—health of parents, brothers, sisters, children; what they are doing, and where they are living now.

8. Conversing about trades.

(Include: questions about the type of work one does, the work of one's friends and relatives, the things produced where one works.)

9. Inquiring about a movie and how to get to it.

(Include: questions about the place of a movie, the time it starts, whether it is good, whether the person likes movies and really wants to go.)

10. Exchanging information about one's home.

(Include: questions about each other's origin, talk about location of homes, and city or farm, description of relatives, where they are and what they do.)

## A PLACE TO LIVE

*To the Group Leader and Members of the Group:* The pattern for each unit has been set in Learning Units 2-6 of *Part One*. From now on no detailed instructions will be given for any section unless the plan of work for that particular section departs from the customary procedure. If you are in doubt as to the correct procedure at any point, turn back to the corresponding section of Learning Unit 2 where directions are given in full.

## SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

## 1. Basic Sentences

Record 11B, after space

*Two American soldiers are looking for a room in the country.*

## ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS

## FINNISH

*Bill*

Excuse me, may I ask for your advice?

*Anteeksi, saanko pyytää neuvoanne?*

*Maanviljelijä*

What can I do for you?

*Mitä voin tehdä puolestanne?*



*Bill*

some room  
I'm looking for a room.

*huonetta*  
*Minä etsin huonetta.*

*Maanviljelijä*

house  
There is a house.

*talo*  
*Tuolla on talo.*

mistress *or* landlady<sup>1</sup>  
he rents  
some rooms  
And the landlady rents rooms.

*emäntä*  
*vuokraa*  
*huoneita*  
*Ja sen emäntä vuokraa huoneita.*

*Bill*

American  
I'm an American soldier.

*amerikkalainen*  
*Minä olen amerikkalainen sotilas.*

*Maanviljelijä*

Really?

*Niinkö?*

---

<sup>1</sup>*Isäntä* is master and economic leader of an extended household, including family and servants; the term is also used as an address, like 'Master'. *Emäntä* refers to the mistress and landlady of a household, in the same capacity as the *isäntä*.

my  
friend *or* pal  
This is my pal Jack Carter.  
name  
And my name is Bill Morgan.

master *or* landlord<sup>1</sup>  
Pohjola's  
I'm the Master of Pohjola.  
you intend  
to be  
How long do you intend to be here?

we do not  
know  
We don't know.

**Record 12A, beginning**

perhaps  
a couple  
some week  
Perhaps a couple of weeks.

---

<sup>1</sup>See footnote on Page 111.

*Bill*

*minun  
toveri  
Tämä on minun toverini Jack Carter.  
nimi  
Ja minun nimeni on Bill Morgan.*

*Maanviljelijä*

*isäntä  
Pohjolan  
Minä olen Pohjolan isäntä.  
aijotte  
olla  
Kuinka kauan aijotte olla täällä?*

*Bill*

*emme  
tiedä  
Emme tiedä.*

*ehkä  
pari  
viikkoa  
Ehkä pari viikkoa.*

*Maanviljelijä*

welcome  
at us  
to visit  
Please come to see us.

*tervetuloa  
meillä  
käymään  
Tervetuloa meillä käymään.*

*Bill*

Thanks very much.

we  
we come  
Yes, we'll come.

let's go  
to see  
that  
Let's go see the room.

*Kiitoksia paljon.  
me  
tulemme  
Kyllä me tulemme.*

*lähdetään  
katsomaan  
sitä  
Lähdetään nyt katsomaan sitä huonetta.*

*Maanviljelijä*

So long, boys.

*Näkemiin, pojat.*

*Bill*

How do you do.

some vacant(s) or some free(s)  
Have you any vacant rooms?

*Hyvää päivää.  
vapaita  
Onko teillä vapaita huoneita?*

to stay *or* to live in  
same  
Would you like to stay in the same room?

room  
large  
Yes, if the room's large.  
we get  
to see  
Can we see it?

second *or* another  
floor  
It's on the second floor.

in it  
bathroom  
Is there a bathroom?

our  
is not  
some bathroom  
In our house there's no bathroom.

*Emäntä*

*asua  
sama  
Tahdotteko asua samassa huoneessa?*

*Bill*

*huone  
suuri  
Kyllä, jos huone on suuri.  
saamme  
nähdä  
Saammeko nähdä sen?*

*Emäntä*

*toinen  
kerros  
Se on toisessa kerroksessa.*

*Bill*

*siinä  
kylpyhuone  
Onko siinä kylpyhuone?*

*Emäntä*

*meidän  
ei ole  
kylpyhuonetta  
Meidän talossamme ei ole kylpyhuonetta.*

we have  
steambath<sup>2</sup>  
But we have a steambath outside.

*meillä on  
sauna  
Mutta meillä on sauna ulkona.*

That's fine.  
Is the toilet outside too?

*Bill  
Se on hyvä.  
Onko käymälä myöskin ulkona?*

Yes.  
inside  
And there is another one inside.

*Emäntä  
On.  
sisällä  
Ja toinen on sisällä.*

How much do you charge for this room?

*Bill  
Kuinka paljon tämä huone maksaa?*

It's fifteen marks a day.

*Emäntä  
Viisitoista markkaa päivässä.*

---

<sup>2</sup>Village bath house where steam is produced by pouring water over a heated oven. Found all over Finnish speaking territory in Finland, Northern Scandinavia, and Northwestern Russia. Also found in the United States—especially in the Finnish communities of Minnesota, northern Michigan, and Massachusetts.

*Bill*

includes *or* belongs to  
breakfast  
in the same  
Does that include breakfast?

*kuuluu  
aamiainen  
samaan  
Kuuluuko aamiainen samaan?*

*Emäntä*

you get  
No, but you'll get coffee and bread.

*saatte  
Ei, mutta te saatte kahvia ja leipää.*

**Record 12B, beginning**

That's cheap.  
we take  
We'll take the room.

*Bill*

*Se on halpa.  
otamme  
Me otamme tämän huoneen.*

*Emäntä*

to move in  
When do you want to move in?

*muuttaa  
Koska te haluatte muuttaa?*

*Bill*

we move in  
We'll move in tonight.

*muutamme  
Me muutamme tänä iltana.*

I put  
in order  
Fine, I'll get the room ready.

you eat  
some lunch  
some dinner  
Where do you eat lunch and dinner?

we eat  
We eat with the army.

then  
You'll be welcome, boys.

*Emäntä*

*laitan  
kuntoon  
Hyvä, laitan huoneen kuntoon.  
syötte  
lounasta  
päivällistä  
Missä te syötte lounasta ja päivällistä?*

*Bill*

*syömme  
Me syömme armeijassa.*

*Emäntä*

*sitten  
Tervetuloa sitten, pojat.*

## 2. Hints on Pronunciation

*How to pronounce tervetuloa and kolmekymmentä:*  
Note the pronunciation of these two compound words, *terve-tuloa* 'welcome', and *kolme-kymmentä* 'thirty'. Chances are that your Guide will pronounce them as if they were spelled *tervettuloa* and *kolmekkymmentä* (*tt* for *t* and *kk* for *k* at the border between the two members of the compound).

## PRACTICE 24

Record 1B, after ninth spiral

*tervetuloa*    welcome    *kolmekymmentä*    thirty

*Consonant s:* The sound represented by the Finnish letter *s* differs little from the one represented by the

English *s* of *so*, or *this*, although it may have a bit more of a 'whistling' quality; and between vowels it may sometimes sound more like a *z* to you. (It is found at the beginning, the middle, and the end of words.)

## PRACTICE 25

Record 1B, after tenth spiral

<i>sata</i>	hundred	<i>hyvästi</i>	good-bye
<i>asema</i>	station	<i>kaunis</i>	beautiful

*Consonant j*: The letter *j* in Finnish stands for quite a different sound than in English. It corresponds rather to the sound represented in English by *y*, as in *yes* or *beyond*. (This sound occurs only at the beginning and middle, but not at the end of Finnish words.)

## PRACTICE 26

Record 1B, after eleventh spiral

<i>ja</i>	and	<i>johtaja</i>	manager
<i>maanviljelijä</i>	farmer	<i>armeija</i>	army

*Other consonants*: the consonants *b*, *f*, and a few others, will occur in a handful of foreign words. Educated Finns will pronounce these sounds (as in *bambu* 'bamboo', *filmi* 'film') with their foreign value; but in various parts of Finland different native sounds will be substituted for the foreign ones (e.g., *pampu* 'bamboo').

All but one (which you have not yet had) of the native Finnish consonants and all of the vowels have been discussed and described in some detail up to this point. If you are not sure about the pronunciation of any Finnish consonant or vowel *go back right now* to the discussion, listen repeatedly to your Guide or the records, and keep on imitating every detail. Only when you can reproduce each sound to your Guide's and to your own satisfaction should you pass on to the discussion of groups of sounds, which follows.

*Consonant groups*: The following table summarizes for your convenience the most common clusters or groups of consonants of Finnish. Look over the table carefully; read the brief general comment which comes after the table; in the following units the various groups will be examined more closely.



Table One  
Finnish Consonant Groups

	p	t	k	m	n	r	l	s	h
p	pp			mp mpp		rp rpp	lp lpp	sp	
t	pt	tt			nt ntt	rt rtt	lt ltt	st	ht
k		tk	kk		nk nkk	rk rkk	lk lkk	sk	hk
m				mm		rm	lm	sm	hm
n					nn	rn	ln	sn	hn
r	pr	tr	kr			rr			hr
l	pl		kl				ll		
s	ps	ts	ks	ms mss	ns nss	rs rss	ls lss	ss	
h					nh	rh	lh		
d									hd
g					ng				
v		tv				rv	lv	sv	hv
j		tj				rj	lj		hj
h									hh

*General comment:* Groups of consonants will occur neither at the beginning, nor at the end of Finnish words; they are found only in the middle. (*Note:* a few words, recently taken over from foreign languages,

may contain consonant groups at the beginning of Finnish words, but only as pronounced by natives who are well educated.)

## SECTION B—WORD STUDY AND REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

### 1. Word Study

#### *Comment One—Noun Stem Type II*

##### a. *Free form and stem form.*

<i>syksy</i>	fall	<i>syksy-stä</i>	from the fall
<i>työ</i>	work	<i>työ-ssä</i>	in work

It is necessary to distinguish the *free form* of a noun or a verb from its *stem form*. The free form of a noun (often called the *nominative form*) is the one you will find in dictionaries; it is a form which can always stand by itself, such as *syksy* 'fall', or *työ* 'work'. Then there is the *stem form*, or the form you will find when you remove all suffixes (as when you take the *-stä* away from *syksystä* and get *syksy-*); it is the combining form. In the above example you will note that the free form *syksy* is absolutely identical with the stem form *syksy-*; and the free form *työ* is identical with the stem form *työ-*. *The free form of all nouns belonging to stem*

*type I is absolutely identical with the stem form;* this, however, is not necessarily true of nouns belonging to stem type II, as you will observe below.

##### b. *Type II*

###### 1. *-e- stems*

<i>nuori</i>	young	<i>nuore-mpi</i>	younger
<i>suuri</i>	big	<i>suure-ssa</i>	in the big

Both words in the column to the left end in *-ri*, and are of two syllables (*nuo-ri*, *suu-ri*). Most Finnish nouns of two syllables, which end in *-ri* in their free forms (or in *-hi*, *-li*, *-ni*) belong to type II. This means that their stem form will end in either *-re-* (or in *-he-*, *-le-*, *-ne-*, as the case may be), illustrated by the above examples, or simply in *-r-* (or in *-h-*, *-l-*, *-n-*, as the case may be). Words belonging to type II always have two stem forms, one ending in a vowel, the other simply dropping the final vowel. Before some suffixes

the vowel stem is used; before others, the consonant stem. Henceforth, in the discussion of any suffix it will be pointed out which stem you must add it to.

<i>vesi</i>	water	<i>vet-tä</i>	some water
<i>vuosi</i>	year	<i>vuot-ta</i>	some year

Two syllable nouns which end in *-si* in their free form, like the words in the column to the left, belong to type II, and have two stem forms, one ending in a vowel, *-te-*, and, as in the column to the right, before the element *-ta* (to be discussed in Unit 9, pages 161-3), for example, ending in a consonant only, *-t-*. According to a certain rule concerning automatic changes (see Unit 11, pages 201-3), you will find the *-t-* replaced by *-d-*: note *vedessä* 'in the water', *veden* 'the water'; *vuodesta* 'from the year', *vuodelle* 'to the year'.

<i>länsi</i>	west	<i>län-te-en</i>	to the west
--------------	------	------------------	-------------

Two syllable nouns ending in *-nsi* (or in *-rsi*, *-lsi*) in their free form, end in *-te-* or in *-t-* in their stem forms.

<i>lapsi</i>	child	<i>lap-se-t</i>	children
<i>nimi</i>	name	<i>nime-t</i>	names
<i>toimi</i>	occupation	<i>toime-t</i>	occupations
<i>Suomi</i>	Finland	<i>Suome-ssa</i>	in Finland

There are many Finnish nouns of two syllables

which end in *-i* in their free form other than those discussed above. These belong to type II when the *-i* is preceded by *-m-* or *-ps-* (or *-ts-*, *-ks-*, *-hi-*), and have a vowel stem ending in *-e-*, as in the examples above to the right; the consonant stem simply drops the *-e-* (thus, *laps-*, *nim-*, and so on).

*Note:* There are some nouns of two syllables ending in *-i* in their free form which belong to type I. These nouns then are of two sorts; some will end in *-i-* in their stem form; others will end in *-e-*. There is no way for you to know which group a given noun of this kind will belong to, so you must learn each separately. For instance, *veli* 'brother', belongs to type I (having but one stem form), and the stem ends in *-e-*: *velje-*.

## 2. *-ee-* stems

<i>terve</i>	healthy	<i>tervee-mpi</i>	healthier
<i>ase</i>	weapon	<i>asee-n</i>	weapon
<i>huone</i>	room	<i>huonee-ssa</i>	in the room

Nouns ending in *-e* in their free form belong to type II (with a very few exceptions), and their vowel stem form ends in *-ee-*. As for the consonant stem form, that ends in *-e(')-* (the consonant symbol ' is explained in unit 8, pages 139-40).

The third class of stem type II nouns, the *consonant stems*, are discussed in unit 8, pages 140-2.

### Comment Two—Numeral Stems

The stem forms of the numbers from one to ten are listed in the right hand column:

<i>yksi</i>	1	<i>yhte-, yh-</i>
<i>kaksi</i>	2	<i>kahte-, kah-</i>
<i>kolme</i>	3	<i>kolme-</i>
<i>neljä</i>	4	<i>neljä-</i>
<i>viisi</i>	5	<i>viite-, viit-</i>
<i>kuusi</i>	6	<i>kuute-, kuut-</i>
<i>seitsemän</i>	7	<i>seitsemä-, (seitsen-)</i>
<i>kahdeksan</i>	8	<i>kahdeksa-</i>
<i>yhdeksän</i>	9	<i>yhdeksä-,</i>
<i>kymmenen</i>	10	<i>kymmene-, (kymmen-)</i>

Note that *kolme*, *neljä*, *kahdeksan*, *yhdeksän* always belong to stem type I; *seitsemän* and *kymmenen* may belong to stem type I or II; *yksi*, *kaksi*, *viisi*, *kuusi* always belong to stem type II. Note the automatic stem change from *t* to *d* in *kahdelta* 'at two', *viideltä* 'at five'.

### Comment Three—Personal Verb Suffixes

<i>sanon</i>	I say	<i>tulen</i>	I come
<i>asun</i>	I dwell	<i>olen</i>	I am

Verbs are constructed similarly to nouns; that is, they can be broken up into a stem and one or more suffixes. Among the latter, characterising verb stems, are the so-called personal suffixes, which indicate the person who is performing the action designated by the stem. Various other suffixes indicate the time when the action takes place and the type of action it is and they *precede* always the personal suffixes.

The series of words above all end in *-n*. This suffix, when added to verb stems, indicates that the action is performed by the speaker alone ('I'—first person singular).

<i>haluat</i>	you want	<i>tulet</i>	you come
---------------	----------	--------------	----------

The suffix *-t*, when added to verb stems, indicates that the action is performed by the hearer alone ('you', 'thou'—second person singular, informal).

<i>tulee</i>	he comes	<i>käy</i>	he goes
	<i>on</i>		he is

The third person singular is indicated in several ways. When the verb stem (formation of which is discussed later) ends in a single vowel, like *tule-*, the single vowel is doubled: *tulee*. When the verb stem ends in more than a single vowel, like *käy-*, there is no change: *käy*.

Note the form *on* 'is', from the verb *olla* 'to be', which does not conform to the above rule.

<i>tulemme</i>	we come	<i>saamme</i>	we get
<i>otamme</i>	we take	<i>muutamme</i>	we move

The suffix *-mme*, when added to verb stems, indicates that the action is performed by a number of speakers ('we'—first person plural).

<i>puhutte</i>	you speak	<i>teette</i>	you do
<i>tahdotte</i>	you want	<i>pidätte</i>	you like

The suffix *-tte*, when added to verb stems, indicates that the action is performed by a number of hearers ('you'—second person plural, formal).

<i>ovat</i>	they are
-------------	----------

The third person plural is indicated by the suffix *-vat*: *tulevat* 'they come', *käyvät* 'they go'.

After a few tense and other suffixes (for instance, in giving orders), the person is indicated by some other suffixes than the above outlined. As a whole, however, the personal suffixes are used as illustrated.

## 2. Covering English and Finnish of Word Study

Give the English equivalents of all expressions in the Word Study and the Finnish for all the English. This is individual study.

## 3. Review of Basic Sentences

Further oral practice with the first part of the Basic Sentences.

# SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES (*Cont.*)

## 1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

Further oral practice with the second part of the Basic Sentences.

## 2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences

Check your knowledge of the meaning of all words and phrases in the Basic Sentences. This is individual study.

### 3. What Would You Say?

I. This exercise is of the type found in Unit 4, pp. 74-5. Fill in blanks with the appropriate suffix.

- a. *Halve* — *hotelli on vasemma* —.
- b. *Toise* — *kerrokse* — *on kylpyhuone*.
- c. *Rouva on talo* — *emäntä*.
- d. *Kaikki poja* — *ovat armeija* —.
- e. *Hotelli* — *on paljon huoneita*.
- f. *Kävin äiti* — *kanssa Turu* —.
- g. *Juna saapuu viide* —.
- h. *Velje* — *tulle päivällise* —.
- i. *Lähdetään maatila* — *tänään*.
- j. *Poika on neljä* — *vuotta vanha*.
- k. *Hän on vanh* — *velje* —.
- l. *Saan* — *pyytää lisää kahvia?*
- m. *Talo* — *on kylpyhuone*.
- n. *Konttori* — *ovat hyvä* — *ja suure* —.
- o. *Talo* — *on kaunis kesällä*.
- p. *Mennään maatila* —.
- q. *Asetehdas on hyvin kaukana asema* —.
- r. *Tahdotte* — *tulla kanssa* — *koulu* —.

II. Fill in the blanks in the following sentences with the appropriate word from the righthand column.

- |   |                        |
|---|------------------------|
| a. <i>Saanko</i> — <i>olutta?</i>                       | 1. <i>kaupunkiin</i>   |
| b. <i>Haluan ostaa</i> —.                               | 2. <i>hyvin</i>        |
| c. <i>Juna lähtee</i> — <i>kello kaksi</i> .            | 3. <i>ase</i>          |
| d. — <i>tulee lapsia</i> .                              | 4. <i>liian</i>        |
| e. <i>Pidättekö</i> —?                                  | 5. <i>ravintolassa</i> |
| f. <i>Se on</i> — <i>kaunis mutta</i> — <i>kallis</i> . | 6. <i>koululta</i>     |
| g. <i>Onko</i> — <i>sauna?</i>                          | 7. <i>tulee</i>        |
| h. <i>Sinä olet asunut</i> — <i>kanssa</i> .            | 8. <i>savukkeita</i>   |
| i. — <i>on tuhat kilometriä</i> .                       | 9. <i>täällä</i>       |
| j. <i>Lähdetään</i> — <i>saunassa</i> .                 | 10. <i>laatikon</i>    |
|   | 11. <i>länteen</i>     |
|   | 12. <i>anna</i>        |
|   | 13. <i>koulusta</i>    |
|   | 14. <i>isäni</i>       |
|   | 15. <i>käymään</i>     |

III. How Would You Answer? Read the following questions aloud and be ready to *speak out* the answer to each one. Make your answers brief (but by no means simply *kyllä, ei*). Do not attempt to bring in any additional information.

*Sample: Mitä te teette? Minä olen amerikkalainen sotilas.*

1. *Missä teidän isänne ja äitinne ovat?*
2. *Oletteko olleet kauan armeijassa?*
3. *Mitä kello on?*
4. *Milloin juna saapuu asemalle?*
5. *Kuinka vanha teidän veljenne on?*

6. *Mikä kaupunki on itään Turusta?*
7. *Missä on asetehdas?*
8. *Onko tässä talossa kylpyhuonetta?*
9. *Haluaisitteko lihaa tai perunoita?*
10. *Lähdetäänkö oluelle?*

## SECTION D—LISTENING IN

### 1. What Did You Say?

With the other members of the group give orally your responses to the two previous exercises as the Leader calls for them.

After you are through with this, turn to

### 2. What Did You Answer?

The Leader will read the first question in the exercise *How Would You Answer?* and ask some member of the group to answer it. The person who answers reads the next question and the Leader indicates who is to answer it. Continue in this way until you have gone through all questions and answers in this exercise. Be sure to speak up if you disagree with the answers given.

### 3. Word Study Check-Up

Give the Finnish for all English equivalents in the Word Study as the Leader calls for it.

#### 4. Listening In.

Record 12B, after first spiral

*I. Liisa Jussila meets Bill Carter and invites him to her home for coffee.*

*Liisa*

*Päivää, herra Carter!*

*Bill*

*Hyvää päivää, neiti Jussila!*

*Kuinka te voitte?*

*Liisa*

*Oikein hyvin, kiitos.  
Oletteko olleet kauan täällä?*

*Bill*

*Vain pari päivää.  
Ja olen vielä pari päivää lisää.*

*Liisa*

*Niinkö, se on hyvä.  
Haluaisitteko tulla meillä käymään?*

*Bill*

*Kiitos, tulen mielelläni.  
Onko kotinne kaukana täältä?*

*Liisa*

*Ei, se on juuri tässä.*

*Bill*

*Mennäänkö sitten?*

**Record 12B, after second spiral**

*II. Liisa and Bill are now drinking coffee and talking  
about the room and about Liisa's farm.*

**126** [7-D]

*Bill*

*Tämä on kaunis huone.*

*Liisa*

*Niin on, ja suuri  
Pidän asua tässä huoneessa.*

*Bill*

*Onko tämä toisessa kerroksessa?*

*Liisa*

*Kyllä, tämä on toisessa kerroksessa.*

*Bill*

*Niinkö, onko tässä kylpyhuonetta?*

*Liisa*

*On kyllä.  
Se on suoraan eteenpäin.*

*Bill*

*Onko täällä sauna myöskin?*

*Liisa*

*Ei ole.  
Oletteko olleet saunassa?*



*Bill*

*Kävin kerran.*

*Ja pidän saunasta hyvin paljon.*

*Liisa*

*Niinkö, nyt laitan kahvia.*

*Bill*

*Anteeksi, saanko kysyä, paljonko tämä huone maksaa?*

*Liisa*

*Maksaa sata markkaa viikossa.*

*Bill*

*Kuuluuko kahvi tai aamiainen samaan?*

*Liisa*

*Ei, laitan kahvia huoneessani.*

*Bill*

*Haluatteko savukkeen?*

*Liisa*

*Ei kiitos.*

*Nyt kahville, olkaa hyvä.*

*Bill*

*Kiitos, onko teillä sisaria tai veljiä täällä?*

*Liisa*

*Minulla on vain yksi sisar, mutta hän ei ole täällä.*

**Not recorded from here to end**

*Bill*

*Onko teillä maatila?*

*Liisa*

*On maatilallemme on tunnin matka Helsingistä.*

*Bill*

*Noin tunnin junamatkan?*

*Liisa*

*Niin, haluaisitteko tulla maatilallemme ensi viikolla?*

*Bill*

*Kiitos kyllä. Haluaisin nähdä sen kesällä.*

*Liisa*

*Sisareni saapuu tänään Helsinkiin.*

*Juna saapuu asemalle kello viisi.*

*Bill*

*Esittäisittekö sisarennne minulle?*

*Liisa*

*Kyllä, tulisitteko kanssani asemalle?*

*Bill*

*Mielelläni.*

*Kello on nyt neljä, kolmekymmentä.*

*Liisa*

*Mennään sitten.*

## SECTION E—CONVERSATION

### 1. Covering the Finnish of Basic Sentences

With the Finnish covered, practise until you can speak the Finnish for each English sentence without hesitation. This is individual study.

### 2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Give the Finnish for all English sentences in the Basic Sentences as the Leader calls for it.

### 3. Conversation

1. An American soldier arrives at the station in Helsinki. He addresses a stranger asking him where he could stay for the next few days. The stranger says that there's a very good hotel to the left of the station. The soldier answers that the hotel is too expensive and that he'd like to rent a room. The man says that he's a

doctor and has a farm just outside Helsinki to the east. He says that the soldier could stay there with him and his wife. The soldier replies that the farm is too far from the armament factory where he must work in the office. The Finn says that his sister rents rooms and her house is only two kilometers to the west of the station. He asks the soldier to come with him to his mother's. The soldier accepts gladly.

2. Jack Morgan, the soldier, is at the house of Miss Sara, the sister of Dr. Sara, the stranger he met at the station. They talk about the weather. Dr. Sara says that it's still raining outside but that it is quite warm. The soldier says it's cold where he comes from, the northern United States, even in the fall. Miss Sara asks him how long he has been in Finland. He replies, he has been there for seven months. The Saras compliment him on his knowledge of Finnish.

3. The talk finally comes around to the renting of a room for the soldier. He asks if there are any vacancies and Miss Sara tells him that she has a beautiful room on the second floor. The room and breakfast, she replies to the inquiry of the soldier, will come to four-

teen marks a day. The soldier now asks about the bathroom, and is told that there's always cold and hot water. The soldier is very pleased and decides to rent the room. Dr. Sara invites him to dinner to his farm, which the soldier accepts with thanks.

## SECTION F—CONVERSATION (*Cont.*)

Continue conversation. Additional check-up on the material of the Basic Sentences by the Leader if it seems necessary.

### Review

Complete check-up on the material of the Word Study and Basic Sentences.

### Finder List

<i>aamiainen</i>	breakfast
<i>aijotte</i>	you intend
<i>amerikkalainen</i>	American
<i>asua</i>	to stay <i>or</i> to dwell
<i>ei ole</i>	is not
<i>ehkä</i>	perhaps
<i>emme</i>	we do not
<i>emäntä</i>	mistress <i>or</i> landlady

<i>huone</i>	room
<i>huoneita</i>	some rooms
<i>huonetta</i>	some room
<i>isäntä</i>	master <i>or</i> landlord
<i>katsomaan</i>	to see
<i>kerros</i>	floor
<i>kuntoon</i>	in order
<i>kuuluu</i>	includes <i>or</i> belongs to
<i>kylpyhuone</i>	bathroom
<i>kylpyhuonetta</i>	some bathroom
<i>käymään</i>	to visit
<i>laitan</i>	I put
<i>lounasta</i>	some lunch
<i>lähdetään</i>	let's go

<i>me</i>	we	<i>samaan</i>	in the same
<i>meidän</i>	our	<i>sauna</i>	steambath
<i>meillä</i>	at us	<i>siinä</i>	in it
<i>meillä on</i>	we have	<i>sisällä</i>	inside
<i>-mme</i>	first person plural verb suffix	<i>sitten</i>	then
<i>minun</i>	my	<i>sitä</i>	that
<i>muutamme</i>	we move in	<i>suuri</i>	large
<i>muuttaa</i>	to move in	<i>syömme</i>	we eat
<i>-n</i>	first person singular verb suffix	<i>-t</i>	second person singular verb suffix
<i>nimi</i>	name	<i>talo</i>	house
<i>nähdä</i>	to see	<i>tervetuloa</i>	welcome
<i>olla</i>	to be	<i>tiedä</i>	know
<i>otamme</i>	we take	<i>toinen</i>	second <i>or</i> another
<i>pari</i>	a couple	<i>toveri</i>	friend <i>or</i> pal
<i>Pohjolan</i>	Pohjola's	<i>-tte</i>	second person plural verb suffix
<i>päivällistä</i>	some dinner	<i>tulemme</i>	we come
<i>saamme</i>	we get	<i>vapaita</i>	some vacant(s) <i>or</i> some free(s)
<i>saatte</i>	you get	<i>-vat</i>	third person plural verb suffix
<i>sama</i>	same	<i>viikkoa</i>	some week
		<i>vuokraa</i>	he rents

## SPRUCING UP

## SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

*To the Group Leader and Members of the Group:* If you have been working without a Guide and only with the phonograph records, from now on you will have to proceed by yourselves from this learning unit. When you go through the *Basic Sentences* of this and later units, you may read the English equivalents as you have done up to now and call on different members of the group to speak the Finnish twice for each item in the *Basic Sentences*. Or, if you prefer, you can have one student read the English and another student say the Finnish twice, and so on, chain fashion. Both you and the other members of the group should be on the watch to detect and correct faulty pronunciation. (The *Hints on Pronunciation* are recorded through Unit 10.)

## 1. Basic Sentences

*James Grey talks to his landlady about going to the barber's and elsewhere about town.*

## ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS

## FINNISH

*James Grey*

Good morning, Mrs. Mikkola.

*Hyvää huomenta, rouva Mikkola.*

*Rouva Mikkola*

Good morning, James.

*Huomenta, James.*

you slept  
Did you sleep well?

*nukuiitte  
Nukuitteko hyvin?*

And how do you like your room?

*Ja mitä te pidätte huoneestanne?*

*James Grey*

Thank you, I slept very well.

*Kiitos, nukuin oikein hyvin.*

quiet *or* peaceful

*rauhallinen*

My room is very quiet.

*Huoneeni on niin rauhallinen.*

*Rouva Mikkola*

to go

*mennä*

out

*ulos*

Do you intend to go out?

*Aiotteko mennä ulos?*

It's beginning to rain out there.

*Ulkona alkaa sataa.*

*James Grey*

I must

*minun täytyy*

Yes, I must go to the station.

*Kyllä, minun täytyy mennä asemalle.*

*Rouva Mikkola*

Is your friend Bill coming to town?

*Tuleeko toverinne Bill kaupunkiin?*

*James Grey*

He's arriving at three o'clock, by train.

*Hän saapuu junalla kello kolme.*

some laundry  
Have you got some laundry?  
I send  
own  
I'm just sending out my own.

laundry  
I have some laundry in my room.  
I bring  
down  
I'll bring it down.

Have you got a great deal?

some shirt  
I have only a couple of shirts,  
some pair  
some socks  
six pairs of socks,  
some shorts  
three pairs of shorts,

*Rouva Mikkola*

*pyykkiä*  
*Onko teillä pyykkiä?*  
*lähetän*  
*oma*  
*Lähetän omani juuri ulos.*

*James Grey*

*pyykki*  
*Minulla on pyykki huoneessani.*  
*tuon*  
*alas*  
*Tuon sen alas.*

*Rouva Mikkola*

*Onko teillä paljon?*

*James Grey*

*paitaa*  
*Minulla on vain pari paitaa,*  
*paria*  
*sukkia*  
*kuusi paria sukkia,*  
*alushousuja*  
*kolme paria alushousuja,*

dozen  
some handkerchiefs  
and a dozen handkerchiefs.

*tusina  
nenäliinoja  
ja tusina nenäliinoja.*

*Rouva Mikkola*

Very well.  
simultaneously  
I'm sending everything at the same time.

*Hyvä on.  
yhtaikaa tai yht'aikaa  
Lähetän kaikki yhtäikaa.*

*James Grey*

Thanks very much.  
hair (of the head)  
long  
Isn't my hair too long, Mrs. Mikkola?

*Kiitoksia paljon.  
tukka  
pitkä  
Eikö tukkani ole liian pitkä, rouva Mikkola?*

*Rouva Mikkola*

Yes, it is.  
you know  
Do you know where the barber is?

*On kyllä.  
tiedätte  
Tiedättekö missä on parturi?*

*James Grey*

Yes, he's in this same house.

*Kyllä, se on tässä samassa talossa.*



I shave  
at the same (time)  
beard  
I'll get a shave at the same time.

*ajan partani  
samalla  
parta  
Ajan myöskin samalla partani.*

I noticed  
shoe  
broken  
I noticed that your shoe needs repair.

*huomasin  
kenkä  
rikki  
Huomasin, että teidän kenkänne on rikki.*

quite  
Quite right.  
Tell me, where's a shoemaker?

*James Grey*  
*aivan  
Aivan oikein.  
Sanokaa minulle missä on suutari?*

The shoemaker's to the left of the barber.

*Rouva Mikkola*  
*Suutari on parturista vasemmalle.*

Is he good?

*James Grey*  
*Onko hän hyvä?*

Yes, he's good.

*Rouva Mikkola*  
*Kyllä, hän on hyvä.*

of the town  
But there's a cheaper one outside town.

oh  
coat  
Oh, my coat's ripped!  
to have pressed  
trousers  
I'd like to have my trousers pressed too.

There's a very good tailor in the hotel.

certainly  
But he's sure to be too expensive.

He's more expensive, but he's the best.

guess  
I go  
Guess where I'm going tonight?  
136 [8-A]

*kaupungin*  
*Mutta halvempi on kaupungin ulkopuolella.*

*James Grey*

*oi*  
*takki*  
*Oi, takkini on rikki.*

*prässäyttää*  
*housut*  
*Ja haluan prässäyttää housuni.*

*Rouva Mikkola*

*Hotellissa on oikein hyvä räätäli.*

*James Grey*

*varmaan*  
*Mutta hän on varmaan liian kallis.*

*Rouva Mikkola*

*Hän on kalliimpi mutta myöskin parhain.*

*James Grey*

*arvatkaa*  
*menen*  
*Arvatkaa mihin menen tänä iltana?*

*Rouva Mikkola*

You must be going out to the movies with Miss Jussila.      *Varmaan menette elokuviin neiti Jussilan kanssa.*

*James Grey*

I'm going with Miss Jussila to a restaurant for dinner, and then to the movies.      *Menen neiti Jussilan kanssa ravintolaan päivälliselle ja sitten elokuviin.*

*Rouva Mikkola*

Which restaurant are you going to?      *Mihin ravintolaan te menette?*

*James Grey*

We'll eat dinner at the Helsinki restaurant.      *Syömmme päivällistä Helsingin ravintolassa.*

### Hints on Pronunciation

#### *Double Consonants*

If you glance back at Table One in Unit 7, page 119, you will note that nine Finnish consonants occur in groups of two. These double consonants are: *pp*, *tt*, *kk*, *mm*, *nn*, *rr*, *ll*, *ss* and *hh*. As yet, you had no example in which *pp* or *hh* occurred, but the others may now be taken up in turn.

*Double t:* Pronounce *tt* as you would in the English expressions *hot tea*, or *rat tail*, (in contrast to *detail*). Note the brief period of silence while the tongue rests against the back of your front teeth as the *tt* is pronounced in Finnish. This is very important. If you don't observe this, especially if you substitute a simple *t*, you might easily be misunderstood.

## PRACTICE 27

### Record 2A, beginning

<i>vettä</i>	water	<i>esittäisitte</i>	you'd introduce
	<i>saatte</i>		you get

*Double k:* Pronounce *kk* as you would pronounce *ck c* in the English expression *black coal*, or the *ck k* in *sick king* (in contrast to *sickening*). Again, keep your tongue pressed against your palate for a brief while, to distinguish the *kk* from the *k*, or you might easily be misunderstood.

## PRACTICE 28

### Record 2A, after first spiral

<i>pyykki</i>	laundry	<i>tukka</i>	hair
	<i>kaikki</i>		all

*Double m:* Pronounce *mm* as you would in English *roommate* (in contrast to *roomer*).

## PRACTICE 29

### Record 2A, after second spiral

<i>kymmenen</i>	ten	<i>emme</i>	we don't
	<i>saamme</i>		we get

*Double n:* Pronounce *nn* as you would in English *pennname* (in contrast to *penny*).

## PRACTICE 30

### Record 2A, after third spiral

<i>penniä</i>	some pennies	<i>mennään</i>	let's go
	<i>huoneestanne</i>		from your room

*Double r:* To learn the pronunciation of *rr*, you must first master the pronunciation of *r*. Look up the discussion of *r* in Unit 5, page 91. The double *rr* is produced like the simple *r*, but with about twice as many flaps of the tongue. The nearest English equivalent is the *rr* sound in the expression of disgust or cold, *brr*.

## PRACTICE 31

### Record 2A, after fourth spiral

<i>herra</i>	Mr.	<i>kerros</i>	floor
	<i>kerran</i>		once

*Double l:* Pronounce *ll* as you would in English *wholly* (in contrast with *holy*).

## PRACTICE 32

### Record 2A, after fifth spiral

<i>täällä</i>	here	<i>tuolla</i>	there
	<i>kallis</i>		expensive

*Double s:* Pronounce *ss* as you would pronounce the *s c* in the English expression *this city* (in contrast with *publicity*), or the *ss S* in *Miss Sue* (in contrast with *misuse*).

### PRACTICE 33

Record 2A, after sixth spiral

<i>missä</i>	where	<i>tässä</i>	here
<i>naimisissa</i>		married	

*The letter '*

Note the word for 'simultaneously' in the Basic Sentences: it may be written *yhtaikaa* or *yht'aikaa* or, as a matter of fact, in two words, *yhtä aikaa*. The first spelling reflects the pronunciation in rapid speech; the last represents a careful, measured pronunciation. The word in the middle, which you will hear some Finns pronounce, contains a spelling device you should know about: the letter ' , called hereafter the 'catch'. The catch, as you see, may be omitted entirely in the above expression; nevertheless, you must learn to recognize it because (1) it will occur in words where it can not be omitted (at least in the speech of certain Finnish areas), and (2) it plays a very important role in the grammar, even when not actually pronounced as such.

*Pronunciation of the catch:* The sound we have

called catch is heard when you are clearing your throat or, when strongly exaggerated, it constitutes the explosive sound heard when you are coughing. A common kind of cough could be written 'uh'uh. The Finnish catch in the throat is a much milder explosion, however. Here is how you do it: the vocal cords are brought into close contact (hold your breath and feel the constriction in your throat), and the air compressed by the pressure from your lungs is brought against the cords; when they are opened suddenly the air escapes (release your breath). The resulting sound is the catch. You will hear it in some English expressions: between the two *a*'s in *soda-ash* (*soda'ash*), before each of the *o*'s in *oh-oh* (*'o'o*), and in Scotland or Brooklyn in *bottle* (*bo'l*) for example. If your Guide pronounces the catch, have him demonstrate.

### PRACTICE 34

Record 2A, after seventh spiral

*yht'aikaa, yht'aikaa* simultaneously

*Substitutions for the catch:* You learned in Unit 7, page 121, that the consonant stem form of *-ee-* stems ends in ' . This is not written in the regular spelling, but if it were, we would write *terve'*, *ase'*, *huone'*, and so forth. Now, the catch is not pronounced here by most Finns as a catch; the catch, however, is replaced

quite regularly by other consonants. Reread, first of all, Unit 7, page 117, on the pronunciation of *tervetuloo* and *kolmekymmentä*. This is what happens: the first part of each of these compound words ends in the catch: *terve'* (being the consonant stem form) and *kolme'*; we can say that when a word ending in a catch is followed by a word beginning in a consonant (especially *p*, *t*, *k* and *s*, but also others), that consonant is substituted for the catch: thus *'* is replaced by *t*, *terve'tuloo*, *tervettuloo*, and by *k*, *kolme'-kymmentä*, *kolmekkymmentä*.

## PRACTICE 35

Record 2A, after eighth spiral

<i>asetehdas</i>	armament factory
<i>huonekylpy</i>	room bath
<i>kolme kuukautta</i>	three months
<i>liikemies</i>	business man

The importance of the catch in grammar will be explained to you later on in various Word Study sections.

## SECTION B—WORD STUDY AND REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

### 1. Word Study

#### *Comment One—Consonant Stems*

All nouns which do not belong to any of the stem types discussed so far (that is, type I, or *-e-* and *-ee-* of type II) belong to the sub-group of stem type II, which we label consonant stems. A consonant stem, like all stems belonging to type II, has one stem ending in a vowel and another in a consonant. The free form of consonant stems ends in a consonant, and since only *-t*, *-r*, *-l*, *-s*, *-n* can occur at the end of free forms (see the various Hints on Pronunciation), we can classify consonant stems according to the

final consonant of the free form as *-t* group, *-r* group *-n* group, *-l* group.

#### 1. *-t* group

<i>olut</i>	beer	<i>olue-lle</i>	for beer
<i>tuhat</i>	thousand	<i>tuhanne-ssa</i>	in a thousand

When a word ends in *-t* in its free form it will have two stem forms: the consonant stem will end in *-t* (thus *olut-* and *tuhat-*) and the vowel stem generally in *-e-* (thus *olue-* and *tuhante-*; note automatic replacement of *nt* by *nn* in *tuhannessa*). Further examples: *olutko* 'beer?', *tuhantemme* 'our thousands'. Some nouns

in the *-t* group have vowel stems in *-ee-* and even in other long vowels.

## 2. *-r* group

<i>sisar</i>	sister	<i>sisare-lta</i>	from sister
<i>tytär</i>	daughter	<i>tyttäre-ni</i>	my daughter

When a word ends in *-r* in its free form it will have two stem forms: the consonant stem will end in *-r-* (thus *sisar-*, *tytär-*) and the vowel stem in *-e-* (*sisare-*, *tyttäre-*; note automatic replacement of *tt* by *t* in *tytär*). Further examples: *sisarta* 'some sister' (with the *-(t)a* suffix, added to the consonant stem *sisar-*), *tyttären* 'the daughter'.

## 3. *-l* group

You have no words as yet belonging to this group, but you may note that the words ending in *-l* in their free form behave just like those in the *-r* group, that is, have a consonant stem in *-l-* and a vowel stem in *-e-*.

## 4. *-s* group

<i>lounas</i>	lunch	<i>lounaa-t</i>	lunches
<i>sotilas</i>	soldier	<i>sotilaa-mme</i>	our soldiers
<i>tehdas</i>	factory	<i>tehtaa-ssa</i>	in the factory
<i>kolmas</i>	third	<i>kolmanne-ssa</i>	in the third

Words in the *-s* group fall into several sub-groups according to what vowel precedes the *-s* in the free form. Thus, all of the above belong to the *-as* sub-group. All but a very few words the free forms of which end in *-as* have consonant stems in *-s-* (*lounas-*, *sotilas-*, etc.), and vowel stems in *-a-* (*lounaa-*, *tehtaa-*; note the automatic replacement of *t* by *d* in *tehdas*). *Kolmas* is one of the few exceptions, having its consonant stem in *-t-* (*kolmat-*) and its vowel stem in *-nte-* (note the replacement of *nt* by *nn* in *kolmannessa*).

(*liike*)*mies* (business)man      *miehe-t* men

Among words ending in *-es* in their free form you had but one, which happens to belong to the handful of exceptional forms: the word *mies* 'man' has a consonant stem *mies-* and a vowel stem *miehe-*.

*kaunis* beautiful      *kaunii-mpi* more beautiful  
*kallis* expensive      *kallii-mpi* more expensive

Words ending in *-is* in their free form have consonant stems in *-s-*, vowel stems in *-i-*.

*kerros* floor      *kerrokse-t* floors

Words ending in *-os* in their form have consonant stems in *-s-*, vowel stems in *-kse-*.

# 5. -n group

<i>aamiainen</i>	breakfast
<i>aamiaise-t</i>	breakfasts
<i>amerikkalainen</i>	American
<i>amerikkalaise-ssa</i>	in an American
<i>(konttori)apulainen</i>	(office) helper
<i>apulaise-lta</i>	from the helper
<i>rauhallinen</i>	quiet
<i>rauhallise-sta</i>	from the quiet
<i>suomalainen</i>	Finnish
<i>suomalaise-t</i>	Finnish ...s
<i>kymmenen</i>	ten
<i>kymmene-ssä</i>	in ten

Words in the -n group fall into several sub-groups according to what sounds precedes the -n in the free form. Thus, all the above belong to the -nen sub-group. Words which end in -nen in their free form have consonant stems in -s- and vowel stems in -se-, except *kymmenen*. Further examples: *aamiaista* 'some breakfast' (consonant stem *aamiais-* and suffix *-(t)a*), *rauhallisen* 'the quiet'.

<i>vasen</i>	left	<i>vasemma-lle</i>	to the left
--------------	------	--------------------	-------------

Among words ending in -en (that is, in a consonant other than n- followed by -en) in their free form you

had but one, which happens to be an exceptional form. While all others end in -n- in their consonant stem and in -ne- in their vowel stem, *vasen* has a consonant stem *vasen-*, but a vowel stem *vasempa-* (note the replacement of *mp* by *mm* in *vasemmalle*). Further examples: *vasenko* 'left?', *vasemmalla* 'from the left', *vasempani* 'my left'.

<i>suurin</i>	biggest	<i>suurimma-ssa</i>	in the biggest
<i>parhain</i>	best	<i>parhaimpa-ni</i>	my best
<i>tervein</i>	healthiest	<i>terveimpä-nsä</i>	his healthiest

Look up the discussion of the -in suffix in Unit 3, pages 54-5. If you want to add further suffixes to these adjectives in -in they take on a stem form ending in -mpa- (or, by automatic replacement, in certain cases in -mma-), as in the illustrations. These adjectives must not be confused with free forms ending in -in, because the latter have consonant stems in -n-, vowel stems in -me-.

You have no examples yet of words belonging to other -n sub-groups, except *seitsemän* 'seven', *kahdeksan* 'eight', and *yhdeksän* 'nine', which are exceptional and were already discussed in Unit 7, page 122.

## Comment Two—Verb Stems (Type I)

<i>lähettää</i>	to send	<i>lähetä-n</i>	I send
<i>sanoa</i>	to say	<i>sano-tte</i>	you say



<i>syödä</i>	to eat	<i>syö</i>	he eats
<i>tuoda</i>	to bring	<i>tuo-mme</i>	we bring

Verb stems, like noun stems, are of two types. To type I belong those which have only one stem form—always ending in a vowel; and to type II belong those which have two stem forms—one ending in a vowel, the other in a consonant. Verbs, like nouns, have a free form and a stem form. Free verb forms appear in the column to the left above, and are translated by the English infinitives, that is, with 'to': 'to do', 'to sleep', and so on.

All the verbs in the columns above belong to stem type I. A verb the free form of which ends in *-a* (or *-ä*), and when the *-a* is preceded by either a vowel (as in *lähett-ä-ä*, *san-o-a*) or a *-d-* (as in *syö-d-ä*, *tuo-d-a*), belongs to type I. The stem form is built by leaving off the final *-a* if that follows a vowel, and the *-da* in the other case. Personal verb suffixes (see Unit 7, pages 122-3) are always added directly to the stem of verbs in the present tense, as illustrated in the column to the right. Study these further examples: *käydä* 'to go', stem *käy-*, *käyn* 'I go', *käy* 'he goes'; *ajaa* 'to

shave', stem *aja-*, *ajat partas* 'you shave', *ajaa partansa* 'he shaves'.

<i>tehdä</i>	to do	<i>teke-e</i>	he does
<i>nähdä</i>	to see	<i>näke-e</i>	he sees

These two verbs, though they have free forms ending in *-da*, do not belong to type I, and are somewhat unusual in other respects as well. They belong to type II, have a vowel stem as in the illustrations, and a consonant stem *tek-* and *näk-*. The *-k-*, however, undergoes various automatic changes, about which you'll learn more later on.

## 2. Covering English and Finnish of Word Study

Give the English equivalents of all expressions in the *Word Study* and the Finnish for all the English. This is individual study.

## 3. Review of Basic Sentences

Further oral practice with the first part of the *Basic Sentences*.

## SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES (*Cont.*)

### 1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

Further oral practice with the second part of the *Basic Sentences*.

### 2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences

Check your knowledge of the meaning of all words and phrases in the *Basic Sentences*. This is individual study.

### 3. What Would You Say?

I. In the following sentences you will find one or more words in parentheses. These are *free forms*. Each free form must take a *suffix*, to make sense in the sentence. Add the right suffix throughout, making sure that you're adding to the correct *stem forms*. (In some cases more than one solution is possible.)

1. (Pyykki) on monta paitaa.
2. Tuon (kenkä) tänään (suutari).
3. Syömmme (aamiainen) aina (kahdeksan).
4. Menen (oma) (maatila) ensi (viikko).
5. (Nukuitte) (sama) (huone) (toveri) kanssa?
6. Hän on (työ) (tehdas).

7. (Nuori) (poika) ovat (armeija).
8. (Vanha) (sisar) on hyvä (toveri).
9. (Asema) on (vasen) (hotelli)?
10. (Maatila) on kaukana (Turku).
11. Helsinki on (kaunis) kaupunki.
12. Hän on (vanha) (sisar).
13. (Huone) on (rauhallinen).
14. (Juna) saapuu (Turku) (asema).
15. Hän (etsiä) huonetta kaupungin ulkopuolella.
16. Juna (lähteä) asemalta kello kolme.
17. (Saapua) äitinne Helsinkiin tänään?
18. Te (tietää), että maatilani on hyvin kaunis kesällä.
19. Toverini ja minä (syödä) päivällistä ravintolassa.
20. Sisareni (nukkua) samassa huoneessa kanssani.
21. Minä (asua) kauniissa talossa asemalta vasemmalle.
22. (Tuoda) pyykkisi alas tänään.
23. (Aikoa) mennä kolmelle ensi viikolla?
24. Jos sinä (antaa) minulle päivällistä, tulen teillä käymään.
25. Hän (ymmärtää) että samaan kuuluu myöskin aamiainen.

II. Select the right response for each situation.

1. You say you're looking for a room.
  - a. *Lapsi tulee huoneesta.*
  - b. *Talossa on vapaita huoneita.*
  - c. *Minä etsin huonetta.*
2. You ask if it's raining outside.
  - a. *Mennäänkö ulos?*
  - b. *Onko sauna ulkona?*
  - c. *Sataako ulkona?*
3. You say you must have your coat pressed.
  - a. *Sotilas prässäyttää housunsa.*
  - b. *Minun täytyy prässäyttää takkini.*
  - c. *Takkini on räätälissä.*
4. You ask if your laundry is coming today.
  - a. *Tuleeko pyykkini tänään?*
  - b. *Onko teillä paljon sukkia pyykissä?*
  - c. *Lähdetäänkö katsomaan missä on pyykkini?*
5. You say you're shaving in the bathroom.
  - a. *Hotellissa on parturi ja suutari.*
  - b. *Emäntä ja isäntä ovat sisällä.*
  - c. *Ajan partani kylpyhuoneessa.*

6. You ask someone how long he has been here.
  - a. *Aiotteko olla täällä kauan.*
  - b. *Koska te menette ulos?*
  - c. *Kuinka kauan olette olleet täällä?*
7. You say you have a dozen shorts at home.
  - a. *Minulla on nenäliinoja laatikossa.*
  - b. *Minulla on kotona tusina alushousuja.*
  - c. *Minulla on kolme paitaa.*

III. How Would You Answer? This exercise is like the one on pages 124-5 of the previous unit.

1. *Syöttekö päivällistä ravintolassa?*
2. *Menettekö elokuviin tänä iltana?*
3. *Saapuuko toverinne kaupunkiin?*
4. *Tiedättekö missä on hammaslääkäri?*
5. *Onko maatilanne kaukana Helsingistä?*
6. *Vuokraako rouwa Mikkola huoneita?*
7. *Onko New York kaunis kaupunki?*
8. *Kuinka vanha on teidän nuorin sisarenne?*
9. *Onko parturi asemasta oikealle tai vasemmalle?*
10. *Paljonko on huoneenne vuokra?*

## SECTION D—LISTENING IN

### 1. What Did You Say?

With the other members of the group give orally your response to the previous exercises as the Leader calls for them.

### 2. Word Study Check-Up

Give the Finnish for all English equivalents in the *Word Study* as the Leader calls for it.

### 3. Listening In

*I. Liisa Jussila and James Grey walk home from the movies and talk about James' friend, Jack, and other topics.*

*James Grey*

*Se oli oikein hyvä elokuva.*

*Liisa Jussila*

*Niin oli. Pidän elokuvista.*

*Asutteko vielä samassa huoneessa?*

*James Grey*

*Ei, asun rouva Toivosen talossa.*

*Liisa Jussila*

*Pidättekö huoneestanne?*

*James Grey*

*Kyllä, se on hyvin rauhallinen.*

*Ja rouva Mikkola on hyvä emäntä.*

*Liisa Jussila*

*Syöttekö myöskin siellä?*

*James Grey*

*Syön vain aamiaisen.*

*Lähtekö äitinne maatilalleen ensi viikolla?*

*Liisa Jussila*

*Ei, on liian kylmä.*

*Hän on mielellään kaupungissa.*

*James Grey*

*Toverini Jack tulee myöskin kaupunkiin.*

*Liisa Jussila*

*Tahdotteko te ja toverinne syödä lounasta kanssani?*

*James Grey*

*Koska, ja mihin aikaan?*

*Liisa Jussila*

*Tänään syömme noin kello yksi.*

*James Grey*

*Kiitos, mutta minun täytyy mennä asemalle kello yksi.*

*Liisa Jussila*

*Saapuuko toverinne kello yhden junalla?*

*James Grey*

*Kyllä, ja hänen täytyy mennä hotelliin myöskin.*

*Liisa Jussila*

*Haluatteko tulla päivälliselle kello kuusi?*

*James Grey*

*Saammeko tulla päivälliselle?*

*Liisa Jussila*

*Tietysti, tervetuloa!*

*James Grey*

*Jack käy pankissa ja konttorissa kello viisi.*

*Liisa Jussila*

*Missä työssä Jack oli Amerikassa?*

*James Grey*

*Hän oli konttoriapulainen.*

*Liisa Jussila*

*Asetehtaassako?*

*James Grey*

*Niin, samassa asetehtaassa minun kanssani.*

*Liisa Jussila*

*Onko Jack vanhempi kuin te?*

*James Grey*

*Ei, hän on monta vuotta nuorempi.*

*Liisa Jussila*

*Vieläkö ulkona sataa?*

*James Grey*

*Ei, mutta on kylmä.*

*Liisa Jussila*

*Kesällä on kaupungissa aina lämmin.*

*James Grey*

*Haluaisin olla Helsingissä kesällä.*

*Liisa Jussila*

*Olen mielelläni maatilalla.*

*Kaupungissa on liian lämmin.*

*James Grey*

*Amerikassa on vielä lämpimämpi.*

*II. Mistaken identity.*

*Jack*

*Sanokaa, Liisa, saanko tulla teille tänä iltana?*

*Eeva*

*Tietysti, Eero, tervetuloa!*

*Jack*

*Mutta tämä ei ole Eero.*

*Eeva*

*Ja tämä ei ole Liisa.*

## SECTION E—CONVERSATION

### 1. Covering the Finnish of Basic Sentences

With the Finnish covered, practice until you can speak the Finnish for each English sentence without hesitation. This is individual study.

### 2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Give the Finnish for all English sentences in the *Basic Sentences* as the Leader calls for it.

### 3. Conversation

1. You're in your hotel room and ring for the waiter who enters shortly thereafter. You tell the waiter that you have just arrived from Turku. Now that you're in Helsinki, you're anxious to get a shave; you ask the waiter where the barber shop is. He tells you that there is one on the second floor of the hotel. He then remarks that your coat and trousers need cleaning and pressing. You say that your train leaves

in five hours. He says that the coat and trousers cannot be pressed then. You inquire about the restaurants in town and mention that you have to drop in at the Bank of Helsinki. The waiter tells you that the Bank is to the right of the hotel. There's a very good restaurant to the left of the Bank. You thank the waiter for the information and dismiss him.

2. You're now at the barber's getting a shave. The barber is very talkative and speaks in detail, first about the weather in Helsinki during the various seasons; then he tells you all about the many members of his family (their ages and occupations). You finally interrupt him with a question: "Where's a shoe-maker?" The barber is a bit offended at your impatience and says that there's one straight ahead but that he's very expensive and not very good. You say it doesn't matter and ask the barber for the price of the shave. He tells you that it costs eight marks. You pay him and say good-bye.

3. You're now in the office of the manager of the Bank of Helsinki. He's a good friend of your father's. Your father, in fact, was his doctor. The manager is very friendly and says he'd like to introduce his wife. He invites you for dinner to his farm which is seven kilometers from Helsinki. You decline regretfully because you must be at the station in a few hours. Then you take your leave.

## Finder List

<i>aivan</i>	quite
<i>ajaa</i>	to shave ( <i>or</i> to ride)
<i>alas</i>	down
<i>alushousuja</i>	some shorts
<i>apulainen</i>	helper
<i>arvatkaa</i>	guess
<i>housut</i>	trousers
<i>huomasin</i>	I noticed
<i>kaupungin</i>	of the town
<i>kenkä</i>	shoe
<i>lähettää</i>	to send
<i>mennä</i>	to go
<i>mies</i>	man
<i>minun täytyy</i>	I must
<i>nenäliinoja</i>	some handkerchiefs
<i>nukuitte</i>	you slept
<i>oma</i>	own
<i>oi</i>	oh
<i>paitaa</i>	some shirts
<i>paria</i>	some pairs

<i>parta</i>	beard	<i>takki</i>	coat
<i>pitkä</i>	long	<i>tietää</i>	to know
<i>pyykki</i>	laundry	<i>tukka</i>	hair (of the head)
<i>pyykkiä</i>	some laundry	<i>tuoda</i>	to bring
<i>prässäyttää</i>	to press	<i>tusina</i>	dozen
<i>rauhallinen</i>	quiet <i>or</i> peaceful	<i>varmaan</i>	certainly
<i>rikki</i>	broken	<i>yhtaikaa</i> (or <i>yht'aikaa</i> )	simultaneously
<i>samalla</i>	at the same time	<i>ulos</i>	out
<i>sukkia</i>	some socks		



## LET'S EAT

## SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

## 1. Basic Sentences

*Lieutenant Steward takes Miss Laakso out to dinner.*

## ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS

## FINNISH

*Luutnantti Steward*

What time is it?

*Kuinka paljon on kello?*to wait  
some valley*odottaa  
laaksoa*

I'm expecting Miss Laakso for dinner.

*Odotan neiti Laaksoa päivälliselle.**Herra Joki*a quarter  
past*neljännes  
yli*

It's a quarter past five.

*Kello on neljänneksen yli viisi.*

lieutenant

*luutnantti*

Where do you intend to eat, lieutenant?

*Missä aijotte syödä, Herra Luutnantti?*

*Luutnantti Steward*

I don't  
I don't know.

*en  
En tiedä.*

half  
We eat at eight thirty.

*puoli  
Syömme puoli yhdeksän.*

you could  
to recommend  
some restaurant  
Mr. Joki, could you recommend a good restaurant?

*voisitte  
suositella  
ravintolaa  
Voisitteko te, Herra Joki, suositella hyvää ravintolaa?*

*Herra Joki*

Of course.

*Tietysti.*

on Esplanad street  
There are a couple of good restaurants on Esplanad  
Street,  
such as the Hotel Savoy and the Grand.

*Esplanadinkadulla  
Esplanadinkadulla on pari hyvää ravintolaa,  
kuten Hotelli Savoy ja Grand.*

*Luutnantti Steward*

on Anna street  
Is there a good restaurant on Anna street?

*Annankadulla  
Eikö Annankadulla ole hyvää ravintolaa?*

*Herra Joki*

there  
small  
Yes, there's just a small restaurant.

*siellä  
pieni  
Kyllä, siellä on vain pieni ravintola.*

on Heikki street  
But there is a better one on Heikki street.

We're going to the Grand restaurant.  
Mr. Joki, tell me,  
one eats  
abyut what time do they eat  
some breakfast  
breakfast, lunch and dinner in Finland?

family  
The family breakfast is at eight o'clock,  
to two  
lunch from twelve o'clock to two,  
of six  
and dinner about six o'clock.

But we're going to dinner.  
a quarter  
to  
At a quarter to eight.

*Heikinkadulla  
Mutta, Heikinkadulla on parempi.*

*Luutnantti Steward*

*Me menemme Grand ravintolaan.  
Herra Joki, sanokaa minulle,  
syödään  
mihin aikaan Suomessa syödään  
aamiaista  
aamiaista, lounasta ja päivällistä?*

*Herra Joki*

*perhe  
Aamiainen on perheessä kello kahdeksan,  
kahteen  
lounas kello kahdestatoista kahteen,  
kuuden  
ja päivällinen kuuden aikaan.*

*Luutnantti Steward*

*Mutta me menemme päivälliselle.  
neljännestä  
vailla  
Neljännestä vailla kahdeksan.*

*Herra Joki*

It's quite all right to go to a restaurant at eight.

*On paras mennä ravintolaan kahdeksan aikaan.*

*Luutnantti Steward*

Thank you for your advice.

*Kiitoksia paljon neuvostanne.*

*In the Restaurant*

*Waiter:*

table

Table for two?

*Tarjoilija:*

*pöytä*

*Pöytä kahdelleko?*

*Luutnantti Steward*

menu

Yes, and the menu, please.

What'll you have, Miss Laakso?

*ruokalista*

*Niin, ja ruokalista, olkaa hyvä.*

*Mitä te haluatte, neiti Laakso?*

*Miss Laakso*

chicken

vegetables

I'm fond of chicken and vegetables.

*kana*

*vihannekset*

*Pidän kanasta ja vihanneksista.*

*Luutnantti Steward*

some onion beefsteak

There's some onion beefsteak on the menu.

Tell me what it is.

*sipulipihviä*

*Ruokalistassa on sipulipihviä.*

*Sanokaa minulle, mitä se on.*

as  
same  
It's the same as your 'steak'.

*Miss Laakso*  
kuin  
samaa  
*Se on samaa kuin teidän 'steak'.*

first  
some bouillon  
Would you like some bouillon first?

*Luutnantti Steward*  
ensin  
lihalientä  
*Haluatteko ensin lihalientä?*

Yes, thank you.

*Miss Laakso*  
Kyllä, kiitos.

Waiter, we'll have two bouillons.  
portion  
some chicken  
of vegetables  
A portion of chicken with vegetables.  
some meat balls  
And meat balls and potatoes.

*Luutnantti Steward*  
Tarjoilija, saammeko kaksi lihalientä.  
annos  
kanaa  
vihannesten  
Annos kanaa vihannesten kanssa.  
lihapullia  
Ja lihapullia ja perunoita.

some salad  
Would you like some salad?

*Tarjoilija*  
salaattia  
*Haluatteko salaattia?*

No thank you.

we order  
dessert  
late

We'll order the dessert later.

*Luutnantti Steward*

*Ei kiitos.*

*tilaamme  
jälkiruoka  
myöhään*

*Tilaamme jälkiruokan myöhemmin.*

*Miss Laakso*

some fish  
Would you like some fish too?

*kalaa  
Haluaisitteko myöskin kalaa?*

*Luutnantti Steward*

glass  
some wine  
No, but I want a glass of wine.

how about  
How about you, Miss Laakso?

*lasi  
viiniä  
Ei, mutta tahdon lasin viiniä.*

*entäs  
Entäs te, neiti Laakso?*

*Miss Laakso*

Yes, I'd love it.

*Kyllä, mielelläni.*

*Luutnantti Steward*

some glass  
Waiter, two glasses of wine, please.

*lasia  
Tarjoilija, olkaa hyvä, kaksi lasia viiniä.*

*Tarjoilija*

some ice cream  
some pastries

We have ice cream and pastry on the menu.

*jäätelöä  
leivoksia*

*Meillä on ruokalistassa jäätelöä ja leivoksia.*

*Luutnantti Steward*

Do you want pastry and coffee?

*Tahdotteko leivoksia ja kahvia?*

*Miss Laakso*

small  
cup

Yes, and just a small cup of coffee.

*pieni  
kuppi*

*Kyllä, ja vain pieni kuppi kahvia.*

*Luutnantti Steward*

bill  
Waiter, the bill, please.

*lasku*

*Tarjoilija, lasku, olkaa hyvä.*

*Tarjoilija*

It's fifty-one marks.

*Se on viisikymmentäyksi markkaa.*

*Luutnantti Steward*

Here's sixty marks.

*Tässä on kuusikymmentä markkaa.*

the rest *or* end  
tip

The rest is your tip.

*loppu*

*juomaraha*

*Loppu on juomarahanne.*

## 2. Hints on Pronunciation

Glance back at your table of consonant groups in unit 7, page 119. Note that combinations of more than two consonants occur only in the *m*, *n*, *r*, and *l* columns. The remaining columns contain only groups of two consonants. Of these, we have already discussed all those the first member of which is identical with the second (that is, the *double consonants*). The other groups of two are easy to pronounce: the first member is always the sound closing one syllable, and the second member begins the next. Now, some of the first members, especially *h*, will never occur at the end of a syllable in English and you may tend to omit them (see unit 4, pages 71-2); in Finnish, however, both members of a group must be fully pronounced. The pronunciation of the individual members was already

discussed in the various units. You must pay a good deal of attention to these groups when the first member is *h*.

### PRACTICE 36

Record 2A, after ninth spiral

<i>johtaja</i>	manager	<i>kahvi</i>	coffee
<i>tahdotte</i>	you want	<i>Pohjolan</i>	Pohjola's

Combinations of three consonants will be discussed in the following unit. We shall now pass to a discussion of vowel groups.

*Vowel groups:* The following table summarizes for your convenience the Finnish vowel groups. Look over the table carefully.



Table Two

## Finnish Vowel Groups

	i	e	ä	y	ö	u	o	a
i	ii	ei	äi	yi	öi	ui	oi	ai
e	ie	ee	äe	ye	öe	ue	oe	ae
ä	iä	eä	ää	yä	öä			
y		ey	äy	yy	öy			
ö	iö		äö	yö	(öö)			
u	iu	eu				uu	ou	au
o	io	eo				uo	oo	ao
a	ia	ea				ua	oa	aa

Every vowel, as you see from the table, occurs in groups of two. The *öö* was put in parentheses because it's extremely rare. Of the others, *ii*, *ee*, *ää*, *yy*, *uu*, and *aa* will occur quite often, and it is very important that you pronounce them correctly. In general, a

long (or double) vowel will be pronounced exactly like its short (or single) counterpart, but about one and a half times as long.

*Double i:* Pronounce the Finnish *ii* similarly to the *ee* of English *heed* (in contrast with the *i* of *hid*).

## PRACTICE 37

Record 2A, after tenth spiral

<i>viisi</i>	five	<i>viikolla</i>	during the week
	<i>näkemiin</i>		so long

*Double e:* The nearest approximation to the Finnish *ee* in English is the *a* in *shade*.

## PRACTICE 38

Record 2A, after eleventh spiral

<i>tulee</i>	he comes	<i>länteen</i>	to the west
	<i>teette</i>		you do

*Double ä:* Pronounce the Finnish *ää* a little longer than you would the *a* of English *mad*.

## PRACTICE 39

Record 2A, after twelfth spiral

<i>tänään</i>	today	<i>lisää</i>	more
	<i>lähdetään</i>		let's go

*Double y:* There is no sound in English approximating a Finnish *yy*. Reread the discussion in unit 1, page 14, and imitate the Guide's (or record's) pronunciation.  
160 [9-A]

nunciation of *y*; then pronounce this sound about one and a half times as long, and you'll have the *yy*.

## PRACTICE 40

Record 2A, after thirteenth spiral

<i>pyytää</i>	to ask for	<i>pyykki</i>	laundry
---------------	------------	---------------	---------

*Double u:* Pronounce the Finnish *uu* similarly to the *oo* of English *soon* (in contrast with the *oo* of *soot*), only longer.

## PRACTICE 41

Record 2A, after fourteenth spiral

<i>juuri</i>	just	<i>kuuluu</i>	includes
	<i>muuttaa</i>		to move in

*Double o:* The nearest approximation to the Finnish *oo* in English is the *oa* in *load*.

## PRACTICE 42

Record 2A, after fifteenth spiral

<i>kuntoon, kuntoon</i>	in order
-------------------------	----------

*Double a:* Pronounce the Finnish *aa* similarly to the *aa* found in the name *Haas*, only about twice as long.

## PRACTICE 43

### Record 2A, after sixteenth spiral

<i>sataa</i>	it's raining	<i>saamme</i>	we get
	<i>aamiainen</i>	breakfast	

*Rise in pitch:* You have probably noticed that you use ups and downs of tone in speaking English to express surprise, for instance, or in questions, exclamations. In Finnish, too, you will hear rising pitch in certain cases. There are some words where the last syllable may have a distinctly higher pitch than those preceding. Your Guide may tell you that this pro-

nunciation is 'shop-keeper's Finnish' (that is, common), but chances are, he too says it under certain circumstances. In the following Practice the syllable with higher pitch is marked by an accent. Note how your Guide or the records call out these words:

## PRACTICE 44

### Record 2A, after seventeenth spiral

<i>kyllä́</i>	yeah!	<i>mitä?!</i>	what?!
<i>poiká!</i>	hey, boy!	<i>kiitós!</i>	thanks!
	<i>hyvästí!</i>	good-bye!	

## SECTION B—WORD STUDY AND REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

### 1. Word Study

*Comment one—The -(t)a suffix and when to use it*

#### 1. The suffix -(t)a:

<i>syötte lounasta</i>	you eat lunch	<i>hyvää yötä</i>	good night
<i>kaksi sisarta</i>	two sisters		

You have learned the words *lounas* 'lunch', *yö* 'night', *sisar* 'sister', with the *-ta* suffix attached as in the above examples. This suffix is added to the consonant variety of stems belonging to type II, and to

stems ending in a double vowel. For example: *lapsi* 'child', consonant stem *las-*, *lasta* 'some child'; *vapaa* 'free', stem *vapaa-*, *vapaata* 'some free . . . '.

*minä etsin huonetta* I'm looking for a room

The consonant stem of *huone* 'room' is *huone-*; when you add the *-ta*, the *-* is replaced by *-t*, hence *huonet-ta* 'some room'. Thus also, *ase* 'weapon', *ase-*, *asetta* 'some weapon' (see unit 8, pages 139-40).

*hyvää iltaa* good evening    *hyvää päivää* good day  
*haluaisitteko kalaa?* would you like some fish?

You have learned the words *hyvä* 'good', *ilta* 'evening', *päivä* 'day', *kala* 'fish', with the *-a* suffix attached as in the above examples. This suffix is identical with *-ta*, but is added to stems ending in a single vowel. For example: *vaimoa* 'some wife', *ammattia* 'some trade'.

Since the *-ta* and the *-a* are the same suffix, differing only according to what stem they are added to, we can refer to it as the *-(t)a* suffix.

Stems ending in two vowels other than double may take *-(t)a* in either variety.

The numerals can take this suffix: *yhtä*, *kahta*, *kolmea*, *neljää*, *viittä*, *kuutta*, *seitsemää*, *kahdeksaa*, *yhdeksää*, *kymmentä*, etc.

## 2. How to use *-(t)a*:

<i>sata kilometriä</i>	100 kilometers
<i>kaksikymmentä</i>	twenty
<i>kolme kuukautta</i>	three months
<i>neljätoista</i>	fourteen

*minulla on kaksi veljeä ja yksi sisar*  
I have two brothers and one sister

*nuorempi on kuusi vuotta vanha*  
the younger is six

*kaksi sisarta on naimisissa*  
the two sisters are married

The above sentences and expressions illustrate one of the uses of the *-(t)a* suffix. Note that whenever a noun follows a numeral other than *yksi* (see *yksi sisar* above), and when that numeral appears in its free form, the noun will take the *-(t)a* suffix. This is true even for the words for 20, 30, etc., when *kymmenen* must take this suffix, and of the words for 11-19, where *toinen* must take this suffix.

<i>annos kanaa</i>	a portion of chicken
<i>lasi viiniä</i>	a glass of wine
<i>kuppi kahvia</i>	a cup of coffee
<i>paljon rahaa</i>	much money

These expressions illustrate another use of *-(t)a*. When a noun follows a word of quantity or a measure, the noun takes the *-(t)a* suffix.

*hyvää yötä*    good night    *kiitoksia*<sup>1</sup>    thanks

In greetings and exclamations of this sort the *-(t)a* suffix is used. After the expression 'I wish you' the suffix would appear regularly; in expressions of this kind, however, 'I wish you' is simply omitted, as in English.

<i>haluan lihaa</i>	I want some meat
<i>haluaisin olutta</i>	I'd like some beer
<i>haluaisitteko lihalientä?</i>	would you like some bouillon?

<sup>1</sup>You will often hear, however, *kiitos paljon* for *kiitoksia paljon*.

<i>onko teillä huonetta?</i>	have you any rooms?
<i>kaksi sisarta on naimisissa</i>	two sisters are married

*antakaa minulle vettä*      give me some water

The partitive suffix is used regularly as stated above, as well as in certain other cases, some of which will be illustrated elsewhere (unit 14, pages 236-7—the negative verbs.)

<i>tilata</i>	to order	<i>arvata</i>	to guess
	<i>haluta</i>	to want	

*mennä*                    to go

*tulla* to come      *suositella* to recommend

Note that the *-ta*, *-na*, *-la* endings are really all the same. Taking *-ta* as the basic form, we can say that after *n*, the *t* of *-ta* is replaced by *n* (hence *-na*), and after *l*, the *t* of *-ta* is replaced by *l* (hence *-la*); you will find verbs ending in *-ra*, belonging to type II, when the *t* of *-ta* is replaced by *r* (hence *-ra*) after an *r*. The *-ta*, as such, occurs after vowels and consonants other than *n*, *l*, *r*, therefore.

The formation of vowel stems and consonant stems in type II from the free form will be discussed in unit 11, page 203.

## 2. Covering English and Finnish of Word Study

Give the English equivalents of all Finnish expressions in the *Word Study* and the Finnish for all the English. This is individual study.

## 3. Review of Basic Sentences

Further oral practice with the first part of the *Basic Sentences*.

# SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES (Cont.)

## 1. Review of Basic Sentences (Cont.)

Further oral practice with the second part of the *Basic Sentences*.

## 2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences

Check your knowledge of the meaning of all words and phrases in the *Basic Sentences*. This is individual study.

## 3. What Would You Say?

I. This is an exercise on the use of the partitive suffix discussed in this unit. How would you say these sentences in Finnish? Be sure to say them aloud rather than to write them down.

1. Many boys go to school, but only one works.
2. I'd like a glass of milk.

3. I'm looking for a vacant and large room.
4. Please give me a portion of chicken.
5. Would you like a cup of cold coffee?
6. Many thanks, I'll come gladly.
7. I want twenty-seven boxes of cigarettes.
8. I'd like some more meatballs and salad.
9. I want to ask Miss Sara for dinner.

## II

Combinations. This exercise is like the one in unit 5, pages 95-6.

- |                                     |                       |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. <i>Mitä voin tilata veljenne</i> | a. <i>rauhallinen</i> |
| 2. <i>Etsin suurta ja kaunista</i>  | b. <i>odotan</i>      |
| 3. <i>Talossa asuu monta</i>        | c. <i>puolesta</i>    |
| 4. <i>Toisessa kerroksessa on</i>   | d. <i>tilaamme</i>    |
| 5. <i>Koska haluatte</i>            | e. <i>neitiä</i>      |

- |  |                       |
|--|-----------------------|
| 6. <i>Sisareni on kuusi vuotta</i>     | f. <i>kanssa</i>      |
| 7. <i>Hän on tervein</i>               | g. <i>maatilaa</i>    |
| 8. <i>Aijotteko mennä</i>              | h. <i>menemme</i>     |
| 9. <i>Haluan prässäyttää</i>           | i. <i>housuni</i>     |
| 10. <i>Nyt juuri ulkona</i>            | j. <i>on</i>          |
| 11. <i>Huoneeni on suuri ja</i>        | k. <i>sisaristani</i> |
| 12. <i>Junani lähtee kuuden</i>        | l. <i>vailla</i>      |
| 13. <i>Annos perunoita vihannesten</i> | m. <i>sataa</i>       |
|  | n. <i>sitten</i>      |
|  | o. <i>ulos</i>        |
|  | p. <i>aikaan</i>      |
|  | q. <i>muuttaa</i>     |
|  | r. <i>saammeko</i>    |
|  | s. <i>nuorempi</i>    |
|  | t. <i>kylpyhuone</i>  |

III. The answers to these ten questions will easily be found in the *Basic Sentences* of this unit. Read the questions aloud and give the answers orally. Answer in as complete sentences as you can.

1. *Onko Esplanadinkadulla hyvää ravintolaa?*
2. *Mihin aikaan perheessä syödään aamiaista?*
3. *Onko ravintolan ruokalistassa kanaa?*
4. *Haluaako luutnantti Steward lasin viiniä?*
5. *Mitä on sipulipihvi?*
6. *Onko kuusikymmentä markkaa liian paljon?*
7. *Tahtooko neiti Laakso kahvia ja leivoksia?*
8. *Paljonko kuppi kahvia maksaa?*
9. *Tilaako luutnantti lihapullia vai kanaa?*
10. *Onko oikein mennä ravintolaan päivälliselle kello kahdeksan.*

## SECTION D—LISTENING IN

### 1. What Did You Say?

With the other members of the group give orally your response to the previous exercises as the Leader calls for them.

### 2. Word Study Check-Up

Give the Finnish for all English equivalents in the Word Study as the Leader calls for it.

### 3. Listening In

#### I. A Problem:

*En tiedä, onko minun nähtävä Liisa Annankadulla tai Anna Liisankadulla.*

*II. Mr. Steward is having a conversation with Miss Mikkola at her home.*

*Herra Steward*

*Hyvää iltaa, neiti Mikkola.*

*Neiti Mikkola*

*Hyvää iltaa! Tervetuloa!*

*Herra Steward*

*Kiitos.*

*Haluaisin kysyä, tulisitteko kanssani toverini maatilalle ensi viikolla.*

*Neiti Mikkola*

*Kiitos mielelläni!*

*Ovatko rouva ja herra Toivonen siellä?*

*Herra Steward*

*Kyllä, he ovat olleet siellä jo viisi viikkoa.*

*Neiti Mikkola*

*Koska junanne lähtee Helsingistä vai aiotteko olla täällä enempi aikaa.*

*Herra Steward*

*Aijon lähteä tänään kello kaksitoista, ja junani saapuu maalle noin kello neljä.*

*Neiti Mikkola*

*Kuinka kaukana on toverinne maatila Helsingistä?*

*Herra Steward*

*Se on sataviisikymmentä kilometriä täältä.  
Tulisitteko kanssani ravintolaan tänä iltana?*

*Neiti Mikkola*

*Kyllä, mutta odotan veljeäni.  
Hän saapuu tänä iltana Turusta.  
Laitan kahvia täällä.  
Minulla on myöskin leivoksia.*

*Herra Steward*

*Hyvä on.  
Mennäänkö kaikki myöhemmin ravintolaan?*



*Neiti Mikkola*

*Haluaisin mennä Grand ravintolaan.  
Oletteko koskaan olleet siellä?*

*Herra Steward*

*Kyllä, olen ollut Grand ravintolassa monta kertaa.*

*Neiti Mikkola*

*Niinkö?  
Te puhutte hyvin suomea.  
Kuinka kauan olette olleet Suomessa?*

*Herra Steward*

*Noin kahdeksan kuukautta.*

*Neiti Mikkola*

*Pidätkö te Grand hotellista?*

*Herra Steward*

*Kyllä, Grand hotellissa ravintola on oikein hyvä ja  
kaunis.  
Myöskin hyvin halpa.  
Minulla oli hyvin hauskaa siellä.*

*Neiti Mikkola*

*Onko teillä sisaria tai veljiä Yhdysvalloissa?*

*Herra Steward*

*On kyllä.  
Vanhin veljeni on armeijassa ja sisareni on hammas-  
lääkäri.*

*Neiti Mikkola*

*Ovatko he naimisissa?*

*Herra Steward*

*Kyllä.  
Veljeni vaimo on Suomesta, mutta sisareni ei ole  
naimisissa.*

*Neiti Mikkola*

*Veljeni on täällä.  
Herra Steward, tämä on veljeni Väinö.*

*Herra Steward*

*Hyvää iltaa.  
Hauska tutustua.*

## SECTION E—CONVERSATION

### 1. Covering the Finnish of Basic Sentences

With the Finnish covered practice until you can speak the Finnish for each English sentence without hesitation. This is individual study.

### 2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Give the Finnish for all English sentences in the *Basic Sentences* as the Leader calls for it.

### 3. Conversation

1. Compare notes with a friend on the food you like and dislike.

2. You're sitting in the diner of a train and order a full meal. Afterwards you ask the waiter about the arrival of the train at the station in Helsinki and the

departure of the night train from Helsinki. You ask the waiter to tell you how to find a barber, a tailor, a shoemaker, and a movie in Helsinki. The waiter says he's sorry but he doesn't know Helsinki: he comes from Turku.

3. There's a young lady sitting at the table. She tells you that Helsinki is her home and that she'll be glad to show you what you want to see. You and she exchange information about each other's family background. Then, having run out of conversation, you talk about the weather.

4. It seems that you and the young lady are now better acquainted: You find yourself sitting with her in the Grand Hotel's restaurant drinking a glass of wine. The two of you then order dinner. After the dinner you invite her to go to a movie near the hotel. She comes with you to the station and says goodbye to you rather tenderly.

## SECTION F—CONVERSATION (*Cont.*)

Continue conversation. Additional check-up if necessary.

### Review

### Complete Check-Up

### Finder List

<i>annos</i>	portion
<i>ensin</i>	first
<i>entäs</i>	how about
<i>Esplanadin</i>	of Esplanad
<i>juomara</i>	tip
<i>jälkiruo</i>	dessert
<i>jäätelö</i>	ice cream
<i>kahteen</i>	to two
<i>kala</i>	fish
<i>kana</i>	chicken
<i>katu</i>	street

<i>kuin</i>	as
<i>kuppi</i>	cup
<i>kuuden</i>	of six
<i>laakso</i>	valley
<i>lasi</i>	glass
<i>lasku</i>	bill
<i>leivoksia</i>	some pastries
<i>lihaliemi</i>	bouillon
<i>lihapullia</i>	some meat balls
<i>loppu</i>	the rest <i>or</i> end
<i>luutnantti</i>	lieutenant
<i>myöhään</i>	late
<i>neljännes</i>	a quarter
<i>odottaa</i>	to wait
<i>perhe</i>	family
<i>pieni</i>	small
<i>pihvi</i>	beefsteak

<i>puoli</i>	half	<i>-(t)a</i>	partitive suffix
<i>pöytä</i>	table	<i>tarjoilija</i>	waiter
<i>ruokalista</i>	menu	<i>tilata</i>	to order
<i>salaatti</i>	salad	<i>vailla</i>	to
<i>sama</i>	same	<i>vihannesten</i>	of vegetables
<i>siellä</i>	there	<i>viini</i>	wine
<i>sipuli</i>	onion	<i>voisitte</i>	you could
<i>suositella</i>	to recommend		
<i>syödään</i>	one eats	<i>yli</i>	past

## SEEING THE SIGHTS

## SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

## 1. Basic Sentences

*Mr. Blake asks Herra Puro about the sights of Helsinki.*

## ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS

## FINNISH

*Matti Puro*

ever  
Have you ever been in Helsinki?

*koskaan*  
*Oletteko koskaan olleet Helsingissä?*

*Harry Blake*

Not yet.

*En vielä.*

heard  
I've heard that Helsinki is a beautiful city.

*kuullut*  
*Olen kuullut että Helsinki on kaunis kaupunki.*

*Matti Puro*

head or chief  
white  
Helsinki, our capital, is 'the White City of the North!'

*pää*  
*valkea*  
*Helsinki, pääkaupunkimme on "Pohjolan Valkea Kaupunki!"*

I must see it.

can  
What can I go to see there first?

*Harry Blake*

*Minun on nähtävä se.  
voida  
Mitä voin ensin mennä katsomaan siellä?*

modern  
Our station is modern.  
Saarinen's  
art  
It is the work of Eliel Saarinen.<sup>1</sup>

*Matti Puro*

*uudenaikainen  
Asemamme on uudenaikainen.  
Saarisen  
taide  
Se on Eliel Saarisen taidetta.*

known  
He's well known in America.

*Harry Blake*

*tunnettu  
Hän on hyvin tunnettu Amerikassa.*

He's been living in the United States for many years.

national  
theatre  
The National Theatre is to the left of the station.

*Matti Puro*

*Hän on asunut monta vuotta Yhdysvalloissa.  
kansallis-  
teatteri  
Asemasta vasemmalle on Kansallisteatteri.*

---

<sup>1</sup>Born at Rantasalmi in 1873, now at Cranbrook Academy, Saarinen is one of the greatest architects of the world. His style is characterized by an effect of mass and proportion; plain monumentality with little ornamentation; grand originality but unassuming scale of color and form. See also unit 29.

opposite  
Atheneum  
And opposite that is the Atheneum.

*vastapäätä*  
*Ateneumi*  
*Ja sitä vastapäätä on Ateneumi.*

*Harry Blake*

Diet *or* parliament  
Where's your great and beautiful Parliament Building?

*eduskunta*  
*Missä on suuri ja kaunis Eduskuntatalonne?*

*Matti Puro*

station's  
behind  
It's just behind the station.

*aseman*  
*takana*  
*Se on juuri aseman takana.*

*Harry Blake*

museum  
How far is the National Museum from the station?

*museo*  
*Kuinka kaukana on Kansallismuseo asemasta?*

*Matti Puro*

It's straight ahead from the Parliament Building.  
conservatory  
The Conservatory is on the same street.

*Se on suoraan eteenpäin Eduskuntatalosta.*  
*Konservatorio*  
*Konservatorio on samalla kadulla.*

*Harry Blake*

church  
I'd also like to see your churches.

*kirkko*  
*Haluaisin myöskin nähdä kirkkonne.*

*Matti Puro*

There are many churches in the city of Helsinki.

*Helsingin kaupungissa on monta kirkkoa.*

*Harry Blake*

Can you recommend a good and inexpensive hotel?

*Voitteko suositella hyvää ja halpaa hotellia?*

*Matti Puro*

Of course.

*Tietysti.*

Do you intend to be in town for long?

*Aiotteko olla kauan kaupungissa?*

*Harry Blake*

About two or three weeks.

*Noin pari, kolme viikkoa.*

*Matti Puro*

at Mikkola's there is  
Mrs. Mikkola must certainly have vacant rooms.

*Mikkolalla on  
Rouva Mikkolalla on varmaan vapaita huoneita.*

*Harry Blake*

rent  
of the room  
How much is the room rent a week?

*vuokra  
huoneen  
Paljonko on huoneen vuokra viikossa?*

*Matti Puro*

About a hundred marks a week.

*Noin sata markkaa viikossa.*



It's not expensive.  
Shall we go for some coffee now?

Let's go.

to call  
I must also call my friend.  
telephone  
Could you tell me where's a telephone?

Here's a telephone.

a call  
How much is a call?

Only fifty pennies.  
Is your friend in town?

*Harry Blake*

*Se ei ole kallis.  
Mennäänkö nyt kahville?*

*Matti Puro*

*Mennään.*

*Harry Blake*

*soittaa  
Minun täytyy myöskin soittaa toverilleni.  
puhelin  
Voitteko sanoa missä on puhelin?*

*Matti Puro*

*Täällä on puhelin.*

*Harry Blake*

*puhelu  
Kuinka paljon puhelu maksaa?*

*Matti Puro*

*Vain viisikymmentä penniä.  
Onko toverinne kaupungissa?*

on the farm  
No, he's at his farm, just outside town.

*Harry Blake*

*maatilalla*  
*Ei ole, hän on maatilallansa, juuri kuupungin ulko-*  
*puolella.*

country *or* earth *or* countryside  
A call to the country costs more.

*Matti Puro*

*maa*  
*Puhelu maalle maksaa enempi.*

I could  
telegram  
Can I send a telegram?

*Harry Blake*

*voisin*  
*sähkösanoma*  
*Voisinko lähettää sähkösanoman?*

You can send a telegram from the station.

*Matti Puro*

*Sähkösanoman voitte lähettää asemalta.*

Would you come with me?

*Harry Blake*

*Tulisitteko kanssani?*

Of course.

*Matti Puro*

*Tietysti.*

newspaper  
I'd like to buy a newspaper at the same time.

*sanomalehti*  
*Haluan ostaa sanomalehden samalla.*

## 2. Hints on Pronunciation

### *Combinations of three consonants:*

If you will look once again at your table on page 119 of unit 7, you will see that combinations of three consonants occur under the columns *m*, *n*, *r*, and *l* only. On the other hand, these combinations are found only in the rows *p*, *t*, *k*, and *s*. In general, the pronunciation is quite easy: the first two consonants will close one syllable, and the third will begin the next one. They are therefore divided *mp-p*, *rt-t*, *lk-k*, etc. Here are illustrations from among those combinations which you've already had.

*Group ntt*: Pronounce this group similarly to the English combination *nt t* in *aunt teaches* (as contrasted with *nt* in *antic*).

### **PRACTICE 45**

#### **Record 2B, beginning**

*konttori*      office      *luutnantti*      lieutenant

*Group nkk*: Pronounce this group similarly to the English combination *nk c* in *pink cap* (as contrasted with *nk* in *pinkier*).

### **PRACTICE 46**

#### **Record 2B, after first spiral**

*pankki, pankki*      bank

*Group rkk*: Pronounce this group similarly to the English combination *rk c* in *dark cat* (as contrasted with *rk* in *darker*).

### **PRACTICE 47**

#### **Record 2B, after second spiral**

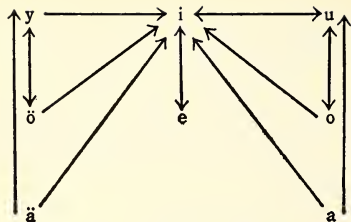
*markka*      mark      *kirkko*      church

There are also a few words containing these additional combinations: *mp-s*, *rt-s*, *rs-k*, *rs-m*; but they occur rarely and you had as yet no examples containing them.

### *Vowel Groups*

Turn back again to page 159 of unit 9. Observe the Finnish vowel groups. All vowel combinations fall into one of three groups. The first group, double vowels, was discussed at length in the previous unit.

To the second group belong sixteen combinations, illustrated by the following diagram (the arrow points away from the first and to the second vowel of each combination):



Now note these facts about the pronunciation of these sixteen combinations:

Directly after a vowel, *i* is pronounced similarly to, but not quite like, a Finnish *j* (or English *y* of *yes*). The group *ei*, however, is sometimes pronounced almost as an *ee*.

### PRACTICE 48

Record 2B, after third spiral

	<i>ei</i>		no
<i>neiti</i>	miss	<i>oikein</i>	right
<i>meillä on</i>	we have	<i>milloin</i>	when
<i>äiti</i>	mother	<i>aina</i>	always
<i>päivä</i>	day	<i>tai</i>	or

Likewise, directly after a vowel, *u* is pronounced similarly to, but not quite like an English *w*.

### PRACTICE 49

Record 2B, after fourth spiral

<i>rouva</i>	Mrs.	<i>kaupunki</i>	town
<i>lounas</i>	lunch	<i>kuukausi</i>	month

All sixteen combinations mentioned form a single syllable: *päi-vä*, *lou-nas*. Note these additional examples:

### PRACTICE 50

Record 2B, after fifth spiral

<i>käy</i>	he goes	<i>vielä</i>	yet
<i>nuori</i>	young	<i>yö</i>	night

The remaining twenty combinations differ inasmuch as the first part of the combination ends one syllable, and the second part begins the next: *kysy-ä* 'to ask', *halu-an* 'I want'. Here are some illustrations:

### PRACTICE 51

Record 2B, after sixth spiral

<i>kysyä</i>	to ask	<i>veljeä</i>	some brother
<i>henkilöä</i>	some person	<i>valkea</i>	white
<i>kilometriä</i>	some kilometer	<i>museo</i>	museum
<i>pian</i>	soon	<i>oluelle</i>	for some beer

## SECTION B—WORD STUDY AND REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

### 1. Word Study

#### *Comment One—The Plural Marker -i-*

The plural marker *-t* was discussed in unit 5, pages 92-3. This marker indicates the plural of a free noun form. (It is also used to express the plural of the object relationship, which is marked by *-n* in the singular, as shown in unit 5, page 93.) Now note these examples:

<i>sisaria</i>	some sisters	<i>veljiä</i>	some brothers
<i>vapaita huoneita</i>			some vacant rooms
<i>Yhdysvalloissa</i>			in the United States

In the first three illustrations observe that between the various stems (*sisar-*, etc.) and the *-(t)a* suffix there is an additional element *-i-*; also before the *-ssa* and after *Yhdysvallo-* there is an *-i-*. This element marks the plural of a noun stem, *before a case suffix*.

#### *Comment Two—The verb suffix -(s)i*

<i>nukutte</i>	you are sleeping	<i>sanon</i>	I say
<i>nukuitte</i>	you slept	<i>sanoin</i>	I said

Note the contrast between each of the word pairs above. The verbs in the first line are in the present

tense (that is, consist of stem plus personal suffix), and the verbs in the second line are in the past tense: they consist of the stem, an element *-i-*, and the personal suffix. This element *-i-* is the marker of the past tense here.

<i>huomaan</i>	I notice	<i>huomasin</i>	I noticed
----------------	----------	-----------------	-----------

A stem ending in two vowels (such as *huomaa-*) will take *-si-* in the past, and the immediately preceding vowel will drop. Thus, *haluan* 'I want', stem *halua-*, *halusin* 'I wanted'.

*Note:* the present and the past are the only two simple tenses in Finnish. The personal suffixes are the same for both (see unit 7, pages 122-3), except in the third person singular, where there's no personal suffix in the past tense: *men-i* 'he went', *sano-i* 'he said', etc.

#### *Comment Three—Automatic changes with -i-*

1.

<i>tukka</i>	hair	<i>ostan</i>	I buy
<i>tukissa</i>	in the hairs	<i>ostin</i>	I bought

When a two syllable stem (noun or verb), having a *u* or an *o* in its first syllable (*tuk-ka-*, *os-ta-*) and ending in *-a* is followed by an *-i-* (that is, if a noun, is in the

plural, if a verb, is in the past), the *-a* stem vowel disappears. The *u* or *o* of the first syllable may be in a vowel combination; thus in *soittaa* 'to call', stem *soitta-*, *soitin* 'I called'. (Note: the consonant changes *tt* to *t* in the forms of *soittaa* are examples of automatic consonant changes which will be taken up later.)

2.

<i>kala</i>	fish	<i>ajan</i>	I'm riding
<i>kaloilta</i>	from (outside) the fishes	<i>ajoin</i>	I rode

When a two syllable stem (noun or verb), having a vowel other than *u* or *o* (generally *a*) in its first syllable (*ka-la-*, *a-ja-*) and ending in *-a* is followed by an *-i-*, as in the above illustrations, the *-a* stem vowel is replaced by an *-o* (*kal-o-i-lta*, *aj-o-i-n*).

3.

<i>pöytä</i>	table	<i>pyydän</i>	I ask for
<i>pöydille</i>	to the tables	<i>pyysin</i>	I asked for

When a two syllable stem (noun or verb) ending in *-ä* is followed by an *-i-*, the *-ä* stem vowel disappears: stem *pöytä-*, *pöyd-i-lle*, stem *pyytä-*, *pyys-i-n*. (Note: the consonant changes *t* to *d* in the forms of *pöytä* and in *pyydän*, and the changes *t* to *s* in the forms of *pyytää* are again examples of automatic consonant changes which will be taken up later.)

180 [10-B]

4.

<i>nimessä</i>	in a name	<i>lähden</i>	I leave
<i>nimissä</i>	in names	<i>lähdin</i>	I left

A stem vowel *-e* (*nime-*, *lähte-*) disappears before a following *-i-* (*nim-i-ssä*, *lähd-i-n*).

5.

<i>lasi</i>	glass	<i>etsiä</i>	to seek
<i>laseille</i>	to the glasses	<i>etsi</i>	he sought

When a noun stem ends in *-i*, the stem vowel *-i* is replaced by *-e* before the plural suffix *-i-* (*lase-i-lle*). On the other hand, when a verb stem ends in *-i*, the stem vowel *-i* disappears before the past suffix *-(s)i-*; hence, present and past forms of such verbs can not be formally distinguished: *etsi-n* means 'I seek', but *etsi-i-n* in the past is replaced by *ets-i-n*, meaning 'I sought', both pronounced (and written) *etsin*.

6.

<i>maassa</i>	in the land	<i>huoneesta</i>	from the room
<i>maissa</i>	in the lands	<i>huoneista</i>	from the rooms

When *-i-* comes to follow a stem ending in double vowels (other than *ii*), one of the double vowels drops; the other vowel and the *-i-* fuse into a combination

(that is, are pronounced in the same syllable: *mais-sa*, *hu-o-neis-ta*).

7.

<i>kauniille</i>	to the beautiful ( . . . s)
<i>kauneille</i>	to the beautiful . . . s

When *-i-* comes to follow a stem ending in *-ii* (*kaunis* 'beautiful', vowel stem *kaunii-*), one of two things happens: *ii* + *i* may become either *ii* or *ei*; if the former, the singular and plural can not be distinguished.

8.

<i>työssä</i>	in work	<i>tuon</i>	I bring
<i>töissä</i>	in works	<i>toin</i>	I brought

The combination *yö* + *i* becomes *öi*; the combination *uo* + *i* becomes *oi*, (and, similarly, *ie* + *i* becomes *ei*). Note that in the diagram on page 178 of this unit there are only three combinations where the arrow points downward, and they are precisely *yö*, *ie*, *uo*; when followed by an *-i-*, each loses its first vowel and combines with the *-i-*.)

9.

<i>poika</i>	boy	<i>aika</i>	time
<i>pojat</i>	boys	<i>ajat</i>	times

When an *-i-* vowel, as a result of the addition of some suffix or another, comes to be between two vowels (*po-i-at*, *a-i-at*), it is written as *-j-*, and so pronounced.

10.

Three or more syllable stems change in a rather complex fashion before an *-i-*, and since these cases will not occur too frequently, it seems best to memorize each separately as it comes up. Note these two partitive plurals: *isäntiä* 'some landlords', *emäntiä* 'some landladies'.

#### Comment Four—The suffix *-ksi*

<i>kuinka te sanotte tämän</i>	how do you say this in
<i>suomeksi?</i>	Finnish?
<i>tulee vanhaksi</i>	he becomes old

These two sentences illustrate two common uses of the case suffix *-ksi*. The language in which something is said or written takes *-ksi*: *tämä on englanniksi* 'this is in English'. The other frequent use of this suffix is to indicate 'to, into' in such sentences as 'the house burnt to ashes', that is, the suffix is attached to the word expressing that *into* which a thing passes or which it becomes; it is often used in this way after the verb *tulla* 'to come, to become'; *hän tuli lapseksi* 'he became a child', *he tulivat lapsiksi* 'they became chil-

dren'. The suffix *-ksi* has other uses as well. For example, to indicate place in numerical order: *ensiksi* 'in the first place', *toiseksi* 'in the second place', *kolmanneksi* 'in the third place'. There is also a temporal use, meaning 'time in which a thing is to be accomplished': *poika tuli maalle viikoksi* 'the boy came to the farm for a week'; *isä meni kaupunkiin kuukaudeksi* 'my father went to town for a month'. Note that *-ksi* is replaced by *-kse-* before a possessive suffix: *lounaakseni* 'for my lunch'.

#### *Comment Five—Stem of puhelin*

This word belongs to the *-n* noun stem group, *-in* sub-group (see unit 8, page 142, and has a vowel

stem *puhelime-*, a consonant stem *puhelin-*. For example, *puhelimessa* 'in the telephone', *puhelimta* 'some telephone'.

## 2. Covering English and Finnish of Word Study

Give the English equivalents of all Finnish expressions in the Word Study and the Finnish for all the English. This is individual study.

## 3. Review of Basic Sentences

Further oral practice with the first part of the *Basic Sentences*.

# SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES (*Cont.*)

## 1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

Further oral practice with the second part of the *Basic Sentences*.

## 2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences

Check your knowledge of the meaning of all words and phrases in the *Basic Sentences*. This is individual study.

## 3. What Would You Say?

I. Put these sentences, illustrating the use of *-i-* and *-(s)i*, into Finnish and say each sentence aloud; do not write anything down. (Note: keep in mind the automatic changes.)

- I went to all your churches yesterday.
- We told him that we were in the hotel till two o'clock.



3. They shaved in the bathroom.
4. I had my trousers pressed last week.
5. We came to see how you are.
6. I always ate a good dinner in the restaurants in Helsinki.
7. The telephones are to the left in the hotel.
8. I intended to go to the station, but it was raining.
9. They sent pastries to the soldiers.
10. He asked father for a thousand marks.
11. We waited for you much too long.
12. I recommended to the soldiers a cheaper hotel.
13. We brought you three pairs of socks and a pair of shoes.
14. I lived with my family in the city for ten years.

15. We talked on the telephone with our friends.

II. The following sentences involve the use of *-ksi*. Give the Finnish equivalents speaking each aloud; do not write anything down.

1. We ate onion beefsteak for dinner.
2. I rented beautiful rooms for that month.
3. He left with us to our farm but for only a day.
4. They had to be in the movies by eight o'clock.
5. I had milk and bread for lunch.
6. I ordered a newspaper for six months.
7. I recommended him our chicken and our meat balls for dinner.
8. We become old too soon.

## SECTION D—LISTENING IN

### 1. What Did You Say?

With the other members of the group give orally your responses to the previous exercises as the Leader calls for them.

### 2. Word Study Check-Up

Give the Finnish for all English equivalents in the *Word Study* as the Leader calls for it.

### 3. Listening In

*I. Harry Blake meets Liisa Puro on the street in Helsinki, and he invites her out to lunch and to the theatre.*

*Harry Blake*

*Päivää, neiti Puro.*

*Liisa Puro*

*Päivää, päivää herra Blake.*

*Kuinka kauan te olette olleet kaupungissa?*

*Harry Blake*

*Vain tämän päivän.*

*Liisa Puro*

*Mitä teidän sisarellenne Evalle kuuluu?*

*Harry Blake*

*Kiitos, hyvää vain.*

*Mitä te teette tänä iltana?*

*Tulisitteko kanssani teatteriin?*

*Liisa Puro*

*Kiitos hyvin mielelläni.*

*Harry Blake*

*Tahdotteko mennä.*

*Kansallisteatteriin?*

*Liisa Puro*

*Kyllä, mennään vain.*

184 [10-D]

*Harry Blake*

*Mutta tulisitteko nyt lounaalle kanssani?*

*Voisimme syödä Kämp ravintolassa.*

*Liisa Puro*

*Kämpissä on hyvää ruokaa.*

*Ja se on aivan tässä.*

*Harry Blake*

*Niin on.*

*Mennäänkö sitten?*

*II. In the restaurant.*

*Harry Blake*

*Tarjoilija!*

*Pöytä kahdelle, olkaa hyvä.*

*Neiti Puro, haluatteko lasin viiniä ensin?*

*Neiti Puro*

*Kyllä kiitos.*

*Harry Blake*

*Kaksi lasia viiniä, olkaa hyvää.*

*Mitä hyvää teillä on tänään ruokalistassa?*

*Tarjoilija*

*Kanaa, sipulipihviä, lihapullia ja kalaa.*

*Liisa Puro*

*Saanko minä kanaa vihannesten kanssa.*

*Harry Blake*

*Ja minä haluan sipulipihviä ja perunoita.*

*Tarjoilija*

*Mitä haluatte jälkiruoaksi?*

*Liisa Puro*

*Jäätelöä minulle, olkaa hyvä.*

*Harry Blake*

*Minulle vain kahvia.*

*III. After leaving the restaurant they go sight seeing.*

*Liisa Puro*

*Tässä on Eduskuntatalomme.*

*Oletteko olleet siellä?*

*Harry Blake*

*Kyllä, olen ollut siellä.*

*Se on hyvin kaunis myöskin sisältä.*

*Liisa Puro*

*Niin on.*

*Pidämme hyvin paljon Eduskuntatalostamme.*

*Harry Blake*

*Haluaisin käydä kerran Kansallismuseossanne.*

*Voitteko tulla kanssani?*

*Liisa Puro*

*Minun täytyy olla työssä kello kaksi.*

*Ehkä ensi viikolla*

*Harry Blake*

*Hyvä on.*

*Mennään ensi viikolla*

*Liisa Puro*

*Ateneumimme ei ole kaukana tästä.*

*Haluaisitteko nähdä sen?*

*Harry Blake*

*Menen käymään siellä nyt.  
Ja mihin aikaan syömmme päivällistä?*

*Liisa Puro*

*Tulen työstä kuudelta ja syömmme päivällistä seitsemältä.  
Tervetuloa meille päivälliselle.*

*Harry Blake*

*Kiitos oikein paljon.  
Tulen mielelläni.  
Näkemiin kello seitsemän.*

*Liisa Puro*

*Näkemiin ja tervetuloa.*

## SECTION E—CONVERSATION

### 1. Covering the Finnish of Basic Sentences

With the Finnish covered practice until you can speak the Finnish for each English sentence without hesitation. This is individual study.

### 2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Give the Finnish for all English sentences in the *Basic Sentences* as the Leader calls for it.

### 3. Conversation

1. Describe the sights of your hometown as you would to a strange visitor.

2. You have just arrived at a small railroad station in the Finnish country side. You ask the trainman whether you have enough time to step out for a cup of coffee. He assures you that you have plenty of time. You step off and buy a newspaper, then you order a cup of coffee. You ask the waiter if you can send a telegram from the station. He tells you that you can and that you can also telephone. You finally ask him to point out the toilet. Afterwards you pay for the coffee, leave a tip, and return to the train.

3. You ring for the waiter in the hotel in Helsinki where you are registered. When he comes in, you order breakfast. You inquire for the nearest barber; you also want to know where to find a tailor and a shoemaker.

The waiter tells you that you can find them all in the same building, to the right of the National Theater opposite, that is, to the Atheneum. You tell him that they say Helsinki is a beautiful city. The enthusiastic waiter insists on describing it to you in detail.

4. You are in Turku with a Finnish friend of yours.

You have plans to look at the churches and other famous buildings of Turku. However, it is raining outside and it is still very cold. You consequently decide to stay at home with a couple of beers. The conversation deals chiefly with the weather in various seasons. Later you tell your friend about the sights he must see when he comes to your hometown in the United States.

## SECTION F—CONVERSATION (*Cont.*)

Continue conversation. Additional check-up if necessary.

### Review

Complete check-up.

### Finder List

<i>aseman</i>	of the station
<i>Ateneumi</i>	Atheneum
<i>eduskunta</i>	the Diet <i>or</i> parliament
<i>huoneen</i>	of the room
<i>-i</i>	plural suffix

<i>kansallis-</i>	national
<i>kirkko</i>	church
<i>Konservatorio</i>	conservatory
<i>koskaan</i>	ever
<i>-ksi</i>	to, into
<i>kuullut</i>	heard
<i>maa</i>	land, country <i>or</i> countryside
<i>maatilalla</i>	on the farm
<i>Mikkolalla on</i>	Mikkola has
<i>museo</i>	museum
<i>puhelin</i>	telephone
<i>puhelu</i>	a telephone call
<i>pää</i>	head <i>or</i> chief

<i>Saarisen</i>	Saarinen's
<i>sanomalehti</i>	newspaper
<i>-(s)i-</i>	past suffix
<i>soittaa</i>	to call <i>or</i> play
<i>sähkösanoma</i>	telegram
<i>taide</i>	art
<i>takana</i>	in the back of <i>or</i> behind

<i>teatteri</i>	theatre
<i>tunnettu</i>	known
<i>uudenaikainen</i>	modern
<i>valkea</i>	white
<i>vastapäätä</i>	opposite
<i>voida</i>	can
<i>voisin</i>	I could
<i>vuokra</i>	rent

## SHOPPING

## SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

*Herra Cain and Herra Koivisto plan to go shopping and later go to a department store to make their purchases.*

## ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS

## FINNISH

*Herra Cain*

shopping  
I must do some shopping.  
I'd like to do all my shopping today,  
because  
week-end  
because I'm going to the country for the weekend.  
Will you come to town with me?

*ostoksilla*  
*Minun täytyy käydä ostoksilla.*  
*Haluaisin tehdä tänään kaikki ostokseni,*  
*sillä*  
*viikonloppu*  
*sillä menen maalle viikonlopuksi.*  
*Tulisitteko kanssani kaupungille?*

*Herra Koivisto*

I'll be glad to come.  
What time are you going?

*Tulen mielelläni.*  
*Mihin aikaan te menette?*

*Herra Cain*

About a quarter past eleven.

*Noin neljänneksen yli yksitoista.*

to the bank

*pankkiin*

I'm going to the bank first and shopping afterwards.

*Menen ensin pankkiin ja sitten ostoksille.*

*Herra Koivisto*

Very well.

*Hyvä on.*

by street-car

*raitiovaunulla*

Shall we go by street-car?

*Mennäänkö raitiovaunulla?*

*Herra Cain*

to walk

*kävellä*

I'd like to walk.

*Haluaisin kävellä.*

strange *or* guest

*vieras*

I'm still quite a stranger here.

*Olen vielä aivan vieras täällä.*

I want to see the city.

*Tahdon nähdä kaupunkia.*

*Herra Koivisto*

department store

*tavaratalo*

in the heart of the city

*keskikaupungilla*

The bank and the department store are in the heart of the city.

*Pankki ja tavaratalo ovat keskikaupungilla.*



*Herra Cain*

immediately  
Could you come with me at once?

*heti*  
*Voitteko tulla kanssani heti?*

*Herra Koivisto*

Yes, but I'd like to eat some breakfast first.

*Kyllä, mutta haluaisin ensin syödä aamiaista.*

*Herra Cain*

I'd like some breakfast too.

*Minä myöskin haluaisin aamiaista.*

In the Department Store

*Herra Cain*

present *or* gift  
Toivonen's  
I'd like to buy a couple of presents for the Toivonen  
family.

*lahja*  
*Toivosen*  
*Haluaisin ostaa pari lahjaa Toivosen perheelle.*

*Herra Koivisto*

sweets  
Do you want to buy sweets?

*makeiset*  
*Tahdotteko ostaa makeisia?*

chocolate  
candy  
In this store you can get good chocolates and candy.

*suklaa*  
*karamelli*  
*Täältä saa hyvää suklaata ja karamellejä.*

*Herra Cain*

I'll buy candies for the boy.

pipe  
tobacco

A pipe and some tobacco for Mr. Toivonen.

But what can I buy for Mrs. Toivonen?

*Ostan karamellejä pojalle.*

*piippu  
tupakka*

*Piipun ja tupakkaa herra Toivoselle.*

*Mutta mitä voin ostaa rouva Toivoselle?*

*Herra Koivisto*

flower

Would you like to send flowers to Mrs. Toivonen?

shop *or* store  
block *or* street-corner

The flower shop is four blocks from the department store.

*kukka*

*Haluaisitteko lähettää kukkia rouva Toivoselle?*

*kauppa  
kadunkulma*

*Kukkakauppa on neljä kadunkulmaa tavaratalosta.*

*Herra Cain*

Good.

I'll buy flowers for Mrs. Toivonen.

to pay  
saleslady

Shall I pay the saleslady?

*Hyvä on.*

*Ostan kukkia rouva Toivoselle.*

*maksaa  
myyjätär*

*Maksanko laskuni myyjättärelle?*

*Herra Koivisto*

cashier

No, you pay the cashier.

*kassa*

*Ei, te maksatte kassalle.*

I still have to buy socks and shoes.  
    them *or* those  
Do I get them here?

Socks and shoes are on the third floor.  
    by elevator  
Let's take the elevator.  
It's to the right.

    pharmacy  
I want to go to the pharmacy too.  
    medicine  
I want to buy some medicine.  
    headache  
My wife has a headache.

    cough *or* cold  
And I have a cold.  
    self  
I'll buy some cough medicine for myself at the same  
time.

*Herra Cain*

*Minun täytyy vielä ostaa sukat ja kengät.  
    ne  
Saanko ne täältä?*

*Herra Koivisto*

*Kolmannessa kerroksessa on sukkia ja kenkiä.  
    hissillä  
Mennään hissillä!  
Se on oikealla.*

*Herra Cain*

*apteekki  
Haluan myöskin käydä apteekissa.  
    lääke  
Tahdon ostaa lääkettä.  
    päänsärky  
Vaimollani on päänsärky.*

*Herra Koivisto*

*yskä  
Ja minulla on yskää.  
    itse  
Ostan samalla itselleni yskänlääkettä.*

*Herra Cain*

Is the pharmacy far away?

*Onko apteekki kaukana?*

*Herra Koivisto*

No.

*Ei ole.*

It's only a couple of blocks from here.

*Se on vain pari kadunkulmaa täällä.*

*Herra Cain*

soap  
razor's  
blade

*saippua  
parranajokoneen  
terä*

Where can I buy soap and razor-blades?

*Mistä voin ostaa saippuaa ja parranajokoneen teriä?*

*Herra Koivisto*

drugstore

You get those in the drugstore or the pharmacy.

*rohdoskauppa*

*Niitä saatte rohdoskaupasta tai apteekista.*

*Herra Cain*

will be closed

At what time does the drugstore close?

*suljetaan*

*Mihin aikaan rohdoskauppa suljetaan?*

*Herra Koivisto*

to close

We close all stores in Helsinki at six o'clock.

*sulkea*

*Me suljemme kaikki liikkeet Helsingissä kello kuusi.*

*Herra Cain*

Really?

*Niinkö?*

It's four o'clock now.

*Kello on nyt neljä.*

Then I still have plenty of time.

*Minulla on sitten vielä paljon aikaa.*

Some of the following expressions are in the form of fill-in-sentences. For example, you may find a sentence *nyt on tammikuu* 'this is January'. You should practice this sentence replacing the word for 'January' by the words for 'February, March,' and so forth.

### NAMES OF THE MONTHS

He's going to the country in January.

*Hän menee maalle tammikuussa.*

Replace *tammikuu* by:

February

*helmikuu*

March

*maaliskuu*

April

*huhtikuu*

May

*toukokuu*

June

*kesäkuu*

July

*heinäkuu*

August

*elokuu*

September

*syyskuu*

October

*lokakuu*

November

*marraskuu*

December

*joulukuu*

## DAYS OF THE WEEK

Thursday was a day of hard work.

*Torstai oli pitkä työpäivä.*

Replace *torstai* by:

Sunday	<i>sunnuntai</i>
Monday	<i>maanantai</i>
Tuesday	<i>tiistai</i>
Wednesday	<i>keskiviikko</i>
Friday	<i>perjantai</i>
Saturday	<i>lauantai</i>

## EXAMINE THESE NUMBERS

Zero times zero is zero.

*Nolla kertaa nolla on nolla.*

The first boy to the left is my brother.

*Ensimmäinen poika vasemmalta on veljeni.*

Replace *ensimmäinen* by:

second	<i>toinen</i>
third	<i>kolmas</i>
eleventh	<i>yhdestoista</i>

I intend to visit your museum once more.

*Aijon käydä museossanne vielä kerran.*

Replace *kerran* by:

twice	<i>kaksi kertaa</i>
three times	<i>kolme kertaa</i>

He went to school to-day for the first time.

Replace *ensi kertaa* by:

for the second time

for the third time

It's price is double.

Replace *kaksinkertainen* by:

triple

quadruple

I want them by twos.

I have half a dozen socks.

Two times two is four.

$$\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{4} = \frac{3}{4}$$

I want three fourths of the bread.

*Hän oli koulussa tänään ensi kertaa.*

*toista kertaa*

*kolmatta kertaa*

*Sen hinta on kaksinkertainen.*

*kolminkertainen*

*nelinkertainen*

*Haluan ne kaksittain.*

*Minulla on puoli tusinaa sukkia.*

*Kaksi kertaa kaksi on neljä.*

*Puoli ja neljännes on kolme neljänneestä.*

*Tahdon kolme neljättä osaa leivästä.*

## EXAMINE THESE DATES

1918

1637

1944

On the 3rd of November, 1921.

*yhdeksäntoistasataakahdeksantoista*

*kuusitoistasataakolmekymmentäseitsemän*

*yhdeksäntoistasataaneljäkymmentäneljä*

*Marraskuun kolmantena päivänä, yhdeksäntoistasataa-kaksikymmentäyksi.*

*or*

*or*

*or*

On Monday, at 6:15 PM.

*or*

On Monday, fifteen minutes past six.

On Sunday, at 1:30 AM.

*or*

On Sunday at half past one.

Every Saturday afternoon.

March 15th.

On July the fourth.

On December sixth.

At 3:20 AM.

*or*

Twenty minutes past three.

At 11:40 AM.

*or*

Twenty minutes of twelve.

198 [11-A]

*Marraskuun 3 p:nä 1921.*

*Marraskuun kolmas päivä yhdeksäntoistasataakaksikymmentäyksi.*

*Kolmas päivä marraskuuta yhdeksäntoistasataakaksikymmentäyksi.*

*Maanantaina, kello kahdeksantoista, viisitoista.*

*Maanantaina, viisitoista minuuttia yli kuusi.*

*Sunnuntaina, kello yksi, kolmekymmentä.*

*Sunnuntaina, puoli kaksi yöllä.*

*Joka lauantai-iltapäivä.*

*Maaliskuun viidestoista päivä.*

*Heinäkuun neljäntenä päivänä.*

*Joulukuun kuudentena päivänä.*

*Kolme, kaksikymmentä.*

*Kaksikymmentä minuuttia yli kolme yöllä.*

*Yksitoista, neljäkymmentä.*

*Kaksikymmentä minuuttia vaille kaksitoista.*



Thursday morning at 9:15.

*or*

Thursday morning fifteen minutes past nine.

Daily at 10:45.

*or*

Daily a quarter of eleven.

*Torstai aamuna kello yhdeksän viisitoista.*

*Torstai aamuna viisitoista minuuttia yli yhdeksän.*

*Joka päivä kello kymmenen neljäkymmentäviisi.*

*Joka päivä viisitoista minuuttia vaille yksitoista.*

### Hints on Pronunciation

At this stage you should have no trouble with your pronunciation. If you still do, go back over the *Hints* of the previous units, listen more attentively to your Guide (or the records) and imitate as nearly as you possibly can. Pay special attention henceforth to the pronunciation of entire sentences rather than of words in isolation and out of context.

The *Hints on Pronunciation* will hereafter be discontinued, although from time to time you may have an opportunity to *Check Your Pronunciation* on difficult points.

## SECTION B—WORD STUDY AND REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

(Individual Study)

### 1. Word Study

*Comment One—More about numbers*

1. Abbreviated forms: those numbers which end in *-si*, namely, *yksi*, *kaksi*, *viisi*, *kuusi*, often occur without the final *-i*, as spoken by many Finns. Thus you are apt to hear, *yks*, *kaks*, *viis*, *kuus*. These shortened forms enter even into combinations: *kakstoista* 'twelve', *viiskymmentä* 'fifty'.

### 2. Ordinal numbers

<i>ensimäinen</i>	first	<i>toinen</i>	second
	<i>kolmas</i>	third	

These numbers are known as ordinals. The suffix above *kolmas* is always *-s*: *kymmenes* 'tenth', *sadas* 'hundredth'. The stem forms are regularly *ensimmäise-*, *toise-* (partitive *toista*), *kolmante-* (partitive *kolmatta*),

and so forth. *Ensimmäinen* and *toinen* have combining forms *yhdes* and *kahdes* respectively: *yhdestoista* 'eleventh', *kahdeskymmenes* 'twentieth'.

### 3. Multiplication: how to say 'times'.

<i>(yhden) kerran</i>	once	<i>kaksi kertaa</i>	twice
		<i>kahdesti</i>	

Note the way to form numbers for multiplication: after 'twice' you add the partitive of *kerta* 'times' after the number you wish: *kaksikymmentäneljä kertaa* 'twenty-four times'; or you may add the suffix *-sti*(') to the stem: *kuudesti* 'six times'. In arithmetic, actual multiplication, you simply say: *kolme kertaa neljä* 'three times four'.

### 4. Fractions

<i>puoli</i>	half	<i>neljäsosa</i>	quarter
--------------	------	------------------	---------

Fractions other than 'half' are formed by adding *osa* 'part' to give ordinal number: *kolmasosa* 'third', *kaksi kolmasosaa* 'two thirds'.

### Comment Two—Time and dates

#### 1.

*kuusitoista, kolmekymmentäviisi* at 4:35 PM

The day in Finland, as in the United States, is divided into twenty-four hours; it is not, however, split into two twelves, AM and PM. Beginning with zero (at midnight), you count through to twelve (at noon), and go on to thirteen (at one PM), fourteen (at two PM), and so on to twenty-three hours and fifty-nine minutes (11:59 PM).

#### 2.

<i>puoli</i>	half	<i>neljännes</i>	a quarter
--------------	------	------------------	-----------

Note how time is given in Finnish in halves and quarters: 'eight thirty' becomes 'half nine': *puoli yhdeksän*. With quarters you must use the words *yli* 'past', and *vailla* 'to': 'quarter past five' is *neljänneksen yli viisi*; 'quarter to eight' is *neljänneksen vailla kahdeksan*. *Neljännestä vailla kymmenen*: this illustrates another way of saying 'quarter'; in fact, many speakers prefer it to the other.

#### 3.

<i>kaksikymmenntä minuuttia</i>	twenty minutes past
<i>yli kolme</i>	three
<i>kaksikymmenntä minuuttia</i>	twenty minutes of
<i>vaille kaksitoista</i>	twelve

These examples illustrate still another way of giving time in Finnish, involving the use of *minuutti* 'minute'.

4. Note this matter of spelling: dates, like '1944', are spelled in one word: *yhdeksäntoistasataaneljäkymmentäneljä*.

5. Note this abbreviation:

*marraskuun 3 p:nä 1921*                      Nov. 3, 1921  
*P:nä* stands for *päivänä* 'on a day'.

*Comment Three—The suffix -lla*

<i>samalla kadulla</i>	on the same street
<i>ulkopuolella</i>	outside
<i>minulla on</i>	I have (= by me there is)
<i>hän on maatilallansa</i>	he's at his farm
<i>raitiovaunulla</i>	by street car

The case suffix *-lla* indicates chiefly a place where an action takes place; it is therefore translated by various English prepositions, 'on', 'by', 'at', and so on. In the singular, the suffix is added to the vowel stem, in the plural to the stem followed by the usual *-i-*: *kirkko* 'church', stem *kirkko-*, *kirkolla* 'at the church', *kirkkoilla* 'at the churches'; *mies* 'man', vowel stem *miehe-*, *miehellä* 'by the man', *miehillä* 'by the men'.

<i>päivällä</i>	by day	<i>yöllä</i>	by night
<i>kesällä</i>	by summer		

Note the use of *-lla* in these expressions of time and

that the period is not specified by a preceding number or any other word.

<i>onko hänellä lapsia?</i>	has she any children?
<i>teillä on yksi sisar</i>	you have one sister

Forms of the English verb 'to have' are translated into Finnish by adding *-lla* as above in *häne-llä* 'by him', *tei-llä* 'by you', and using forms of *olla* 'to be': *poika on meillä* 'the boy is with us' (literally, 'by us boy there is').

<i>minä haluan laatikon</i>	I want the box for two
<i>kahdella marhalla</i>	marks

The *-lla* is often used to denote the 'price of something'.

<i>mielelläni</i>	with pleasure, gladly
-------------------	-----------------------

The suffix appears in this expression as well. *Mieli* among other things, is the word for 'mind, taste, desire', and so the expression literally means 'at my taste, by my desire'.

*Comment Four—Some automatic consonant changes*

<i>kuppi</i>	cup	<i>ottaa</i>	to take
<i>kupit</i>	cups	<i>otan</i>	I take
	<i>kukka</i>		flower
	<i>kukat</i>		flowers

Study these three pairs of words, and observe how the *pp* is replaced by *p* in the first, *tt* by *t* in the second, *kk* by *k* in the third. These replacements, as well as a whole series of others given below, are very simply explained. This is what happens.

A series of consonant groups (such as *pp*, *tt*, *kk*) or single consonants are replaced regularly by another series (such as *p*, *t*, *k*), under given circumstances. Suppose we label the first series of consonants (abbreviated C) Ca, and the second series Cb. We must now state the condition under which Cb replaces (abbreviated ~) Ca.

Note how the words in the illustrations above can be divided into syllables: *kup-pi*, *ot-taa*, *kuk-ka*: each syllable following a Ca (namely *-pi*, *-taa*, *-ka*) ends in a vowel (abbreviated V). On the other hand observe *ku-pit*, *o-tan*, *ku-kat*: each syllable following a Cb (namely, *-pit*, *-tan*, *-kat*) ends in a consonant.

We can now state the condition under which Ca ~ Cb. When the syllable following Ca, for whatever reason (due to the shape of a suffix added) comes to end in a consonant instead of a vowel, Ca ~ Cb. This process is covered by the formula CaV ~ CbVC.

You must now learn the various consonants belonging to each series, and see how one series corresponds to the other. This information is summarised in the following table.

			Examples*		
Ca	~	Cb	CaV	~	CaVC
<i>pp</i>		<i>p</i>	<i>kuppi</i>		<i>kupissa</i>
<i>tt</i>		<i>t</i>	<i>tyttö</i>		<i>tytön</i>
<i>kk</i>		<i>k</i>	{ <i>nukkua</i> <i>pankki</i>		<i>nukuiltte</i> <i>pankilla</i>
<i>nk</i>		<i>ng</i>	<i>kaupunki</i>		<i>kaupungit</i>
<i>nt</i>		<i>nn</i>	<i>hinta</i>		<i>hinnat</i>
<i>mp</i>		<i>mm</i>	<i>vanhempi</i>		<i>vanhemman</i>
<i>k</i>		nothing	{ <i>poika</i> <i>nähdä</i> (stem <i>näke-</i> )		<i>pojat</i> <i>näen</i>
{ <i>V</i> <i>h</i> }	+ <i>t</i>	{ <i>V</i> <i>h</i> }	+ <i>d</i>	{ <i>pöytä</i> <i>pitää</i> <i>sanomalehti</i>	{ <i>pöydille</i> <i>pidän</i> <i>sanomalehdet</i>
				<i>valta</i>	<i>valloissa</i>
				<i>parta</i>	<i>partan</i>
{ <i>V</i> <i>l</i> <i>r</i> }	+ <i>p l</i>	{ <i>V</i> <i>r</i> }	<i>v</i>	<i>kylpy</i>	<i>kylvyt</i>
				.....	.....
				<i>t</i> <i>d</i>	.....

Exceptions:

1. *pitkä* long *ruokalista* menu  
*pitkät* long . . . s *ruokalistan* menu (object)

What happens in these examples might be thus summed up:

<i>p</i>		<i>p</i>
<i>t</i>	+	<i>t</i>
<i>k</i>		<i>k</i>
<i>s</i>		

is not replaced (that is, *pit-kä*, has a *t + k*, *ruokalis-ta* has an *s + t*; these consonants are not replaced, even when the next syllable ends in a consonant: *-kät*, *-tan*).

2. <i>poika</i>	boy	<i>valta</i>	power
<i>poikansa</i>	his boy	<i>valtanne</i>	your power
<i>kylpy</i>		bath	
<i>kylpymme</i>		our bath	

The formula CaV ~ CbVC is invalid when the syllable following Ca ends in a consonant because of the addition of any of the possessive suffixes (for which see unit 4, pages 72-3).

3. You may find a few other exceptions (for instance, some foreign words), but as a whole you'll find that the formula works throughout.

### Comment Five—Verb Stems (Type II Cont.)

#### (Formation of stems)

#### 1. Consonant stems.

Reread comment two in unit 9 (page 163).

Verbs like *haluta* 'to want', ending in *-ta* in the free form, and having a vowel just before the *-ta* (*-uta* in this case), have a consonant stem form in *-t-*: *halut-*, *tilat-* (from *tilata* 'to order'), *arvat-* (from *arvata* 'to guess'). All other verbs of type II ending in *-ta* have an *-s* just before the *-ta*, and have a consonant stem form in *-s-*.

Verbs like *mennä* 'to go', ending in *-na*, have stem forms in *-n-*: *men-*.

Verbs like *tulla* 'to come', ending in *-la*, have stem forms in *-l-*: *tul-*.

#### 2. Vowel stems.

The formation of vowel stems from free forms of verbs in type II is impossible to state fully at this stage. The only way for you to know them is to learn each separately. A few observations will help, however.

Verbs like *mennä* have vowel stems in *-ne-*: *mene-*.

Verbs like *tulla* have vowel stems in *-le-*: *tule-*.

Verbs in *-ta* usually drop the *-ta* and add an *-a-*: *haluta*, stem *halua-*; but many form their vowel stem in some other way.

### Comment Six—Summary

This is what you've learned about Finnish up to this point:

1. Every Finnish noun and verb has a *free form* ('nominative', 'infinitive') and a *stem form*.

2. Stem forms are of two types. Type I includes stems that always end in a vowel; type II has two varieties, one ending in a vowel, the other in a consonant. You must know the stem form of a word before you can add a suffix.

3. A stem may undergo various alterations when a given suffix is added. Such changes depending on the addition of an element to the stem were called *automatic changes*. They are of two kinds, depending whether they involve vowels or consonants. You learned some of each kind, especially with *-i-*, and involving the formula  $CaV \sim CbVC$ .

4. You have learned three new case suffixes, the *-(t)a* (partitive), the *-lla*, and the *-ksi*, so that you know eight altogether.

5. You can form the plural of both free forms (with *-t*) and case forms (with *-i-*).

6. You can give all persons of a verb in the present and the past (with *-(s)i*).

7. You know a good deal about various operations with numbers, can give the time and various dates.

## 2. Covering English and Finnish of Word Study

Give the English equivalents of all Finnish expressions in the *Word Study* and the Finnish for all the English. This is individual study.

## 3. Review of Basic Sentences

Further oral practice with the first part of the *Basic Sentences*.

# SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES (*Cont.*)

## 1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

Further oral practice with the second part of the *Basic Sentences*.

## 2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences

Check your knowledge of the meaning of all words and phrases in the *Basic Sentences*. This is individual study.

### 3. What Would You Say?

I. Examine the word *Yhdysvalloissa* 'in the United States' (literally, 'inside the United Powers'), and answer the following questions:

- how do you know, by inspection, that this word is a compound, and what are its component parts?
- taking the second component of the compound, how many suffixes are there after the stem, and what are they?
- what automatic consonant change must have taken place in the stem of the second component, and why?
- what automatic vowel change must have taken place in the stem of the second component and why?
- what is the free form of the second component?

II. Count by twos to twenty; by threes to thirty; by fours to forty, and so on. Count from a hundred back to zero.

### III. Give these expressions in Finnish.

- Tuesday, January 25th, 1887.
- Forty-second street.
- Once a day, every month this winter.
- The second drugstore straight ahead.
- For the first time next Wednesday.
- At 2:15 PM, Monday afternoon.
- At 9:12 AM, Friday morning.
- I want half the razor blades next week.
- The price is five times as much.
- It's all right once or twice, but not three times.

### IV. Give these dates in Finnish:

- your birthday.
- today, yesterday, and tomorrow.
- Independence day.
- Washington's birthday.

## SECTION D—LISTENING IN

### 1. What Did You Say?

With the other members of the group give orally your responses to the previous exercises as the Leader calls for them.

### 2. Word Study Check-Up

Give the Finnish for all English equivalents in the *Word Study* as the Leader calls for it.

### 3. Listening In

*I. Mr. Mikkola phones his home to say that he won't be in for dinner.*

*Herra Mikkola*

*Eeva, onko äitisi kotona?*

*Eeva*

*Ei, äiti on ostoksilla.*

*Herra Mikkola*

*Mihin aikaan hän tulee kotiin?*

*Eeva*

*En tiedä, ehkä noin neljän aikaan.  
Tuletko kotiin päivälliselle?*

*Herra Mikkola*

*En, syön päivällistä ulkona.*

*Eeva*

*Mitä, isä?*

*Herra Mikkola*

*Sanoin, että menen ulos päivälliselle.  
Toverini Bill Carter, New Yorkista, on täällä.  
Menen hänen kanssansa ulos.*

*Eeva*

*Hyvä on isä.  
Milloin tulet kotiin?*

*Herra Mikkola*

*Tulen kotiin yöjunalla.*

*Eeva*

*Näkemiin, isä.*



*II. Bill Carter commissions Harry Blake to do some shopping for them in Helsinki.*

*Bill Carter*  
*Oletteko koskaan olleet Helsingissä?*

*Harry Blake*  
*En, mutta menen käymään kaupungissa ensi viikolla.*  
*Entäs te?*

*Bill Carter*  
*Olen ollut siellä pari kertaa.*

*Harry Blake*  
*Onko Helsinki hauska kaupunki?*

*Bill Carter*  
*Oikein hauska.*

*Harry Blake*  
*Koska menen kaupunkiin ensi viikolla, voinko käydä ostoksilla puolestanne.*

*Bill Carter*  
*Minulla ei ole parranajokoneen teriä, ja niitä ei saa täältä.*

*Harry Blake*  
*Hyvä on.*  
*Kuinka paljon te haluatte?*

*Bill Carter*  
*Tusinan.*  
*Haluaisin myöskin sukkia ja pari paitaa.*  
*Voitteko ostaa ne myöskin minulle?*

*Harry Blake*  
*Mielelläni.*  
*Sanokaa vain kuinka monta paria sukkia tahdotte.*

*Bill Carter*  
*Kaikki sukkani ovat rikki.*  
*Ehkä on parasta että ostatte kuusi paria.*

*Harry Blake*  
*Hyvä.*  
*Tuon teille kaikki mitä tahdotte.*

*Bill Carter*  
*Kun kerran menette kaupunkiin, suosittelen että käytte samalla Kämp ravintolassa.*  
*Siellä teillä on varmaan paljon hauskaa.*  
*Ja sitten teidän on myöskin nähtävä Kansallismuseo ja Eduskuntatalo.*

*Harry Blake*  
*Kiitos neuvostanne.*  
*Menen käymään siellä.*

## SECTION E—CONVERSATION

### 1. Covering the Finnish of Basic Sentences

With the Finnish covered, practice until you can speak the Finnish for each English sentence without hesitation. This is individual study.

### 2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Give the Finnish for all English sentences in the *Basic Sentences* as the Leader calls for it.

### 3. Conversation

1. An American soldier inquires from a waiter and a barber where he can go shopping.

2. You discuss with a friend, a doctor, where to buy medicine for a cold. Describe the symptoms.

3. You go into a store to buy tobacco, a pipe, cigarettes and matches for a gift.

4. You go into a department store to buy yourself a couple of shirts, some socks, shorts, handkerchiefs.

5. You go around town with your girl. It's a fine Sunday morning. You go to church. Afterwards you buy her a box of candy, and some flowers. You go to a restaurant, order a Sunday dinner. After lunch you go to a movie, and in the evening you are invited to the girl's folks for supper. She introduces you to her family. You discuss with them occupations of all sorts. They are interested in your job—and the amount you earn. Before you leave you make a date with the girl for later in the week.

6. Your little son is home from school and throws at you arithmetical exercises. You try and solve them.

## SECTION F—CONVERSATION (*Cont.*)

Continue conversation. Additional check-up on the material of the *Basic Sentences* by the Leader if it seems necessary.

### Review

Complete check-up on the material of the *Word Study* and *Basic Sentences*.

# Finder List

<i>aamuna</i>	in the morning
<i>apteekki</i>	pharmacy
<i>elokuu</i>	August
<i>heinäkuu</i>	July
<i>helmikuu</i>	February
<i>heti</i>	at once <i>or</i> immediately
<i>hissi</i>	elevator
<i>huhtikuu</i>	April
<i>itse</i>	self
<i>joka</i>	every
<i>joulukuu</i>	December
<i>kadunkulma</i>	block <i>or</i> street-corner
<i>kaksinkertainen</i>	double
<i>kaksittain</i>	by twos
<i>karamelli</i>	candy
<i>kassa</i>	cashier
<i>kauppa</i>	shop <i>or</i> store
<i>keskikaupunki</i>	heart of the city
<i>keskiviikko</i>	Wednesday
<i>kesäkuu</i>	June
<i>kolmantena</i>	on the third

<i>kolminkertainen</i>	triple
<i>kukka</i>	flower
<i>kuudentena</i>	on the sixth
<i>kävellä</i>	to walk
<i>lahja</i>	present
<i>lauantai</i>	Saturday
<i>-lla</i>	on, by, at
<i>lokakuu</i>	October
<i>lääke</i>	medicine
<i>maaliskuu</i>	March
<i>maanantai</i>	Monday
<i>maanantaina</i>	on Monday
<i>makeiset</i>	sweets
<i>maksaa</i>	to pay
<i>marraskuu</i>	November
<i>minuutti</i>	minute
<i>myyjätär</i>	saleslady
<i>ne</i>	them <i>or</i> those
<i>nelinkertainen</i>	quadruple
<i>neljäntenä</i>	on the fourth
<i>nolla</i>	zero

<i>osa</i>	part
<i>ostos</i>	purchase
<i>pankkiin</i>	to the bank
<i>parranajokoneen</i>	razor's
<i>perjantai</i>	Friday
<i>piippu</i>	pipe
<i>päivänä tai p:nä</i>	on the day
<i>päänsärky</i>	headache
<i>raitiovaunu</i>	street-car
<i>rohdoskauppa</i>	drugstore
<i>saippua</i>	soap
<i>sillä</i>	because
<i>suklaa</i>	chocolate
<i>suljetaan</i>	will be closed
<i>sulkea</i>	to close

<i>sunnuntai</i>	Sunday
<i>sunnuntaina</i>	on Sunday
<i>syyskuu</i>	September
<i>tammikuu</i>	January
<i>tavaratalo</i>	department-store
<i>terä</i>	blade
<i>tiistai</i>	Tuesday
<i>Toivosen</i>	Toivonen's
<i>torstai</i>	Thursday
<i>toukokuu</i>	May
<i>tupakka</i>	tobacco
<i>vaille</i>	to <i>or</i> of
<i>vieras</i>	strange <i>or</i> guest
<i>viikonloppu</i>	week-end
<i>yskä</i>	cold <i>or</i> cough

## REVIEW

## SECTION A—WHAT DO YOU KNOW IN FINNISH?

This section, like the one in unit 6, consists of four parts. Part I is a true-and-false quiz (1-25). Part II is an exercise on numbers, time, and dates in the form of sentences to be completed (26-50); put down the one possible completion in each case, opposite the corresponding number. In part III, the Guide will make a statement (51-60), and each statement will be followed by three questions (a, b, c) to which the statement is the answer: write the right letter opposite the corresponding number of the statement. No. 51 is a practice item. You will hear, *'Huhhikuu'*, followed by (a) *'Mikä on neljäs kuukausi?'*, (b) *'Mikä on kuudes kuukausi?'*, (c) *'Mikä on yhdeksäs kuukausi?'*. Since the statement means 'April', you must put down "a" opposite no. 51,

since the first question calls for the 'fourth month', and the second and third call for the 'sixth month' and the 'eleventh month' respectively. Part IV is a brief story, followed by statements true or false in terms of the story (60-70).

After you finish the quiz, the Leader will read out the correct answers for each statement. Check your paper and give your score to the leader. He will figure out the average for your group. If your score is less than the average number of correct answers or less than 80% correct, you need more review of the previous units.

Spend the rest of the time going over the items on which you had difficulty.

## SECTION B—HOW WOULD YOU SAY IT?

(Individual Study)

Prepare to give orally the Finnish for each of the following sentences. Do not write anything down.

### I

1. I'm quite a stranger around here.
2. Where's a candy store?
3. The flowers are in the water.
4. Must I walk or can I go by elevator?
5. Can I buy tobacco in a pharmacy?
6. My brother has a headache: is the medicine in the bathroom?
7. I give her a present every Sunday.
8. The train leaves on Wednesday, eleven minutes past five.

### II

1. This is the most modern city in Finland.
2. The church is opposite the drugstore.
3. That big, white house is where he lives.
4. How much is the room rent over night?
5. I want to make a call: where's the telephone?

6. When does the telegraph office close?
7. What's the chief newspaper in town?
8. It's just behind the National Theatre.

### III

1. The farm is in the valley.
2. I ordered a small glass of wine.
3. Give the girl a tip.
4. I don't like salad.
5. What'll you have for dessert?
6. I want ice cream and coffee.
7. Is chicken cheaper than fish?
8. The menu is on the small table.

### IV

1. Guess what mother told me!
2. Certainly he's good.
3. My trousers are ripped; they are at the tailor.
4. I slept very well, thank you.
5. You can't eat and shave at the same time.

6. I noticed that your hair is too long.
7. I'm expecting the laundry at seven o'clock.
8. Three dozen or eighteen pairs.

## V

1. Every farm has a steambath.
2. I'm an American lieutenant.

3. He intends to visit us.
4. The room on the third floor is larger, but it isn't free.
5. She'll prepare dinner by six thirty.
6. That doesn't include vegetables.
7. We'll stay here for perhaps a year.
8. This is the end.

## SECTION C—HOW DID YOU SAY IT?

Quiz by the Leader on the sentences in Section B, asking various members of the group: "*Kuinka te sanotte suomeksi . . . ?*"

## SECTION D—HOW WOULD YOU SAY IT? (Cont.)

(Individual Study)

Do the following exercises. Read all sentences aloud with correct solutions. Have everything well fixed in your mind, and ready to speak in the next group meeting.

## I

In each of the following series one word is obviously out of place. Underline it, and put down the meaning. Be sure that you know what each of the other words means in every series.

1. *Perjantai, tai, keskiviikko, lauantai.*
2. *Makeinen, suklaa, tupakka, karamelli.*
3. *Maatila, maanviljelijä, maa, maaliskuu.*
4. *Kuusi, viis, kaks, yks.*
5. *Paras, sadas, toinen, ensimmäinen.*
6. *Rohdoskauppa, tavaratalo, apteekki, hissi.*
7. *Museo, taide, asema, kirkko.*
8. *Sisällä, takana, vastapäätä, puoli.*

9. *Tukka, kenkä, takki, housut.*
10. *Kala, tilata, kana, liha.*

## II

Take each Finnish word underlined in the previous exercise. Make up complete and meaningful sentences, each including one of the words. You may add suffixes freely if your sentence requires it. Read all sentences aloud; the Guide or other members of the class will criticise.

11. ....
12. ....
13. ....
14. ....
15. ....
16. ....
17. ....
18. ....
19. ....
19. ....
20. ....

## III

Each of the following sentences describes an action happening right now. Imagine that each happened at

some time in the past. Change the sentences to fit this new situation.

21. *Lapset alkavat koulunsa syksyllä.*
22. *Hän on pankissa johtajan kanssa.*
23. *Etsittekö te huonetta kaupungista?*
24. *He aikovat muuttaa tänään.*
25. *Nukun aina hyvin huoneessani, sillä se on rauhallinen.*
26. *Te puhutte hyvin suomea myöskin.*
27. *Hän sulkee liikkeensä aina kello juusi.*
28. *Ääntääkö hän englantia paremmin?*
29. *Sinä tiedät, että hän on luutnantti.*
30. *Saavatko he aamiaisen samaan.*

## IV

Each of the following sentences tells about something or other happening to a person other than yourself. Imagine that all these things are happening to yourself. How would you change the sentences to describe this?

31. *Hän ajaa partansa joka aamu.*
32. *He lähtevät lauantai aamuna kello kuusi.*



33. *Te näette, että hän tulee kadulla.*
34. *Mitä sinä ostat äidillesi lahjaksi.*
35. *Sotilaat pitävät hyvin paljon elokuvista.*
36. *Sisareni saapuu kaupunkiin kolmeksi päiväksi.*
37. *Hän tekee sen mielellään.*
38. *Me haluamme kahvia lounaaksi.*
39. *Tuomme pyykkimme alas huoneestamme.*
40. *Hän lähettää vaimonsa maalle.*

## V

Translate the English words in parentheses and fit them into their respective sentences.

41. (On the large table) *on paljon ruokaa.*
42. (For three marks) *saa kupin kahvia.*
43. *Hän menee* (by train) *kaupunkiin.*
44. *Onko* (he) *piippu?*
45. *Minä olen* (good mood).

## SECTION E—HOW DID YOU SAY IT?

Quiz by the Leader on the work you did in Section D. Keep your book closed. If you have a Guide, he will check on your pronunciation and the correctness of

your Finnish; if not, other members of your group will criticize.

## SECTION F—CONVERSATION REVIEW

Hold a series of conversations from one to two minutes each, on as many of the topics which have been developed in Units 1-12 as you can, combining and varying them as you wish. All members of the group should have a chance to take part. A few suggested topics:

1. Husband and wife look for an apartment.

(Include: questions about prices, number of rooms, on which floor, what's the landlady like, is food included, how's the bathroom, is there always hot water, how is it located with respect to husband's place of work.)

2. An American dentist goes to see the sights of Helsinki.

(Include: call on friend, a pharmacist, who offers to take him around; discussion of weather; walk around town, passing by various churches, theatres, museums, hotels, the station; comments on each; destination is a famous restaurant, where they order a complete meal.)

3. Two soldiers go shopping.

(Include: argument about time to get started; one has a headache and goes to pharmacy first; meanwhile other goes to bank across the street; then together to department store; buy gifts for girls, their families at home, for themselves; leave store just when it closes.)

4. Tell a joke in Finnish.

5. Laying in supplies.

(Include: going into a store, buying shirts, socks, shorts, handkerchiefs, clothes—pants and coat, pair of shoes.)

6. Trying to find a relative.

(Include: arriving in a Finnish town, asking for directions to a certain street, getting the address, finding a phone and calling; while waiting at the station, reading a newspaper.)

7. Arithmetic.

(Include: son coming home from school and getting dinner; after dinner asks help of daddy in preparing home work; dad trying to take nap, but consents to help in arithmetic; boy gives problems in addition, multiplication, and dad gives answers.)

8. Going on a date.

(Include: calling on girl, meeting family; going to eat and ordering complete meals with drinks; talk over the dinner table about past occupation (now a soldier), love of farm life; making plans for next week in detail for each day; going to a movie finally.)





## *Book Two*



# CONTENTS

## PART THREE

Unit	Page	Unit	Page
13. <b>TRAVELLING.</b> How to pronounce <i>ensimäinen</i> . The suffixes <i>-na</i> ; <i>-isi-</i> ; <i>-han</i>	217	16. <b>PAYING A VISIT.</b> How to pronounce <i>attashea</i> and <i>radio</i> . The suffixes <i>-nut</i> ; <i>-pa</i> ; <i>-kin</i> ; <i>-(ka)an</i> ; <i>-sti(')</i> .	260
14. <b>KEEPING WARM.</b> The negative verb. The suffix <i>-n</i> (genitive). How to say 'I, you, he, she, they. <i>Itse</i> 'self'.	231	17. <b>VISITING A FARM.</b> How to pronounce <i>bensiini</i> . Giving orders: the <i>-kaa</i> suffix. The suffixes <i>-(t)ta(')</i> , <i>-(h)xn</i> . Summary of comments in Units 1-17.	278
15. <b>SPORTS AND ENTERTAINMENT.</b> The suffixes <i>-tar</i> ; <i>-n</i> 'with, by'; <i>-hxn</i> , <i>-seen</i> .	245	18. <b>REVIEW.</b>	293

## PART FOUR

Unit	Page	Unit	Page
19. <b>POSTI.</b> The suffix <i>-ta(')</i> or how to build free forms from stems. The suffix <i>-ma</i> .	300	22. <b>KONTTORISSA.</b> Spelling of <i>ä</i> and <i>ö</i> . The suffix <i>-va</i> . Ways of expressing future time.	345
20. <b>PANKISSA.</b> How to pronounce <i>sekki</i> . Pronouns.	315	23. <b>ULKOILU.</b> The suffix <i>-tta</i> . Relationship terms. Summary of comments in Units 1-23.	359
21. <b>SAIRAALASSA.</b> Negative orders. Negative expressions.	330	24. <b>REVIEW.</b>	372

## PART FIVE

Unit	Page	Unit	Page
25. SUOMEN HALLITUS. The suffix <i>-(t)e-</i> .	377	29. KIRJALLISUUS JA TAIDE. Kinship terms. Summary of comments.	428
26. SUOMEN TEOLLISUUS. The suffixes <i>-ne</i> ; <i>-u</i> ; <i>-inen</i> . Place names.	390	30. REVIEW.	442
27. KASVATUSJÄRJESTELMÄ. The suffixes <i>-tta-</i> ; <i>-u-</i> . Variations on a stem.	403	VOCABULARIES	
28. ARMEIJASSA. The suffixes <i>-la</i> ; <i>-ue(')</i> ; <i>-kas</i> ; <i>-llinen</i> ; <i>-ton</i> ; <i>-mus</i> ; <i>-e(')</i> ; <i>-mo</i> ; <i>-in</i> .	415	A. FINNISH-ENGLISH	448
		B. ENGLISH-FINNISH	468



## TRAVELLING

## SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

*I. Joe Miller is at the information bureau of the station in Helsinki.*

## ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS

## FINNISH

*Joe Miller*

vacation

I'm going on my summer vacation today.

place

I would go

Can you suggest some nice place for me to go?

*loma*

*Lähden kesälomalle tänään.*

*paikka*

*menisin*

*Voitteko suositella kaunista paikkaa mihin menisin?*

*Neiti*

long

How long does your vacation last?

*pitkä*

*Kuinka pitkä loma teillä on?*

*Joe Miller*

Two weeks,

*Kaksi viikkoa.*

to suggest  
ring  
I suggest a tour: Helsinki-Jyväskylä-Kuopio-Oulu-  
Tampere-Helsinki.

*Neiti*

*ehdottaa  
rengas  
Ehdotan rengasmatkaa, Helsinki-Jyväskylä-Kuopio-  
Oulu-Tampere-Helsinki.*

Thank you.  
you could not  
Couldn't you come with me, miss?

*Joe Miller*

*Kiitos.  
te ette voisi  
Ettekö te voisi tulla kanssani, neiti?*

ticket  
booth *or* store  
The ticket office is to the right.  
impertinent  
You are very impertinent, sir!

*Neiti*

*lippu  
myymälä  
Lippumyymälä on oikealle.  
nenäkäs  
Te olette liian nenäkäs, herra!*

Thank you, miss!  
typical  
girl  
Are you a typical Finnish girl?

*Joe Miller*

*Kiitos paljon, neiti!  
tyypillinen  
tyttö  
Oletteko te tyypillinen suomalainen tyttö?*

I said, the ticket office is to the right.

*Neiti*

*Sainoin, että lippumyymälä on oikealle.*

But . . .

*Joe Miller*

*Mutta . . .*

*II. Joe, disappointed, but not too much, is now at the ticket office.*

*Joe Miller*

Jyväskylä's  
via  
to Oulu  
back

I want a round-trip tour ticket from Helsinki via  
Jyväskylä to Oulu.

*Ticket-seller*  
class  
What class?

Jyväskylän  
kautta  
Ouluun  
takaisin

*Haluan rengaslipun Helsingistä Jyväskylän kautta  
Ouluun ja takaisin.*

*Lipunmyyjä*  
luokka  
Missä luokassa?

*Joe Miller*

Second class, please.  
The first class is too expensive.  
How much is the ticket?  
And when does the train leave?

*Toisessa luokassa, olkaa hyvä.*  
*Ensimmäinen luokka on liian kallis.*  
*Kuinka paljon lippu maksaa?*  
*Ja koska juna lähtee?*

*Lipunmyyjä*

Three hundred marks.  
Your train leaves at 8 P.M.

*Kolmesataa markkaa.*  
*Junanne lähtee kello kaksikymmentä.*

Thank you.

porter  
Porter!

to help  
Can I help you?

belongings *or* goods  
check-room  
My luggage is in the check-room.

valise *or* bag  
I have two suit-cases.

I still have an hour's time.

I go to buy  
magazine  
I'll go buy some magazines and a newspaper,

to drink  
and I'll also drink a cup of coffee.

number  
What's your number?

220 [13-A]

*Joe Miller*

*Kiitos.*

*kantaja*  
*Kantaja!*

*Porter*

*auttaa*  
*Kuinka voin auttaa teitä?*

*Joe Miller*

*tavara*  
*säilytyshuone*  
*Matkatavarani ovat säilytyshuoneessa.*

*laukku*  
*Minulla on kaksi matkalaukkua.*

*Minulla on vielä tunti aikaa.*

*käyn ostamassa*  
*kuvalehti*  
*Käyn ostamassa kuvalehtiä ja sanomalehden,*

*juoda*  
*sekä juon samalla kupin kahvia asemaravintolassa.*

*numero*  
*Mikä on teidän numeronne?*

Twenty-three.

to reserve  
car

I'll reserve you a seat in the smoker.

*Porter*

*Kaksikymmentäkolme.*

*varata  
vaunu*

*Varaan teille paikan tupakkavaunussa.*

*III. Joe has indeed been fixed up with a nice seat on the train. He is sitting opposite a very pretty Finnish girl.*

*Joe Miller*

Thank you very much.

Here's a tip!

*Kiitoksia oikein paljon.*

*Tässä on juomarahaa!*

*Porter*

Thank you, sir!

*Kiitos, herra!*

*Joe Miller*

way or going  
Are you on a trip?

*meno*

*Oletteko menossa matkalle?*

*Girl*

stupid  
question  
What a stupid question!

*tyhmä*

*kysymys*

*Mikä tyhmä kysymys!*

you can see, can't you?  
to sit

*näettehän*

*istua*

You can see I'm sitting on a train, can't you!

*Näettehän että istun junassa!*

My name's Joe Miller.

I'm an American soldier.

boat *or* steamer

to Jyväskylä

I'm going to travel by boat to Jyväskylä and from  
there by train to Oulu.

Really!

Mine is Katri Penttilä.

certainly

We must be on the same tour.

fiancee

I'm going to see my fiancée.

Really!

Yes!

*Joe Miller*

*Nimeni on Joe Miller.*

*Olen amerikkalainen sotilas.*

*laiva*

*Jyväskylään*

*Olen menossa laivalla Jyväskylään ja sieltä junalla  
Ouluun.*

*Girl*

*Niinkö!*

*Minun on Katri Penttilä.*

*varmaankin*

*Varmaankin menemme samalle rengasmatkalle.*

*sulhanen*

*Menen katsomaan sulhastani.*

*Joe Miller*

*Niinkö!*

*Katri*

*Kyllä!*

*IV. Joe Miller is now on the boat with Katri Penttilä.*

*Joe Miller*

*ihana*

*Eikö meillä ollut ihana viikko Kuopiossa?*

wonderful

Didn't we have a wonderful week in Kuopio?

sweetheart *or* gold  
Yes, sweetheart!  
to be surprised  
Won't your family be surprised?

*Katri*

*kulta*  
*Oli kultani!*  
*hämmästyä*  
*Perheesi varmaan hämmästy.*

surely  
Yes, sure!  
to return  
I went on a pleasant vacation and I'm returning with  
a beautiful wife.

*Joe Miller*

*varmasti*  
*Kyllä varmasti.*  
*palata*  
*Lähdin hauskalle lomalle ja palaan kauniin vaimon*  
*kanssa.*

## CHECK YOUR PRONUNCIATION

*How to pronounce 'ensimäinen':* This word may be pronounced either with a single *m* or with a double *mm* (often so spelled: *ensimmäinen*).

### *Practice 52*

*ensimäinen*  
*ensimmäinen*

first

## SECTION B—WORD STUDY AND REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

### 1. Word Study

#### *Comment One—The Suffix -na*

<i>kaukana</i>	far	<i>ulkona</i>	outside
<i>takana</i>	behind	<i>kotona</i>	at home

These expressions, indicating 'place where', have the element *-na* in common. This *-na* is a case suffix.

<i>hän on luutnanttina armei- jassa</i>	he's in the Army as a lieutenant
<i>hän on tarjoilijana ravin- tolassa</i>	he's in the restaurant as a waiter

The suffix *-na* often denotes the state in which the actor ('lieutenant', 'waiter') of a sentence is, and is best translated by 'as'. Note the expression: *liikemiehenä olen* 'I'm acting in the capacity of (as) a businessman'.

<i>tänä päivänä</i>	today	<i>maanantaina</i>	on Monday
<i>tänä iltana</i>	tonight	<i>sunnuntaina</i>	on Sunday
<i>huomenna</i>			tomorrow

These expressions, indicating 'period of time during which something happens', illustrate still another important use of *-na*.

*vapaa* free

*vappaana* as a free . . .

*vapaina* as free . . .s

*kallis* expensive

*kalliina* as an expensive . . .

*kalleina* as expensive . . .s

Note that this suffix is added in the singular to the vowel stem variety of nouns of type II (*kallis*, vowel stem *kalli-*), and in the plural to the stem followed by *-i-* (*vapa-i-na*, *kalle-i-na*, with appropriate automatic vowel changes here).

#### *Comment Two—The Suffix -isi-*

*haluan*

I want

*haluaisin*

I'd like

The second word contains, between the vowel stem *halua-* (of the verb *haluta* 'to want') and the first person suffix *-n* the suffix *-isi-*. This verb suffix means roughly 'would', 'should', or simply 'd' (as in 'she'd do it').

*antaa* to give

*antaisimme*

we'd give

*sulkea* to shut

*sulkisimme*

we'd shut

*olla* to be

*olisimme*

we'd be



The *-isi-* suffix is added to the vowel stem variety of verbs of type II. When a stem ends in *-e* (as in *sulke-*, *ole-*) this disappears before the *-isi-* (as also a preceding *-i*; double vowels become single).

<i>lähteä</i>	to start	<i>lähtisi</i>	he'd start
<i>mennä</i>	to go	<i>menisi</i>	he'd go
<i>auttaa</i>	to help	<i>auttaisi</i>	he'd help

In the third person singular no personal suffix follows the *-isi-*; in all other persons you must add the personal verb suffixes (unit 7, pages 122-3).

<i>ottaa</i>	to take	<i>ottaisin</i>	I'd take
<i>pitää</i>	to keep	<i>pitäisin</i>	I'd keep

Note that the final *-a-*, *-ä-* of the stems *otta-*, *pitä-* remain before *-isi-*. If, however, the *-a-*, *-ä-* of a stem is preceded by another vowel, (especially *-e-*, *-o-*, *-ö-*), the *-a-*, *-ä-* might drop out, and the vowels will fuse with the following *-i(-si-)* into *-eisi-*, *-oisi-*, *-öisi-*.

<i>käydä</i>	to go	<i>kävisin</i>	I'd go
--------------	-------	----------------	--------

Note the irregular stem formation in this word.

Comment Three—The Suffix *-han*  
*näettehän*                      you see, don't you

The suffix *-han* is used for emphasis and affirmation: *näe-* 'see' (stem), *näette* 'you see', *näettehän* 'you see, don't you'. Note these examples: *minullahan on viisi paria sukkia* 'I've five pairs of socks, don't I?', *hänhän on* 'he is, isn't he?', *pojathan ovat kotona* 'the boys are at home, aren't they?'.

## 2. Covering English and Finnish of Word Study

Give the English equivalents of all Finnish expressions in the *Word Study* and the Finnish for all the English. This is individual study.

## 3. Review of Basic Sentences

Further oral practice with the first part of the *Basic Sentences*.

## SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES (*Cont.*)

### 1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

Further oral practice with the second part of the *Basic Sentences*.

### 2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences

Check your knowledge of the meaning of all words and phrases in the *Basic Sentences*. This is individual study.

### 3. What Would You Say?

I. Change the following sentences by adding the suffix *-isi* to the verbs wherever possible; that is, for 'he does,' and so forth, substitute 'he'd do,' and so forth.

1. *Kaikki lapset menevät pohjoiseen ja aikovat olla siellä kesän.*
2. *Ostan kukkia äidilleni ja lähetän ne hänelle tänään.*
3. *Anteeksi, mutta saanko kysyä, jos herra Vainio asuu täällä.*
4. *Kantaja ottaa minun matkalaukkuni säilytyshuoneesta ja annan hänelle juomarahaa.*
5. *Soitan asemalle ja kysyn: "Mihin aikaan juna lähtee Ouluun?"*
6. *Paljon sotilaita syö ravintolassa ja heillä on hauskaa.*

7. *Hän menee katsomaan, jos hän saa kupin kahvia.*
8. *Voitteko suositella hyvää hotellia, sillä menen kaupunkiin.*
9. *Varaan itselleni paikan yöjunassa.*
10. *Tuotteko minun pyykkini tänään, se on huoneessani.*
11. *Haluan ostaa pari lahjaa, sillä menen maalle huomenna.*
12. *Lähden lomalle tänään.*
13. *Kyllä hän tulee, jos hänellä on aikaa.*
14. *Isäni haluaa juoda lasin konjakkia.*
15. *Saavun Ouluun maanantai aamuna.*

II. Translate the English expressions in parentheses and fit them into their respective sentences; speak each complete sentence aloud.

1. *Hän saapuu lomalle* (March fourth).
2. *Veljeni on* (manager of a bank) *Oulussa.*
3. *Isäntä asuu talossansa* (a healthy man).
4. *Aijon käydä Suomessa* (this year).
5. (For a beautiful house) *se ei ole kallis.*
6. *Olen ollut* (a clerk) *kuusi vuotta.*
7. *Haluan olla* (a shoemaker and a barber) *yhtaikaa.*
8. *Hän oli talossa* (a guest) *liian kauan.*
9. (A typical Finnish girl) *hän on kaunis.*
10. (A museum) *se on uudenaikainen.*

## SECTION D—LISTENING IN

### 1. What Did You Say?

With the other members of the group give orally your responses to the previous exercise as the Leader calls for them.

### 2. Word Study Check-Up

Give the Finnish for all English equivalents in the *Word Study* as the Leader calls for it.

### 3. Listening In

*I. Joe and Katri, now married, arrive at the Penttilä home.*

*Katri*

*Äiti, isä, oletteko te kotona?*

*Äiti*

*Mitä nyt, mitä nyt?*

*Kotonahan minä olen.*

*Isäsi tulee pian, hän on vain ulkona.*

*Missä on Eero?*

*Ja onko tämä sotilas amerikkalainen?*

*Katri*

*Arvatkaahan!*

*Hän on amerikkalainen*

*ja myöskin minun mieheni.*

*Äiti*

*Aivan varmastiko?*

*Mutta sinähän lähdit Jyväskylään katsomaan sulhastasi.*

*Odotimme että tulisit Eeron kanssa.*

*Katri*

*Mutta äiti, minä pidän Joesta enempi kuin Eerosta.*

*Minun nimeni on nyt Katri Miller.*

*Ja Joe on oikein hyvä mies.*

*Äiti*

*Tervetuloa, Joe.*

*Haluan että pidät kodistamme.*

*Kyllä mieheni nyt varmaan hämmästyy.*

*Joe*

*Kiitoksia, rouva Penttilä.*

*Teillä on hyvä ja kaunis tytär.*

*Pidän hänestä enempi kuin voin sanoa.*

*Äiti*

*Minä olen nyt sinun äitisi.  
Ja meidän kotimme on myöskin sinun kotisi.  
Katri ja sinä saatte asua toisessa kerroksessa.*

*Joe*

*Kiitoksia oikein paljon—äiti.  
Teillä on niin kaunis koti.  
Sanoin jo Kattrille, että haluaisin nähdä sen.*

*(Mr. Penttilä arrives and hears the big news)*

*Isä*

*Joko nyt olet kotona, tyttöni?  
Hauska nähdä sinut terveenä.  
Onko tämä sotilas uusi sulhasesi?*

*Katri*

*Ei isä, tämä on minun—arvatkaa—uusi mieheni.  
Mitä pidät hänestä?*

*Isä*

*Siinähan se menee.  
Nyt lasi vanhaa, hyvää viiniä kaikille.  
Haluan, että olette Suomessa kauan ja asutte meidän  
kanssamme.*

*II. Nuori vaimo ostoksilla.*

*Mies*

*Kulta, liikkeenä lähettää minut pariaksi viikoksi Helsinkiin.*

*Vaimo*

*Minä tulen kanssasi.*

*Mies*

*Ei tällä kertaa.*

*Vaimo*

*Kyllä minä tulen, sillä haluan käydä ostoksilla.*

*Mies*

*Mutta kulta, minä voin palata parissa päivässä ja toiseksi, sinähän voit ostaa kaikki mitä haluat tästä kaupungista.*

*Vaimo*

*Kiitoksia oikein paljon!  
Sitä minä juuri haluan.*

## SECTION E—CONVERSATION

### 1. Covering the Finnish of Basic Sentences

With the Finnish covered practice until you can speak the Finnish for each English sentence without hesitation. This is individual study.

### 2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Give the Finnish for all English sentences in the *Basic Sentences* as the Leader calls for it.

### 3. Conversation

1. At a railroad station, you ask where the tickets are sold; the price of the various classes, whether the

- train carries dining car, the time of departure, etc.
2. You meet a friend at a station, you tell him where you are going, the interesting points of your sight-seeing trip. He tells you he is going to see his relatives in the country.
3. You discuss with a friend the things you saw and the people you met on recent trips.
4. On the train you meet a gentleman, and join him in going to the dining room, where you order a meal.
5. When you arrive at your destination, you call a porter because you have lots of baggage. He takes you to a car, and you inquire about the hotels, and your driver takes you there. You book a room, and inquire about various facilities in the hotel.

## SECTION F—CONVERSATION (*Cont.*)

Continue conversation. Additional check-up if necessary.

### *Review*

Complete Check-up.

*-han*

*hämmästyä*

emphatic suffix

to be surprised

### **Finder List**

*auttaa*

to help

*ehdottaa*

to suggest

*ihana*

*-isi*

*istua*

wonderful

conditional suffix

to sit

<i>juoda</i>	to drink
<i>Jyväskylän</i>	of Jyväskylä
<i>Jyväskylään</i>	to Jyväskylä
<i>kantaja</i>	porter
<i>kautta</i>	via
<i>kulta</i>	sweetheart <i>or</i> gold
<i>kuvalehti</i>	magazine
<i>kysymys</i>	question
<i>käyn ostamassa</i>	I go to buy
<i>laiva</i>	boat <i>or</i> steamer
<i>laukku</i>	valise <i>or</i> bag
<i>lippu</i>	ticket
<i>lipunmyyjä</i>	ticket-seller
<i>loma</i>	vacation
<i>luokka</i>	class
<i>meno</i>	way <i>or</i> going
<i>myymälä</i>	booth <i>or</i> store
<i>-na</i>	as, etc.
<i>nenäkäs</i>	impertinent
<i>numero</i>	number

<i>Ouluun</i>	to Oulu
<i>paikka</i>	place
<i>palata</i>	to return
<i>pitkä</i>	long
<i>rengas</i>	ring
<i>sulhanen</i>	fiancee
<i>säilytys huone</i>	check-room
<i>takaisin</i>	back
<i>avara</i>	belongings <i>or</i> goods
<i>je ette voisi</i>	you could not
<i>ttyhmä</i>	stupid
<i>tyttö</i>	girl
<i>tyypillinen</i>	typical
<i>varata</i>	to reserve
<i>varmaankin</i>	certainly
<i>varmasti</i>	surely
<i>vaunu</i>	car

## KEEPING WARM

## SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

*Larry Baker visits the family of Mr. Vuoristo, a hotel owner in Rovaniemi, a small town in northern Finland. He enters just before dinner.*

## ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS

## FINNISH

It's plenty cold today!

hard or severe

cold or frost

It certainly is a severe cold.

*Larry Baker*

*Miten kylmä siellä on tänään.*

*kova*

*pakkanen*

*On varmaan kova pakkane.*

*Rouva Vuoristo*

*aste*

degree or grade  
About an hour ago it was twenty-one degrees.

*Noin tunti sitten oli kaksikymmentäyksi astetta.*

*olet tehnyt*

you have done  
What did you do today?

*Mitä sinä olet tehnyt tänä päivänä?*

*Larry Baker*

*hiihtämässä*

skiing  
I went skiing.

*Olin hiihtämässä.*

skiing (conditions)  
Was it good skiing?

snow  
The snow was too hard.  
to break  
ski  
I broke my good skis.

you didn't hurt  
You didn't hurt yourself?

No, but I'm very cold.  
north  
How do you keep yourselves warm here in the north?

I'll tell you how I keep myself warm.

cognac or brandy  
A couple of glasses of cognac help a good deal.  
Would you like to have a small one?

*Kaisu Vuoristo*

*hiihtokeli*  
*Oliko siellä hyvä hiihtokeli?*

*Larry Baker*

*lumi*  
*Lumi oli liian kovaa.*  
*katkaista*  
*suksi*  
*Katkaisin hyvät sukseni.*

*Kaisu Vuoristo*

*et loukannut*  
*Etkö loukannut itseäsi?*

*Larry Baker*

*En, mutta minulla on hyvin kylmä.*  
*pohjoinen*  
*Kuinka te pidätte itsenne lämpiminä täällä pohjoisessa?*

*Herra Vuoristo*

*Minä sanon sinulle kuinka minä pidän itseni lämpimänä.*  
*konjakki*  
*Pari lasia konjakkia auttaa paljon.*  
*Haluaisitko ottaa yhden pienen?*



What do you have?

liquor  
whiskey  
rum

I've brandy, table liquor, whiskey and rum.

*Larry Baker*

*Mitä teillä on?*

*Herra Vuoristo*

*viina  
wiski  
rommi*

*Minulla on konjakkia, pöytäviinaa, wiskiä ja rommia.*

*Larry Baker*

Thank you, perhaps I'll drink a glass of brandy.

*Kiitos, ehkä juon lasin konjakkia.*

*Herra Vuoristo*

*Minä myöskin otan lasin sitä.*

I'll also have a glass.

*Rouva Vuoristo*

again  
Again?

*taas  
Taasko?*

you haven't drunk  
enough *or* need

Haven't you drunk enough today?

*et ole juonut  
tarve*

*Etkö ole jo juonut tarpeeksi tänä päivänä?*

I must keep myself warm, mustn't I?

*Herra Vuoristo*

*Minunhan täytyy pitää itseni lämpimänä?*

*Rouva Vuoristo*

way *or* habit  
Not that way!

*tapaa  
Ei sillä tavalla.*

put on  
woollen  
If you are cold put on woollen underwear.

*pane päälle  
villainen  
Jos sinulla on kylmä, pane päällesi villaiset alushousut.*

take  
away *or* off  
foot  
Larry, take your ski shoes off your feet.

*Kaisu Vuoristo*  
*ota  
pois  
jalka  
Larry, otahan pois hiihtokengät jaloistasi.*

O.K., I will.

to put  
boot  
But I'll put boots on, because I'm going out after  
dinner.

*Larry Baker*  
*Otan kyllä.  
panna  
saapas  
Mutta panen saappaat jalkaani, sillä menen ulos  
päivällisen jälkeen.*

Don't just sit there!

put  
wood  
fire-place  
Put some more wood in the fireplace.

*Rouva Vuoristo*  
*Siinä te vain istutte.  
pankaa  
puu  
pesä  
Pankaa lisää puita pesään.*

All right, all right.

*Herra Vuoristo*  
*Hyvä on, hyvä on.*

give  
peace  
Leave me alone!

I'll help you.

owner  
My father was a hotel owner in America.  
central heat  
But we of course had central heating.

Larry, where are you going tonight?  
to hope *or* wish  
I hope that you'll stay in; you might catch cold.

I'm going out for a little while.  
to keep warm *or* to heat  
You can keep me warm when I come back.

to mean  
What do you mean?

You know what I mean.

*anna*  
*rauha*  
*Anna minun nyt jo olla rauhassa.*

*Larry Baker*  
*Minä autan teitä.*

*omistaja*  
*Minun isäni oli hotellinomistaja Amerikassa.*  
*keskuslämmitys*  
*Mutta meillä tietysti oli keskuslämmitys.*

*Kaisu Vuoristo*  
*Larry, mihin sinä menet tänä iltana?*  
*toivoa*  
*Toivon, että olet sisällä, saat vielä yskää.*

*Larry Baker*  
*Menen ulos vain pieneksi ajaksi.*  
*lämmittää*  
*Sinä voit lämmittää minua kun tulen takaisin.*

*Kaisu Vuoristo*  
*tarkoittaa*  
*Mitä sinä tarkoitat?*

*Larry Baker*  
*Sinä tiedät mitä tarkoitan.*

*Kaisu Vuoristo*

I know.

*Kyllä tiedän.*

south

*etelä*

If you speak like that you may as well leave for the south.

*Voit mennä etelään jos puhut tuolla tavalla.*

to pack

*pakata*

And you can start packing right away.

*Ja saat alkaa pakata heti paikalla.*

*Larry Baker*

before than

*ennenkuin*

spring

*kevät*

Not before spring.

*Ei ennenkuin keväällä.*

bride

*morsian*

And perhaps you'll go with me then as my bride.

*Ja ehkä silloin sinä tulet kanssani morsiamenani.*

## SECTION B—WORD STUDY AND REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

### 1. Word Study

*Comment One—The Negative Verb*

(Present Tense)

*en* not I

*emme* not we

*et* not you (familiar)

*ette* not you (formal)

*ei* not he, she, it

*eivät* not they

236 [14-B]

To express negation of an action, certain forms of the verb (which describes the action) are combined with certain forms of the negative verb, the present forms of which appear above for each person in the singular and the plural. Thus, if the action is 'to give' *antaa* (stem *anta-*), the negative forms in the present will be:

<i>en anna</i> (')	I don't give
<i>et anna</i> (')	you don't give
<i>ei anna</i> (')	he (etc.) doesn't give
<i>emme anna</i> (')	we don't give
<i>ette anna</i> (')	you don't give
<i>eivät anna</i> (')	they don't give

Note that in the present negative the verb appears in its vowel stem form (*anta-*) followed by the consonant', as a result of which *Ca* ~ *Cb* (here, *nt* replaced by *nn*).

*Comment Two—The Suffix -n*

<i>sen</i>	it's	<i>pankin</i>	bank's
<i>tunnin</i>	hour's	<i>aseman</i>	station's
	<i>minun</i>		my

In unit 5, page 93, you'll find a discussion of *-n*, the suffix of the object relation. The suffix *-n* to be taken up now, and illustrated by the above examples, is an entirely different suffix. Although identical in form, it differs both in distribution and usage. By 'distribution' we mean here that the suffix of the object relation disappears in the plural; but the *-n* here discussed, as you'll see, occurs in the plural as well. By

'usage' we mean here that the *-n* here discussed doesn't mean 'object relation' at all; the above examples illustrate its true meaning: 'of' or '...s' (genitive).

The suffix *-n*, in the singular, is added to the vowel stem of nouns.

<i>minä haluan savukkeen</i>	I want a cigarette
<i>minä en halua savuketta</i>	I don't want a cigarette

Study carefully these sentences. In the first sentence, the object (*savukkeen*) of the action (*haluan*) bears the suffix *-n* (for a discussion of the object relation and this suffix, see unit 5, page 93). In the second sentence, the object (*savuketta*) of the negative action (*en halua*) bears the suffix *-(t)a* (see unit 9, pages 161-3). In Finnish, the object of a negative action will always have the partitive suffix, no matter what the object of the positive action has as its suffix.

<i>vuosien</i>	of years (partitive plural <i>vuosia</i> )
<i>lasien</i>	of glasses (partitive plural <i>lasia</i> )
<i>maiden</i>	of lands (partitive plural <i>maita</i> )
<i>vapaiden</i>	of the free . . .s (partitive plural <i>vapaita</i> )

Formation of the genitive plural seems difficult, but is really quite simple, provided you follow this rule:

first build the partitive plural of the noun in question;<sup>1</sup> if the partitive plural ends in *-i-a*, the genitive plural will end in *-i-en*; if the partitive plural ends in *-i-ta*, the genitive plural will end in *-i-den* (or *-i-tten*, which may be freely substituted).

*lasten* of children (partitive singular *lasta*)

The *-ta* of *lasta* (*lapsi* 'child', stem *las-*) is replaced by *-ten*; sometimes therefore, the genitive plural is built on the partitive singular. In general, however, you will be safe if you follow the first rule.

*Comment Three—How to Say 'I, You, He, She, They'*

<i>minä</i>	I	<i>me</i>	we
<i>sinä</i>	you	<i>te</i>	you
<i>hän</i>	he, she	<i>he</i>	they

You've had these words meaning, 'I, you, he, she, they'. You can add all case suffixes to their appropriate stem forms. You may run across a series of poetic and dialectal forms, which seem to occur quite commonly. Your Guide may use any one or several of these variant forms (such as *ma*, or *mä*, or *mie* for *minä*, etc.). Use whichever ones he prefers.

<sup>1</sup>That is, a stem ending in a double vowel (*maa-*), followed by *-i* (*mai-* by automatic change—see unit 10, pages 180-1, no. 6) will take *-ta*; or when the nominative singular ends in two vowels, the ending will be *-ta*: *konservatorioita*, *museoita*; or when the nominative singular ends in *-t*: *oluita*. Otherwise the partitive plural will end in *-a* (*-i-a*; when there's a vowel before the *-i-* it is replaced by *-j-*—see unit 10, page 181, no. 9).

Note these stem forms:

Free Form	Stem form	Suffixed forms— e.g.
<i>minä</i>	<i>minu-</i>	<i>minua</i> , <i>minun</i>
<i>me</i>	<i>mei-</i>	<i>meidän</i> , <i>meitä</i>
<i>sinä</i>	<i>sinu-</i>	<i>sinun</i> , <i>sinua</i>
<i>te</i>	<i>tei-</i>	<i>teidän</i> , <i>teitä</i>
<i>hän</i>	<i>häne-</i> , <i>hän-</i>	<i>hänellä</i> , <i>häntä</i>
<i>he</i>	<i>hei-</i>	<i>heidän</i> , <i>heitä</i>

The object relation is indicated by a *-t* suffix in singular and plural throughout: *minut* 'me', *heidät* 'them', etc.

*Comment Four—Itse*

<i>ostan samalla itselleni</i>	I'll buy some cough medicine for myself at the same time
<i>yskänlääkettä</i>	
<i>minä pidän itseni lämpimänä</i>	I keep myself warm

Note how the word *itse* 'self' takes the possessive and the case suffixes, just like any other noun: *itseni* 'myself', *itsensä* 'himself', and so on; or *itse-lle-ni*, *itse-ä-si* with the case suffixes preceding. *Itse* is always in the singular. In general, when *itse* comes before a noun it does not take suffixes, but stands as a free form; on the other hand, after a noun it follows with the appropriate suffixes: *itse lapselle* 'to the child itself'—or *lapselle itselleen* (*itsellensä*); *itse lapsille* 'to the children themselves'—or *lapsille itselleen*. Note that *itse*, like *kolme*, has only one stem form (belongs to type I.)

## 2. Covering English and Finnish of Word Study

Give the English equivalents of all expressions in the *Word Study* and the Finnish for all the English. This is individual study.

## 3. Review of Basic Sentences

Further oral practice with the first part of the *Basic Sentences*.

# SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES (Cont.)

## 1. Review of Basic Sentences (Cont.)

Further oral practice with the second part of the *Basic Sentences*.

## 2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences

Check your knowledge of the meaning of all words and phrases in the *Basic Sentences*. This is individual study.

## 3. What Would You Say?

The free forms in parentheses, to fit in the sentences they are in, require the *-n* suffix.

## I.

1. (*Morsian*) *veli on (hotellinomistaja) poika.*
2. (*Kaikki hyvä koti*) *lapset ovat koulussa.*
3. (*Juna*) *vaunut ovat pitkät.*
4. (*Amerikkalainen sotilas*) *kengät ovat hyvät.*
5. (*Vieras henkilö*) *matkalaukut ovat säilytysluoneessa.*
6. (*Sulhanen*) *perhe on Amerikassa.*
7. (*Vanha mies*) *päässä ei ole paljon tukkaa.*
8. (*Tunnettu suomalainen sanomalehti*) *nimi on (Helsinki) Sanomat.*
9. (*Halpa hotelli*) *huoneet ovat suuria ja rauhallisia.*
10. (*Talvi*) *kauniit päivät ovat kylmät.*

## II. Change these sentences into negatives.

1. *Hän syö päivällisensä aina kuuden aikaan.*
2. *Talon isäntä vuokraa vapaan huoneen.*
3. *Hänen veljensä menee maalle aina toisessa luokassa.*
4. *Sotilas ostaa kauniin lahjan morsiamellensa.*
5. *Pankinjohtaja asuu kaupungissa kesällä.*
6. *Sisareni saa sukset ensi talveksi.*
7. *Haluan kolme lasia viiniä tänään.*
8. *Näetkö tuon kauniin talon, se on minun.*
9. *Pyytäisittekö häntä meillä käymään.*
10. *Syksyllä sataa joka päivä.*

## SECTION D—LISTENING IN

### 1. What Did You Say?

With the other members of the group give orally your responses to the previous exercise as the Leader calls for them.

### 2. Word Study Check-Up

Give the Finnish for all English equivalents in the *Word Study* as the Leader calls for it.

### 3. Listening In

#### I

*Eeva—Olen kuullut että Liisa on naimisissa Laurin kanssa?*

*Anna—Laurin kanssako? Eihän?*

*—Laurihan oli hänen sulhasensa.*

#### II

*Tyttö—Mennäänkö ulos torstaina?*

*Poika—Tietysti! Mutta jos sataa?*

*Tyttö—Mennään sitten keskiviikkona.*

#### III

*Maanviljelijä tulee asemalle vaimonsa kanssa.*

*Hän kysyy lipunmyyjältä:*

*—Sanokaa, herra, joko 15.10 juna on täällä?*

*—Kyllä, ja lähtee noin viidessä minuutissa.*

*—Ja kuinka pian kello neljän juna saapuu?*

*—Se ei tule tänään, sillä nyt on sunnuntai.*

*—Saapuko tänne henkilöjunia tänään.*

*—Ei.*

*—Eikä myöskään tavarajunia?*

*—Ei.*

*—Tänne ei tule junia nyt?*



- Ei.  
 —Varmasti ei tule junia.  
 —Tietysti, varmasti ei tule junia.

*Maanviljelijä sanoo vaimollensa:*

- Sitten Eeva me voimme rauhassa mennä rautatien yli.

#### IV

*A mother goes to a department-store to buy sport equipment for her son.*

*Äiti*

*Hyvää päivää, neiti.  
 Haluan ostaa pojalleni lämpöiset hiihtohousut.  
 Hänellä on kahden viikon loma ja hän haluaisi käydä hiihtämässä.*

*Neiti*

*Meillä on hyviä hiihtohousuja ja takkeja.*

*Äiti*

*Ovatko ne hyvin kalliita?*

*Neiti*

*Eivät ole.  
 Te voitte saada hyvät hiihtohousut seitsemälläkymmenenlänillä markalla.  
 Mutta meillä on myöskin sadanviidenkymmenen markan hiihtohousuja.*

*Äiti*

*Kuinka kalliita.*

*Neiti*

*Tehän tiedätte että on parempi ostaa kalliimmat sillä ne ovat niin paljon paremmat.*

*Äiti*

*Olette aivan oikeassa, neiti.  
 Minä otan sadanviidenkymmenen markan housut.  
 Entäs hiihtotakit?  
 Minkä hintaisia teillä on?*

*Neiti*

*Tämä takki on lämmin ja kaunis.  
 Se maksaa vain satakahdeksankymmentä markkaa.  
 Minä pidän, että tämä on paras ostos, minkä voitte tehdä.*

*Äiti*

*Hyvä on.  
 Otan tämän takin.  
 Se on hyvin kaunis myöskin.*

*Neiti*

*Kiitos.  
 Onko pojallanne jo hiihtokengät?  
 Meillä on oikein hyviä ja halpoja.*

*Äiti*

*Ei ole, mutta hän saa itse ostaa kengät itsellensä.*

*Neiti*

*Milloin poikanne aikoo lähteä lomallensa ja aikooko hän käydä hyvin pohjoisessa?*

*Äiti*

*Hän lähtee ensi perjantaina Pallastunturille.*

*Neiti*

*Niinkö!  
Tiedätkö rouva että minä myöskin aijon käydä Pallastunturilla ensi viikolla, tyttötoverini kanssa.*

*Äiti*

*Sehän hauskaa!  
Varmasti näette poikani siellä.*

*Hänen nimensä on Jorma Setälä.*

*Toivon, että teillä on oikein hauska loma ja hyvä hiihtokeli.*

*Tulisin mielelläni kanssanne mutta olen jo aivan liian vanha.*

*Neiti*

*Mitä te puhutte?*

*Vanhako?*

*Minun äitini on varmasti vanhempi ja hänkin vielä hiihtää.*

*Eilen hän juuri osti sukset itsellensä.*

*Äiti*

*Kyllä minun nyt täytyy lähteä tästä kotiin.*

*Hyvästi sitten ja hauskaa matkaa ja hyvää hiihtokeliä.*

*Neiti*

*Hyvästi rouva Setälä ja paljon kiitoksia.*

## SECTION E—CONVERSATION

### 1. Covering the Finnish of Basic Sentences

With the Finnish covered practice until you can speak the Finnish for each English sentence without hesitation. This is individual study.

### 2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Give the Finnish for all English sentences in the *Basic Sentences* as the Leader calls for it.

### 3. Conversation

1. Plan to go out with a friend. The weather is cold. You want to go skiing, the friend wants to walk around. Settle the difference one way or another. Decide where you will meet, whether you will go by street-car or train.
2. Continue your plans for the excursion. Ask your mother to put up hot coffee and cold chicken, some candy and cigarettes. Your friend remarks that these preparations are pointless because there's a restaurant on the way, where you can buy excellent food, warm drinks and also brandy or whiskey.
3. You meet a gentleman in the diner of a train. Dis-

cuss the weather with him. It's very cold outside. You ask the waiter to tell you the temperature. You order a meal. While eating, you discuss train accommodations, hotel facilities in the town where you're both going. The gentleman invites you for a drink. You become friends and make plans to spend your vacation together.

4. Invite a girl to a movie. You say the evening is hot and the movie cool. She says the church is cool too but you weren't there Sunday morning. You tell her that your mother had a severe headache and you had to stay with your family. She says she'll go to the movie with you tonight if you'll come to church with her another Sunday.

## SECTION F—CONVERSATION (Cont.)

Continue conversation. Additional check-up on the material of the *Basic Sentences* by the Leader if it seems necessary.

### Review

Complete check-up on the material of the *Word Study* and *Basic Sentences*.

### Finder List

*anna*  
*aste*

*ennenkuin*  
*etelä*  
*et loukannut*  
*et ole juonut*

give  
degree or grade

before  
south  
you didn't hurt  
you haven't drunk

<i>hiihtokeli</i>	skiing (condition)
<i>hiihtämässä</i>	skiing
<i>jalka</i>	foot
<i>katkaista</i>	to break
<i>keskuslämmitys</i>	central heat
<i>kevät</i>	spring
<i>konjakki</i>	cognac <i>or</i> brandy
<i>kova</i>	hard <i>or</i> severe
<i>lumi</i>	snow
<i>lämmittää</i>	to keep warm <i>or</i> to heat
<i>morsian</i>	bride
<i>-n</i>	genitive suffix
<i>omistaja</i>	owner
<i>olet tehnyt</i>	you have done
<i>ota</i>	take
<i>pakata</i>	to pack
<i>pakkanen</i>	cold <i>or</i> frost
<i>pane päälle</i>	put on

<i>pankaa</i>	put
<i>panna</i>	to put
<i>pesä</i>	fire-place
<i>pohjoinen</i>	north
<i>pois</i>	away <i>or</i> off
<i>puu</i>	wood
<i>rauha</i>	peace
<i>rommi</i>	rum
<i>saapas</i>	boat
<i>suksi</i>	ski
<i>taas</i>	again
<i>tapa</i>	way
<i>tarkoittaa</i>	to mean
<i>tarve</i>	enough <i>or</i> need
<i>toivoa</i>	to hope <i>or</i> wish
<i>viina</i>	liquor
<i>villainen</i>	woollen
<i>wiski</i>	whiskey

## SPORTS AND ENTERTAINMENT

## SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

*Members of the Tuomi family sit around the breakfast table and discuss sports and entertainment.*

## ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS

## FINNISH

hunger  
I'm hungry.  
Are we going to eat breakfast soon?

Isä

nälkä  
*Minulla on nälkä.*  
*Joko pian syödään aamiaista?*

What do you want for breakfast?

Äiti

*Mitä sinä tahdot aamiaiseksi?*

I want a good breakfast, since this is Sunday morning.

Isä

*Koska nyt on sunnuntaiaamu, haluan hyvän aamiaisen.*

oatmeal  
egg  
Do you want oatmeal or eggs?

Äiti

kaurapuuro  
muna  
*Haluatko kaurapuuroa tai muna?*

both  
I want both, and coffee too.

ready  
Breakfast is ready.

for once  
I hope that for once we'll all eat at the same time.

up  
Tuulikki! Kalervo! Up!  
Breakfast is on the table.

All right, Father.  
We'll come right down.

*Isä*  
*molemmat*  
*Haluan molempia ja myöskin kahvia.*

*Äiti*  
*valmis*  
*Aamiainen on valmis.*  
*kerrankin*  
*Toivon, että kerrankin syömmme kaikki yhtäikaa.*

*Isä*  
*ylös*  
*Tuulikki! Kalervo! Ylös!*  
*Aamiainen on pöydässä.*

*Tuulikki*  
*Hyvä on, isä.*  
*Tulemme heti alas.*

*At the Breakfast Table*

who  
to the races *or* to the contests  
to Munkkiniemi  
Who wants to come to the ski races at Munkkiniemi  
with me?

*Isä*  
*kuka*  
*kilpailuihin*  
*Munkkiniemeen*  
*Kuka haluaa tulla kanssani hiihtokilpailuihin Munk-*  
*kiniemeen?*

I'll be glad to come.  
fresh  
air *or* weather  
I want some fresh air.  
on foot  
Shall we go on foot?

to a concert  
I'd rather go to a concert.  
besides  
dancing  
Besides, I'm going to a dance with Sven tonight.

Swedish  
officer  
to own  
horse  
Is he that Swedish officer who owns so many horses?

Yes.

*Kalervo*

*Minä tulen mielelläni.  
raitis  
ilma  
Haluan saada raitista ilmaa.  
jalkaisin  
Mennäänkö jalkaisin?*

*Tuulikki*

*konserttiin  
Minä menen mieluummin konserttiin.  
sitäpaitsi  
tanssimaan  
Sitäpaitsi menen Svenin kanssa tanssimaan tänä iltana.*

*Kalervo*

*ruotsalainen  
upseeri  
omistaa  
hevonon  
Onko hän se ruotsalainen upseeri, joka omistaa niin  
paljon hevosia?*

*Tuulikki*

*On kyllä.*

on his farm  
Sweden  
dog  
He has many horses and dogs on his estate in Sweden.

*maatilallaan  
Ruotsi  
koira  
Hänellä on maatilallaan Ruotsissa monta hevosta ja  
paljon koiria.*

Russian  
admirer  
I like him more than that Russian admirer of yours.

*Kalervo*

*venäläinen  
ihailija  
Pidän hänestä enemmän kuin siitä venäläisestä ihaili-  
jastasi.*

I don't like that Russian either.

rowing  
He always wants to go rowing with you.

*Äiti*

*Minä myöskään en pidä tuosta venäläisestä.  
soutelemaan  
Hän aina tahtoo mennä kanssasi soutelemaan.*

with him  
swimming  
last  
I went swimming with him only once last summer.

*Tuulikki*

*hänen kanssaan  
uimassa  
viime  
Kävin hänen kanssaan uimassa vain kerran viime  
kesänä.*

human being *or* person  
Well, kids, what do you intend to do this afternoon?

*Isä*

*ihminen  
Mutta ihmiset, mitä te aiotte tehdä tänä iltapäivänä.*



what kind  
What kind of concert is there today?

*millainen*  
*Millainen konsertti siellä on tänään?*

university  
auditorium  
a (certain)  
Norwegian  
singer (woman)  
There's a Norwegian singer giving a concert in the  
University Auditorium.

*Tuulikki*

*yliopisto*  
*juhlasali*  
*eräs*  
*norjalainen*  
*laulajatar*  
*Yliopiston juhlasalissa on erään norjalaisen laulajat-*  
*taren konsertti.*

I don't like concerts.  
to movies  
I'd much rather go to the movies.

*Kalervo*

*Minä en pidä konserteista.*  
*elokuviin*  
*Menen paljon mieluummin elokuviin.*

German  
film  
There's a good German movie at the Kino Palatsi.

*saksalainen*  
*filmi*  
*Kino Palatsissa on hyvä saksalainen filmi tänään.*

language or tongue  
You know that I don't understand German.

*Äiti*

*kieli*  
*Sinä tiedät, etten ymmärrä saksankieltä.*

translation  
But there are Finnish titles.

*Kalervo*

*käännös*  
*Mutta siinähan on suomalainen käännös.*

to think  
to decide  
I thought that we men decided to go to the ski races.

woman  
to need  
If you women don't want to come with us, you don't  
have to.

by the way  
to the theatre  
By the way, I bought four tickets to the National  
Theatre for next Sunday evening.

for  
I hope that we can get one more ticket for Sven.

Sure.  
I didn't know  
play  
I didn't know that he likes the theatre.

horse races  
I thought he cared only for horse races.  
250 [15-A]

*Isä*

*luulla  
päättää  
Minä luulin, että me miehet päätimme mennä hiihtokil-  
pailuihin.*

*nainen  
tarvita  
Jos te naiset ette halua tulla kanssamme, ei teidän  
tarvitse.*

*kesken kaiken  
teatteriin  
Kesken kaiken, minä ostin neljä lippua Kansallisteat-  
teriin ensi sunnuntai-illaksi.*

*Tuulikki*

*varten  
Toivon, että voimme saada vielä yhden lipun lisää  
Sveniä varten.*

*Isä*

*Varmasti.  
en tiennyt  
näytelmä  
En tiennyt, että hän pitää näytelmistä.  
kilpa-ajot  
Luulin, että hän pitää vain kilpa-ajoista.*

truth  
It isn't true.

He also likes my sister.  
Where're you going to dance tonight?

to the Adlon  
We're going to the Adlon maybe.  
dance  
There is the best dance band in town.

those  
I don't like those night clubs.  
that you didn't  
I hope you won't stay out very late tonight.

*Tuulikki*

*tosi*  
*Se ei ole totta.*

*Kalervo*

*Hänhän pitää myöskin sisarestani.*  
*Mihin te menette tanssimaan tänä iltana?*

*Tuulikki*

*Adloniin*  
*Ehkä menemme Adloniin.*  
*tanssi*  
*Siellä on kaupungin paras tanssiorkesteri.*

*Äiti*

*nuo*  
*Minä en pidä noista tanssiravintoloista.*  
*ettette (=että te ette)*  
*Toivon, ettette ole hyvin myöhään tänä iltana.*

## SECTION B—WORD STUDY AND REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

### 1. Word Study

#### *Comment One—The Suffix -tar*

<i>laulaja</i>	singer	<i>laulajatar</i>	singer (woman)
<i>myyjä</i>	salesman	<i>myyjätär</i>	saleslady

The suffix *-tar* designates people of feminine sex. Further examples: *tarjoilijatar* 'waitress,' *johtajatar* 'manageress'.

#### *Comment Two—The Suffix -n*

*jalkaisin*                      on foot

In addition to the two *-n* suffixes which you've already learned (see unit 14, pages 237-8), there's also a third one, meaning roughly 'with' or 'by', usually with reference to a part of the body. This *-n* suffix is generally added after the stem plus the *-i-* plural sign, as illustrated above, but with a singular meaning. *Jalkaisin* is actually a variant form for *jalo* in, singular *jalan*. Note *omin päin* '(using) your own head (or judgment).' Note also the presence of this same suffix in these words:

<i>hyvin</i>	'very'	(from <i>hyvä</i> 'good')
<i>kuin</i>	'as'	(from <i>ku-</i> )
<i>liian</i>	'too'	(from <i>liika</i> 'too much')

<i>niin, näin</i>	'so'	
<i>pian</i>	'soon'	(from <i>pika</i> 'shortly, soon')
<i>sadoin</i>	'by hundreds'	(from <i>sata</i> 'hundred')
<i>takaisin</i>	'back'	(from <i>takaise-</i> )
<i>yksin</i>	'alone'	(from <i>yksi</i> 'one')

#### *Comment Three—The Suffixes -hxn, -seen*

<i>maahan</i>	to the land	<i>työhön</i>	to work
<i>maihiin</i>	to the lands	<i>töihin</i>	to works

The above stems bear the suffix we write *-hxn*; note that both *maa-* and *työ-* are single syllable stems. The letter *-x-* in *-hxn* stands for any vowel; the vowel which will actually occur is identical with the immediately preceding vowel (or last vowel of the single syllable stem), that is: *-a* in *maa-* (hence *-han*), *-ö* in *työ-* (hence *-hön*). In the plural, the suffix vowel *-x-* will always be *-i-* (*-hin*), for the immediately preceding vowel will always be the *-i-* plural suffix. (For the regular automatic changes in *maihiin* and *töihin*, see unit 10, pages 179-81.

<i>vapaaseen</i>	to the free	<i>kevääseen</i>	to spring
<i>vapaisiin</i>	to the free . . .s	<i>keväisiin</i>	to springs
<i>vapaihin</i>		<i>keväihin</i>	

The above stems bear the suffix *-seen* in the singular; note that both *vapaa-* and *kevää-* are two-syllable stems ending in a long vowel (*-aa-* and *-ää-* in the above examples). Two or more syllable stems ending in a long vowel will add *-seen* to the stem in the singular in general, though you may hear your Guide add simply *-hxn*: *vapaahan*, *keväähän*. In the plural, the suffix may be either *-siin* or *-hin*, added to the stem plus *-i-*.

<i>kalaan</i>	to the fish	<i>kaupunkiin</i>	to the town
<i>kaloihin</i>	to the fishes	<i>kaupunkeihin</i>	to the towns
	<i>parempaan</i>		to better
	<i>parempiin</i>		to better . . .s

Two or more syllable stems other than those discussed above simply take *-n* in the singular, but double their preceding stem vowels (thus *kala-* becomes *kalaa-*, *kaupunki-* becomes *kaupunkii-*, *parempa-* from *parempi* becomes *parempaa-*). In the plural, the stem plus *-i-* takes *-hin*, but *-ihin* is contracted almost always to *-iin*, as illustrated above.

The general meaning of the above case suffixes is 'motion to'—*mennä kouluun* 'to go to school.' Sometimes you must translate as 'till, until, to'—*vieläkö talveen on pitkä aika?* 'is it long till winter?'

*hänen kanssaan* with him *maatilallaan* on his farm

According to what you've learned about the possessive suffix *-nsa* (unit 4, page 73), the above expressions should be *hänen kanssansa* and *maatilallansa*, as they indeed may be. On the other hand, you may often hear your Guide substitute *-n* for *-nsa*. This will happen only when there is a case suffix just preceding, and this case suffix ends in a single vowel. This single vowel then doubles before the *-n*: *kirkko* 'church', *kirkkonsa* 'his church' (no case suffix here); *kirkkoa* (partitive), *kirkkoansa* or *kirkkooan* (but *kalaa*, partitive of *kala* 'fish' could only be *kalaansa*, because of the already double vowel).

## 2. Covering English and Finnish of Word Study

Give the English equivalents of all expressions in the *Word Study* and the Finnish for all the English. This is individual study.

## 3. Review of Basic Sentences

Further oral practice with the first part of the *Basic Sentences*.

## SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES (*Cont.*)

### 1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

Further oral practice with the second part of the *Basic Sentences*.

### 2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences

Check your knowledge of the meaning of all words and phrases in the *Basic Sentences*. This is individual study.

### 3. What Would You Say?

I. The brief story that follows is in the present, and is told in the first person. Imagine that it happened to you in the past and retell it. Do not write anything down.

*Tänä aamuna alkaa kesälomani ja lähden matkalle. Menen asemalle raitiovaunulla. Ostan kolmannen luokan lipun Kuopioon, ja vien matkalaukkuni junaan. Koska minulla on vielä paljon aikaa, käyn ostamassa makeisia ja sanomalehtiä. Palaan takaisin junaan ja istun vasta-päätä kaunista nuorta tyttöä. Puhun hänen kanssaan, ja meistä tulee hyvät toverit. Pyydän häntä kanssani lounaalle ravintolavaunuun. Tilaan ensiksi viiniä meille molemmille.*

II. The fifteen sentences that follow contain free forms in parentheses. To make these fit into the sentences as a whole, you must add the required suffixes. In some cases you must build both singular and plural forms.

1. (*Millainen työ*) *te aijotte mennä?*
2. *Ostin liput (kaikki) kaupunginorkesterin (kevät-konsertti).*
3. *Menen tänä iltana morsiameni kanssa (norjalainen ravintola) syömään.*
4. (*Hyvä päivällinen*) *kuuluu jälkiruoka ja kahvi.*
5. *Eilen illalla tansseissa tutustuin (hauska ruotsalainen upseeri).*
6. *Menemmekö (molemmat museot) tänään?*
7. (*Paras hotelli*) *on kaksi kadunkulmaa tästä.*
8. (*Kaunis kesäyö*) *on vielä pitkä aika.*
9. *Tulisitteko kanssani yliopiston (juhlasali tanssi)?*
10. *Lähdemme (raitis ilma) kävelemään.*
11. *Haluan mennä sunnuntaina (venäläinen kirkko).*
12. *Sain uuden puhelimen (tämä huone) eilen.*
13. *Poikani lähti viime viikolla (Yhdysvallat).*
14. *Haluaisitteko mennä työhön (asetehdas)?*
15. (*Toinen kerros*) *voitte mennä hissillä.*

## SECTION D—LISTENING IN

### 1. What Did You Say?

With the other members of the group, give orally your responses to the previous exercises as the Leader calls for them.

### 2. Word Study Check-Up

Give the Finnish for all English equivalents in the *Word Study* as the Leader calls for it.

### 3. Listening In

#### I

*Väinö—Minulla on kova hammassärky.*

*Eero—Minä menisin hammaslääkäriin ja antaisin ottaa sen pois jos se olisi minun hampaani.*

*Väinö—Minä myöskin, jos se olisi sinun.*

#### II Tansseissa

*Poika—Toivon, että tanssit kanssani tänä iltana.*

*Tyttö—Varmasti, ethän luule, että tulin tänne, että minulla olisi hauskaa.*

#### III

*Pieni Eeva—Äiti, näetkö tuota miestä? Hänellä ei ole tukkaal!*

*Äiti—Sh, lapseni, hän voi kuulla.*

*Pieni Eeva—Eikö hän tiedä sitä sitten?*

#### IV Ravintolassa

*Tarjoilija—Toinko minä jo teille ruokalistan?*

*Herra—Jos te toitte, minä varmasti söin sen.*

#### V Junassa

*Herra A—Oletteko koskaan olleet Tampereella?*

*Herra B—Kyllä, käyn siellä noin pari kertaa vuodessa.*

*Herra A—Mitä hotellia suosittelette minulle.*

*Herra B—Suosittelen hotelli Laaksoa.*

*Herra A—Asutteko te itse aina siellä kun käytte Tampereella?*

*Herra B—En. Mutta olen asunut kaikissa toisissa.*

#### VI

*Maanviljelijä meni kaupunkiin ja vuokrasi huoneen*

hotellista. Samalla hän kysyi hotellinomistajalta mihin aikaan hotellissa syödään.

“Aamiainen on kello seitsämästä yhteentoista, lounas kello kahdestatoista kolmeen ja päivällinen kello kuudesta kahdeksaan.”

“Mutta mihin aikaan minä sitten voin mennä kaupungille?”

## VII

*Tuulikki*

*Tulen juuri hiihtokilpailuista.*

*Kyllä Munkkiniemessä oli paljon ihmisiä, ja hiihtokeli oli paras mitä meillä on ollut tänä talvena.*

*Kalervo*

*Nyt sinä sen sanot.*

*Tahdoin tulla kanssasi kun lähdit.*

*Olen ollut kotona kello kolmesta.*

*Tuulikki*

*Luuletko, että noin vain annan sinun tulla kanssamme.*

*Svenillä on nuori hevonen ja kun me olemme yhdessä sinä olet liikaa.*

*Kalervo*

*Vai niin.*

*Olit siellä Svenin kanssa.*

*Kyllä minä yskän ymmärrän.*

*Tahdot olla vain kahden hänen kanssaan.*

*Tuulikki*

*Niin tahdon.*

*Ethän sinä anna minun tulla sinun ja Eevan kanssa kun te menette ulos.*

*Olen ollut kotona monta sunnuntai-iltaa.*

*Kalervo*

*Niin mutta Eeva on morsiameni ja tiedät aivan hyvin että menemme ensi kuussa naimisiin.*

*Tuulikki*

*Sitten teillä on paljon aikaa olla yhdessä.*

*Ja luuletko sinä, että minä en voi mennä naimisiin, Svenin kanssa jos vain tahdon.*

*Kalervo*

*Jos sinä iahdot, tarkoitat, jos Sven tahtoo.*

*Tietysti, menet mielelläsi, jos hän vain pyytää sinua.*



*Tuulikki*

*Pyytää minua!*

*Hän jo pyysi pari kertaa.*

*Mutta minä myöskin voin sanoa ei.*

*Äiti sanoo että olen liian nuori.*

*Olenhan vain kahdeksantoista.*

*Kalervo*

*Koska hän pyysi?*

*Sanohan!*

*Tuulikki*

*Kuka haluaa tietää?*

*Sinäkö?*

*Ja mitä sinä sitten ymmärrät naimisiin menosta.*

*Kalervo*

*Minä tietysti!*

*Sillä jos menet Svenin kanssa naimisiin odotan, että hän antaa minulle hevosen.*

*Tuulikki*

*Ei kyllä anna, jos minä voin sen auttaa.*

## SECTION E—CONVERSATION

### 1. Covering the Finnish of Basic Sentences

With the Finnish covered, practice until you can speak the Finnish for each English sentence without hesitation. This is individual study.

### 2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Give the Finnish for all English sentences in the *Basic Sentences* as the Leader calls for it.

### 3. Conversation

1. You're on the train with your wife, going towards Helsinki. You're sitting in the diner. You're both hungry and order a breakfast including cereal, milk, eggs, coffee and bread. Your wife's brother is a Swedish ski champion. He's in the races at Munkkiniemi later that day. You don't like the idea of going out there, and make some derogatory remarks about him. Your wife insists, however, and points out that a walk in the fresh air would do you

good. You feebly protest that you'd prefer to go to a concert, but it's no use. You ask your wife for the newspaper, and settle back to read quietly for the rest of the trip.

2. Tell a joke in Finnish.
3. You go rowing with a fellow soldier on a picnic. You're both interested in horses and dogs, and while

you're munching the food you brought with you and having a smoke, you talk about the horses and dogs at home on your farms.

4. Talk about American sports, comparing them with German, Swedish, Finnish and Norwegian sports.
5. Discuss recent concerts you've heard, mentioning the nationalities of the performers.

## SECTION F—CONVERSATION (*Cont.*)

Continue conversation. Additional check-up on the material of the *Basic Sentences* by the Leader if it seems necessary.

### *Review*

Complete check-up on the material of the *Word Study* and *Basic Sentences*.

### Finder List

<i>Adlon</i>	Adlon
<i>en tiennyt</i>	I didn't know
<i>eräs</i>	a (certain)
<i>ettette</i>	that you didn't

<i>filmi</i>	film
<i>hevonen</i>	horse
<i>ihailija</i>	admirer
<i>ihminen</i>	human being <i>or</i> person
<i>ilma</i>	air <i>or</i> weather
<i>juhlasali</i>	auditorium
<i>kaurapuuro</i>	oatmeal
<i>kerrankin</i>	for once
<i>kesken kaiken</i>	by the way
<i>kieli</i>	language <i>or</i> tongue
<i>kilpa-ajot</i>	horse races
<i>kilpailu</i>	race <i>or</i> contest
<i>koira</i>	dog

<i>konsertti</i>	concert
<i>kuka</i>	who
<i>käännös</i>	translation
<i>laulaja</i>	singer
<i>luulla</i>	to think <i>or</i> to believe
<i>millainen</i>	what kind
<i>molemmat</i>	both
<i>muna</i>	egg
<i>Munkkiniemi</i>	Munkkiniemi
<i>nainen</i>	woman
<i>norjalainen</i>	Norwegian
<i>nuo</i>	those
<i>nälkä</i>	hunger
<i>näytelmä</i>	play
<i>omistaa</i>	to own
<i>päättää</i>	to decide
<i>raitis</i>	fresh
<i>ruotsalainen</i>	Swedish

<i>Ruotsi</i>	Sweden
<i>saksalainen</i>	German
<i>sitäpaitsi</i>	besides
<i>soutelemaan</i>	rowing
<i>tanssi</i>	dance
<i>tanssimaan</i>	dancing
<i>tarvita</i>	to need
<i>teatteriin</i>	to the theatre
<i>tosi</i>	truth
<i>uimassa</i>	swimming
<i>upseeri</i>	officer
<i>valmis</i>	ready
<i>varten</i>	for
<i>venäläinen</i>	Russian
<i>viime</i>	last
<i>yliopisto</i>	university
<i>ylös</i>	up

## PAYING A VISIT

## SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

*I drop in unexpectedly on my friend in his apartment at Helsinki; I haven't seen him in years.*

*I*

A

*Aho*

*Nurmi*

*Ahola*

*Oras*

*Heino*

*Tuomi*

*Leino*

*Talonmies*

probably or perhaps  
janitor  
consequently  
"Talonmies." I guess that's the man I want.  
I'll ask indeed  
I'll ask him first.

What do you want?

Master of Arts  
(M. A.)  
I'm looking for Mr. Korpi.

teacher  
You mean Korpi the teacher?

Right.

apartment  
stairway or stair  
He has an apartment in the D entrance.

*Minä*

*kai*  
*talonmies*  
*siis*

"Talonmies." Tässä siis asuu talonmies.

*kysynpä*  
*Kysynpä häneltä ensin.*

*Talonmies*

*Mitä te tahdotte?*

*Minä*

*filosofian maisteri*  
*(Fil. Maist.)*  
*Etsin Filosofian maisteri Korpea.*

*Talonmies*

*opettaja*  
*Tarkoitatte opettaja Korpea?*

*Minä*

*Aivan.*

*Talonmies*

*huoneusto*  
*porras*  
*Hänellä on huoneusto D-portaassa.*

On the seventh floor.

door  
Door number twenty-six.

Thank you

trouble *or* bother  
Here's something for your trouble.

Thanks very much.

to mutter

straightforward *or* honest  
He's a regular guy.

Here's the elevator.

to be hoped for  
to work  
I hope it works!  
**262** [16-A]

*Seitsemännessä keeroksessa.*

*ovi*  
*Oven numero on kaksikymmentäkuusi.*

*Minä*

*Kiitos.*

*vaiva*  
*Tässä vaivastanne.*

*Talonmies*

*Kiitoksia paljon.*

*mutista*

*(Mutisee:)*

*reilu*  
*Reilu mies.*

## *II*

*Minä*

*Tässä on hissi.*

*toivottavasti*  
*toimia*  
*Toivottavasti se toimi!*

oh  
darn it! *or* nuisance  
Darn it!  
Now I must walk.

*voi*  
*pahus*  
*Voi pahus!*  
*Nyt minun täytyy kävellä.*

III

plate *or* sign  
even  
They don't even have numbers on the doors, only  
name-plates.

*Minä*  
*kilpi*  
*edes*  
*Eihän täällä ole edes numeroita ovissa, vain nimikilvet.*

these  
lights  
bad  
And these lights are so bad that you can't even see here.

*nämä*  
*valotkin*  
*huono*  
*Ja nämä valotkin ovat niin huonot, että ei täällä edes näe.*

I guess I'll ring  
I think I'll ring this doorbell.

*soitanpahan*  
*Soitanpahan tätä ovikelloa.*

What do you want?  
If—.

*Nainen*  
*Mitä te haluatte?*  
*Jos—.*

allow *or* grant  
Excuse me!  
I—.

*Minä*  
*suokaa*  
*Suokaa anteeksi.*  
*Minä—.*

matter *or* thing  
absolutely *or* positively  
nothing  
If you're a salesman, I don't care for a thing.

neighbor  
I guess I must ask the neighbor.

like this *or* so *or* thus  
I'm glad you came so soon.  
to cook  
gas (stove)  
is repaired  
We can't cook until our (gas) stove is repaired.

make a mistake *or* be mistaken  
Excuse me, you are mistaken.  
I'm looking for Mr. Korpi and—.

stove  
even his  
Is his gas stove also out of order?  
264 [16-A]

*Nainen*  
*asia*  
*kerrassaan*  
*mitään*  
*Jos te olette asiamies, en halua kerrassaan mitään.*

*Minä*  
*naapuri*  
*Minun kai täytyy kysyä tästä naapurista.*

*Herra*  
*näin*  
*Hyvä että tulitte näin pian.*  
*keittää*  
*kaasu*  
*on korjattu*  
*Emme voi keittää ennenkuin kaasumme on korjattu.*

*Minä*  
*erehtyä*  
*Anteeksi, te erehdytte.*  
*Etsin maisteri Korpea ja—.*

*Herra*  
*hella*  
*hänenkin*  
*Onko hänenkin kaasuhellansa rikki?*



It is not.

to try

I am trying to say I'm looking for Mr. Korpi's apartment.

well

you didn't say

Well, why didn't you say so?

He lives right opposite.

Thank you very much.

heaven

as *or* when

Heavens, people are stupid.

I believe this is it.

for goodness sake

For goodness sake!

When did you arrive?

Welcome, welcome!

friend

drink

Can you give your old friend a drink?

*Minä*

*Ei ole.*

*koettaa*

*Koetin sanoa, että etsin maisteri Korven huoneustoa.*

*Herra*

*no*

*te ette sanoneet*

*No miksi te ette heti sitä sanoneet?*

*Hän asuu tuossa vastapäätä.*

*Minä*

*Kiitos oikein paljon.*

*taivas*

*kun*

*Voi taivas kun ihmiset ovat tyhmiä.*

*Tämä kai se nyt sitten on.*

*Hän*

*hyvänen aika*

*Hyvänen aika.*

*Milloin sinä saavuit?*

*Tervetuloa, tervetuloa!*

*Minä*

*ystävä*

*ryyppy*

*Voitko antaa vanhalle ystäväillesi ryyppyn?*

Of course, what do you want?

Whiskey.

honestly  
And I honestly need a drink.

to trouble  
What's the matter with you?

I tell you, I had to look for this place!

Where have you been all these years?

Germany  
I just returned from Germany.  
consulate  
I worked in the consulate.

Really!

What did you do there?

266 [16-A]

*Hän*

*Tietysti, mitä tahdot?*

*Minä*

*Wiskiä.*

*totisesti*  
*Ja totisesti tarvitsen ryyppyn.*

*Hän*

*vaivata*  
*Mikä sinua vaivaa?*

*Minä*

*Kyllä minä sen sanon että sain etsiä tätä paikkaa.*

*Hän*

*Missä sinä olet ollut kaikki nämä vuodet?*

*Minä*

*Saksa*  
*Palasin juuri Saksasta.*  
*konsulaatti*  
*Olin työssä konsulaatissa.*

*Hän*

*Niinkö!*  
*Mitä sinä teit siellä?*

attaché  
I was military attaché.

consul  
Who was consul?

ice  
Do you want ice in your drink?

No, thanks

to be moved  
We changed consuls every third month.

was moved *or* was transferred  
legation *or* embassy  
ambassador  
Japan  
Our consul was transferred to the embassy when the  
Ambassador went to Japan.

Are you still a teacher?

high school  
Yes, in the high school.

*Minä*  
*attashea*  
*Olin sotilasattashea.*

*Hän*  
*konsuli*  
*Kuka oli konsulina?*

*jää*  
*Haluatko jäätä juomaasi?*

*Minä*  
*Ei kiitos.*

*muuttua*  
*Meillä muuttuivat konsulit joka kolmas kuukausi.*

*siirrettiin*  
*lähetystö*  
*suurlähettiläs*  
*Japani*  
*Konsulimme siirrettiin Lähetystöön kun Suurlähet-*  
*tiläämme meni Japaniin.*  
*Oletko sinä vielä opettajana?*

*Hän*  
*lyseo*  
*Kyllä, lyseossa.*

to teach  
What do you teach?

Languages.

to listen to  
radio  
Do you want to listen to the radio?  
piece of news  
The news should come soon.

Good.  
I haven't heard the news for a long time.

There are cigarettes and matches on the table.  
to smoke  
If you smoke a pipe, over there's some tobacco.

I don't smoke.  
My wife doesn't like it.  
**268** [16-A]

*Minä*  
*opettaa*  
*Mitä sinä opetat?*

*Hän*  
*Kieliä.*  
*kuunnella*  
*radio*  
*Haluatko kuunnella radiota?*  
*uutinen*  
*Uutisten pitäisi tulla pian.*

*Minä*  
*Hyvä on.*  
*En ole kuullut uutisia pitkään aikaan.*

*Hän*  
*Pöydällä on savukkeita ja tulitikkuja.*  
*polttaa*  
*Jos poltat piippua, tuolla on piipputupakkaa.*

*Minä*  
*En polta.*  
*Vaimoni ei pidä siitä.*

Are you married?

who  
To whom?

*Hän*

*Oletko naimisissa?*

*ken*  
*Kenen kanssa?*

French  
A French girl, but she speaks Finnish well.

France  
Her father was in the French embassy, here in Helsinki, for many years.

*Minä*

*ranskalainen*  
*Ranskalaisen tytön, mutta hän puhuu suomea hyvin.*

*Ranska*  
*Hänen isänsä oli Ranskan Lähetystössä, täällä Helsingissä, monta vuotta.*

### Check Your Pronunciation

*How to pronounce the word spelled 'attashea':* Note the sound spelled *sh* in the word *attashea*. This is a foreign word to the Finn, and the *sh* represents a sound foreign to him. Educated speakers will know this sound as similar to the English *sh* of *she*; but less educated Guides might substitute an *s* as in *sea*. Always follow your Guide and

*Practice 52*

*attashea*

attaché

*How to pronounce the word spelled 'radio':* Note the sound spelled *a* in the word *radio*. This is also a foreign word to the Finn. Educated speakers will pronounce *a* double, as if it were written *raadio*, but others might say the short, single *a*. Follow your Guide and

*Practice 53*

*radio*

radio

## SECTION B—WORD STUDY AND REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

### 1. Word Study

*Comment one—The Suffix -nut*

<i>sinä olet tehnyt</i>	you've done
<i>et ole juonut</i>	you haven't drunk

Note the suffix *-nut* added to the stem form of *juoda* 'to drink' (*juo-*), and note that it is added to the consonant stem of verbs belonging to type II, as *tehdä* 'to do' (*tek-*, with automatic replacement of *k* by *h* before *n*, *t*, *d*, and *k*).

<i>ollut</i>	been	<i>loukannut</i>	hurt
--------------	------	------------------	------

Recall that *l + n* is replaced by *ll*, *t + n* by *nn*. The above examples illustrate this: *ol + nut* becomes *ollut* (from *olla* 'to be'), *loukat + nut* becomes *loukannut* (from *loukata* 'to hurt').

<i>olen sanonut</i>	I've said
---------------------	-----------

When a verb with the suffix *-nut* is accompanied by a form of *olla* 'to be' in the present tense, the meaning is 'I've done (this or that)'.

<i>meillä ei ollut</i>	we didn't have
<i>etkö loukannut itseäsi?</i>	didn't you hurt yourself?

These sentences illustrate the negation of an action in the past. The forms of the negative verb are the same as in the present (*en*, and so forth; see unit 14, pages 236-7), but the verb describing the action has the suffix *-nut*.

*ettekö te voisi tulla kanssani?* couldn't you come with me?

This sentence indicates the way to say 'wouldn't' or 'couldn't.' The forms of the negative verb are again the same as in the present, but the verb describing the action has the suffix *-isi* (see unit 13, pages 224-5).

<i>et ole juonut</i>	you haven't drunk
----------------------	-------------------

Compound tenses of this type are expressed in the negative this way: present forms of the negative verb are followed by *ole*, which is followed by the verb of action, which bears the *-nut* suffix, with the meaning 'haven't done,' etc.

To say 'wouldn't have' or 'couldn't have,' you use the same forms as above, but add *-isi* to *ole*. Thus, *et olisi juonut* 'you wouldn't have drunk.'

*tulin syöneeksi liian paljon* I happened to eat too much

<i>tulimme pitäneeksi nämä kengät</i>	we happened to keep these shoes
<i>tuli olleeksi siellä kolme kuukautta</i>	he happened to be there for three months

To the verb forms with *-nut* it is possible to add some case suffixes. Before most of these, *-nut* will take the stem form *-nee*, as in *tehnee-*, *juonee-*, *tullee-*, *loukannee-*. The case suffix you're most likely to find following verb forms and *-nee-* is *-ksi* (see unit 10, pages 181-2). Note that a verb form with *-nee-* followed by *-ksi* and accompanied by a form of the verb *tulla* 'to come' means 'to happen to'.

#### Comment Two—The Suffix *-pa*

*kysynpä häneltä ensin* I'll ask him first

The suffix *-pa* (as in *kysynpä*) is used generally for emphasis—or in some cases just the opposite—(compare unit 13, page 225, discussion of *-han*) of the word to which it is added. Note these expressions: *samaanpa* 'the very same', *jospa hän tulisi* 'if he'd only come', *kylläpä ulkona on lämmin* 'it certainly is warm outside.' Sometimes *-pa* and *-han* can be combined as *-pahan*: *sanoinpahan vain* 'I was only saying'.

#### Comment Three—The Suffix *-kin*

<i>valotkin ovat huonot</i>	even the lights are bad
<i>hänenkin kaasuhellansa</i>	his gas stove also

The suffix *-kin* is also an emphatic suffix. You already know *myöskin* 'also', and note these further examples: *minullakin on hyvät sukset* 'I too have good skis', *meidänkin talossamme on* 'in our house, too, there's an elevator'.

#### Comment Four—The Suffix *-(ka)an*

*kerrassaan mitään* absolutely nothing

The suffix *-(ka)an* is used for emphasis in negative sentences; after an *-a* in the stem, the *-ka* of this suffix disappears, as in the above examples. Note further: *milloin* 'when', *en milloinkaan* 'never (in all my life)', *hän ei tule koskaan* 'he never comes', *minäkään en polta* 'I don't smoke either'.

#### Comment Five—The Suffix *-sti* (')

<i>totisesti</i>	honestly	<i>tietysti</i>	certainly
<i>varmasti</i>	surely	<i>hyvästi</i>	(fare)well

Note the suffix *-sti*('), one of a dozen or so corresponding roughly to the English suffix *'-ly'*. This suffix is especially important because it is also used in Finnish with numbers, to be translated into English generally as 'times'. Thus *kolmesti* or *kolmasti* 'three times' (also *kolme kertaa*—see unit 11, page 200), *kahdesti* 'twice' (also *kaksi kertaa*).

## SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES (Cont.)

### 1. Review of Basic Sentences (Cont.)

Further oral practice with the second half of the *Basic Sentences*.

### 2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences

Check your knowledge of the meaning of all words and phrases in the *Basic Sentences*. This is individual study.

### 3. What Would You Say?

*I. Change these sentences into negatives:*

1. *Maisteri Korpi muutti viime viikolla.*

### 2. Covering English and Finnish of Word Study

Give the English equivalents of all expressions in the *Word Study* and the Finnish for all the English. This is individual study.

### 3. Review of Basic Sentences

Further oral practice with the first half of the *Basic Sentences*.

2. *Kysyin neuvoa ystävältäni.*

3. *Soitin pari kertaa ennenkuin hän kuuli.*

4. *Olisin keittänyt kahvia jos hellani olisi ollut kunnossa.*

5. *Jos olisin lähtenyt täältä kello kymmenen junalla olisin ollut siellä huomen aamulla.*

6. *Olisin mennyt myöskin ostoksille jos minulla olisi ollut tarpeeksi aikaa.*

7. *Olen kuunnellut radiota joka ilta.*

8. *Isäkin on tullut paljon vanhemmaksi.*

9. *Hän on asunut Saksassa monta vuotta.*

10. *Sinä halusit ostaa suuren kauniin koiran.*



II. Fill in the appropriate words from the list below in the blanks.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ *häntä päivälliselle tänään.*
2. \_\_\_\_\_ *ollut siellä, niin kaikki olisi nyt paremmin.*
3. \_\_\_\_\_ *tulee lomalle kotiin.*
4. \_\_\_\_\_ *vain katsomaan, mitä te teette.*
5. *Ulkona sataa* \_\_\_\_\_.
6. *Ei ollut* \_\_\_\_\_, *että sanoitte niin.*
7. \_\_\_\_\_ *mennä sinne junalla.*
8. \_\_\_\_\_ *ei ole liian paljon.*
9. \_\_\_\_\_ *eivät voineet tulla, sillä satoi niin kovasti.*
10. \_\_\_\_\_ *oli paljon koulupoikia.*
11. \_\_\_\_\_ *siellä käymään, jos siellä olisi hauskaa.*

12. \_\_\_\_\_ *en pane ulos tässä kovassa pakkasessa.*
13. \_\_\_\_\_ *odotimme häntä monta tuntia.*
14. *Konserttiin voivat* \_\_\_\_\_ *mennä.*
15. \_\_\_\_\_ *sisaresi ostaa sinulle lahjan.*
16. \_\_\_\_\_ *äitinne voi hyvin.*
  - a. *lapsetkin*
  - b. *hänhän*
  - c. *kauniisti*
  - d. *koiraanikaan*
  - e. *konserttissahan*
  - f. *kovasti*
  - g. *menisihän*
  - h. *mekin*
  - i. *olisinpä*
  - j. *pyydänpä*
  - k. *sekään*
  - l. *sotilaatkaan*
  - m. *tietysti*
  - n. *toivottavasti*
  - o. *tulinpä*
  - p. *voittehan*

## SECTION D—LISTENING IN

### 1. What Did You Say?

With the other members of the group, give orally your responses to the previous exercises as the Leader calls for them.

### 2. Word Study Check-Up

Give the Finnish for all English equivalents in the *Word Study* as the Leader calls for it.

### 3. Listening In

I. The following letter is written by an American visitor, Bill, to his mother in the States.

Oulu, huhtikuun 3 p:nä, 1945

Äiti kulta!

Saavuın tänne jo maaliskuussa.  
Kaikki oli vielä jäässä ja paljon lunta maassa.  
Olin Helsingissä noin pari viikkoa.  
Kyllä kaikki on totta, mitä olen kuullut tästä "Pohjolan  
Valkeasta Kaupungista."  
Talot eivät kyllä ole suuria kuten siellä, mutta kauniita  
ja valkoisia.  
Ensin tietysti näimme aseman, joka on Eliel Saarisen  
taidetta.  
Olethan kuullut hänestä Amerikassa, sillä hän on hyvin  
tunnettu myöskin siellä.  
Sunnuntai-aamuna menimme kirkkoon.  
Olin hyvin hämmästynyt, sillä kirkko oli niin kaunis ja  
lämmen sisältä.  
Meillä oli sitten pari viikkoa aikaa katsoa kaupunkia.  
Pidin hyvin paljon Eduskuntatalosta ja Konservato-  
riosta.  
Ne ovat hyvin uudenaikaiset ja kauniit niin ulkoa kuin  
sisältä.  
Kävin myöskin tavaratalossa.

Se on aivan keskikaupungilla ja se on vain noin pari  
kadunkulmaa minun hotellistani.  
Ostin sinulle ja isälle sieltä lahjat.  
En sano, mitä ostin, mutta varmaan hämmästyit, sillä  
ne ovat niin suomalaiset.  
Lähetin ne teille pari päivää sitten.  
Myyjätär, joka auttoi minua ostoksissani, oli tyyppillinen  
suomalainen tyttö, ja hyvin kaunis myöskin.  
Hän sanoi, että jos ensi sunnuntaina on hyvä hiihtokeli  
hän lähtee hiihtomatkalle Munkkiniemeen.  
Hän kysyi, jos minä haluaisin lähteä hänen kanssansa.  
Tietysti minä halusin.  
Sinä tiedät millainen on poikasi.  
Sunnuntai-aamuna kello kahdeksan näin hänet hotellini  
ravintolassa.  
Söimme hyvän aamiaisen, kaurapuuroa, muniä ja  
kahvia.  
Kyllä suomalaiset keittävät hyvää kahvia.  
Sitten hiihdimme Munkkiniemeen ja takaisin.  
Se oli ihanin hiihtomatka, minkä minä olen koskaan  
tehnyt.  
Tuulikilla oli myöskin hauskaa.  
Tuulikki on hänen nimensä, ja hän pyysi, että sanoisin  
häntä vain Tuuliksi.  
Englanniksi se tarkoittaa 'wind.'  
Eikö ole ihana nimi?  
Nyt tietysti sanot isälle, että Bill on taas etsinyt itselleen  
toisen tytön.

*Ja tottahan se on taas tällä kertaa.*

*Näethän, että en ole Helsingissä.*

*Tulin tänne Ouluun pari päivää sitten.*

*Minulla oli hyvin hauska matka Tampereen, Jyväskylän  
ja Kuopion kautta tänne.*

*Oulu on paljon pienempi kaupunki kuin Helsinki,  
mutta hauska.*

*Luulen, että menen pian Helsingissä käymään, sillä  
junalippu sinne on hyvin halpa.*

*Lipulla, joka maksaa vain neljäsataa markkaa voi  
tehda matkan ympäri Suomen.*

*Toivon, että isä ja sinä voitte oikein hyvin.*

*Teidän poikanne*

*Bill.*

## SECTION E—CONVERSATION

### 1. Covering the Finnish of Basic Sentences

With the Finnish covered, practice until you can speak the Finnish for each English sentence without hesitation. This is individual study.

### 2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Give the Finnish for all English sentences in the *Basic Sentences* as the Leader calls for it.

### 3. Conversation

1. Call on a friend's friend whom you have been asked to look up when you get to Helsinki. Telephone him for an appointment. He invites you to his home for dinner. You ask for directions to his home and are

told the location. You have some difficulty in locating the right entry and confer with the janitor. You finally find the door, ring the bell. You introduce yourself, are invited to enter. He takes your coat, offers you cigarettes and matches, and asks you what kind of drink you'd like. You ask for a glass of whiskey. Then you both settle down to talk about your common friend.

2. You tell about your friend: he's back in the States on his farm with his family. Describe the various members of his family—what their ages are, their occupations, and so forth.
3. Then tell about yourself: back home you used to be a teacher of languages in a small college. Now you are working with the American Consulate in

Helsinki. You arrived only recently and haven't met many Finns. You spent most of your time with consular officials of various nations (which you list.) You would like, however, to see the town.

4. You discuss the various sights, and your friend's

friend offers to introduce you to some Finns and to take you around to the various entertainment spots, which he describes. You tell him that you're interested in sports of various kinds, and he offers to take you to various races and meets, as well as on a hiking tour next spring.

## SECTION F—CONVERSATION (*Cont.*)

Continue conversation. Additional check-up on the material of the *Basic Sentences* by the Leader if it seems necessary.

### *Review*

Complete check-up on the material of the *Word Study* and *Basic Sentences*.

### **Finder List**

<i>asia</i>	matter <i>or</i> thing
<i>attashea</i>	attaché
<i>edes</i>	even
<i>erehtyä</i>	make a mistake <i>or</i> be mistaken
<i>Filosofian Maisteri</i>	Master of Arts

<i>hella</i>	stove
<i>huoneusto</i>	apartment
<i>huono</i>	bad
<i>hyvänen aika</i>	for goodness sake
<i>Japani</i>	Japan
<i>jää</i>	ice
<i>-(ka)an</i>	emphatic negative suffix
<i>kaasu</i>	gas
<i>kai</i>	probably <i>or</i> perhaps
<i>keittää</i>	to cook
<i>ken</i>	who
<i>kerrassaan</i>	absolutely <i>or</i> positively
<i>kilpi</i>	plate <i>or</i> sign
<i>-kin</i>	emphatic suffix
<i>koettaa</i>	to try
<i>konsulaatti</i>	consulate

<i>konsuli</i>	consul	<i>ranskalainen</i>	French
<i>korjattu</i>	repaired	<i>reilu</i>	straightforward <i>or</i> honest
<i>kun</i>	as <i>or</i> when	<i>ryyppy</i>	drink
<i>kuunnella</i>	to listen to		
<i>lyseo</i>	high school	<i>Saksa</i>	Germany
<i>lähetystö</i>	legation <i>or</i> embassy	<i>siirrettiin</i>	was moved <i>or</i> was transferred
<i>mutista</i>	to mutter	<i>siis</i>	consequently
<i>muuttua</i>	to be moved	<i>soittaa</i>	to ring
<i>naapuri</i>	neighbor	<i>suokaa</i>	allow <i>or</i> grant
<i>no</i>	well	<i>-sti(')</i>	-ly
<i>-nut</i>	suffix	<i>suurlähettiläs</i>	ambassador
<i>näin</i>	like this <i>or</i> so <i>or</i> thus	<i>taivas</i>	heaven
<i>nämä</i>	these	<i>talonmies</i>	janitor
<i>opettaa</i>	to teach	<i>toimia</i>	to work
<i>opettaja</i>	teacher	<i>toivottava</i>	to be hoped for
<i>ovi</i>	door	<i>totisesti</i>	honestly
<i>-pa</i>	emphatic suffix	<i>uutinen</i>	piece of news
<i>pahus</i>	darn it <i>or</i> nuisance	<i>vaiva</i>	trouble <i>or</i> bother
<i>polttaa</i>	to smoke	<i>vaivata</i>	to trouble
<i>porras</i>	stairway <i>or</i> stair	<i>valo</i>	light
<i>radio</i>	radio	<i>voi</i>	oh!
<i>Ranska</i>	France	<i>ystävä</i>	friend

## VISITING A FARM

## SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

*An American, for the first time in Finland, is in Vaasa with his wife, a Finnish girl. They plan a visit to her family's farm.*

## ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS

## FINNISH

*I. Planning**Joe Edwards*

exactly  
Where exactly is your father's farm?

*tarkalleen*  
*Aivan tarkalleen, missä on isäsi maatila?*

*Anna Edwards*

It's fifty kilometers east of Vaasa.

*Se on viisikymmentä kilometriä itään Vaasasta.*

*Joe Edwards*

map  
show  
Show me on the map.

*kartta*  
*näytä*  
*Näytä minulle, missä se on kartalla.*

mark  
Put a mark there.

*merkki*  
*Pane merkki siihen.*

Here it is!

to draw  
circle  
red  
pencil

I'll draw a circle with a red pencil.

road  
Do you know if the roads are any good?

Of course!

condition  
government *or* state  
care

The roads are in very good condition because the government takes good care of them.

to take  
gasoline  
car  
I'll go get the car filled with gas.

early  
We can start early tomorrow morning.

*Anna Edwards*

*Tässä se on!*

*piirtää  
ympyrä  
punainen  
kynä*

*Piirrän ympyrän punaisella kynällä.*

*Joe Edwards*

*tie  
Tiedätkö, jos tiet ovat hyvät?*

*Anna Edwards*

*Tietysti!*

*kunto  
valtio  
huoli*

*Tiet ovat hyvässä kunnossa, sillä valtio pitää hyvän huolen niistä.*

*Joe Edwards*

*ottamaan  
bensini  
auto*

*Menen ottamaan bensiiniä autooni.*

*aikaisin*

*Me voimme lähteä aikaisin huomen aamulla.*

*Anna Edwards*

before  
rooster  
song  
Everything will be ready before the rooster crows.

*ennen  
kukko  
laulu  
Ennen kukon laulua kaikki on valmiina.*

*II. Arriving at the farm*

*Penttilän isäntä welcomes his daughter and his son-in-law at the foot of the steps.*

*Isäntä Penttilä*

to get tired  
You must be tired after your long trip.

*väsyä  
Varmaan olette väsyneitä pitkästä matkasta.*

come  
Come in and have some coffee.

*tulkaa  
Tulkaa sisään kahville.*

after  
field  
After coffee we'll go and see my fields.

*jälkeen  
pelto  
Kahvin jälkeen menemme katsomaan pellojani.*

*III. Inspecting the farm*

*Penttilän isäntä and Joe Edwards step out of the main building.*

*Penttilä*

building  
new  
barn  
That building over there is our new barn.

*rakennus  
uusi  
navetta  
Tuo rakennus tuolla on uusi navettamme.*



cow  
It's for twenty-five cows.

*lehmä*  
*Se on kahdellekymmenelleviidelle lehmälle.*

is milked  
hand  
electricity  
Do you milk them by hand or by electricity, as we do  
in the United States?

*Joe Edwards*

*lypsetään*  
*käsi*  
*sähkö*  
*Lypsetäänkö teillä käsin vai sähköllä, kuten meillä*  
*Yhdysvalloissa?*

By hand.  
Electricity is pretty expensive, and we have only  
twenty cows right now.

*Penttilä*

*Käsin.*  
*Sähkö on kallista, ja meillä on vain kaksikymmentä*  
*lehmää tällä kertaa.*

dairy or creamery  
Do you have your own creamery?

*Joe Edwards*

*meijeri*  
*Onko teillä oma meijeri?*

No.

*Penttilä*

*Ei.*

co-operative  
We send the milk to the co-operative dairy every  
morning.

*osuus-*  
*Maidon lähetämme joka aamu osuusmeijeriin.*

idea or thought  
That's a good idea.

*Joe Edwards*

*ajatus*  
*Se on hyvä ajatus.*

stable  
This is a nice stable.  
For six horses, too!

*talli*  
*Tämähän on kaunis talli.*  
*Ja kuudelle hevoselle.*

at present  
We have only five horses at present.  
to die  
Polle  
Polle died last winter.  
favorite  
He was Anna's favorite horse.

*Penttilä*  
*nykyään*  
*Meillä on vain viisi hevosta nykyään.*  
*kuolla*  
*Polle*  
*Polle kuoli viime talvena.*  
*lempi-*  
*Se oli Annan lempi-hevonen.*

chickenhouse  
What a modern chickenhouse!

*Joe Edwards*  
*kanala*  
*Mikä uudenaikainen kanala!*

We have a hundred chickens.  
Eggs are expensive and the chickens don't eat much.  
pig  
We keep pigs only for our own needs.

*Penttilä*  
*Meillä on sata kanaa.*  
*Munat ovat kalliita ja kanat eivät syö paljoa.*  
*sika*  
*Sikoja meillä on vain omaksi tarpeeksi.*

Joe Edwards

grain  
sort  
to cultivate

*vilja  
laji  
viljellä*

What sort of grain can you cultivate this far north?

*Mitä viljalajeja te voitte näin pohjoisessa viljellä?*

Penttilä

rye  
barley  
wheat

*ruis  
ohra  
vehnä*

Rye, oats, barley and wheat.

*Ruista, kauraa, ohraa ja vehnä.*

Joe Edwards

Just as we do in America.

*Samoja mitä mekin viljelemme Amerikassa.*

Penttilä

forest  
Next week we'll go to see our forest.  
It's about ten kilometers from here.  
pride  
It's the pride of this house.

*metsä  
Ensi viikolla lähdemme katsomaan metsäämme.  
Se on noin kymmenen kilometriä täältä.  
ylpeys  
Se on tämän talon ylpeys.*

### Check Your Pronunciation

*How to pronounce the word spelled 'bensiiini':* For the pronunciation of the letter *b*, see unit 7, page 118. Better educated Guides will pronounce the word as it is spelled, *bensiini* (note that the *s* is spoken as in *so*,

not as in *has*); others will say it as if it were written *pentsiini*. Follow your Guide always and

*Practice 54*

*bensiini*

gasoline

[17-A]

283

## SECTION B—WORD STUDY AND REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

### 1. Word Study

*Comment One—Giving Orders: the -kaa Suffix*

*näytä(')*      *show*                      *pane(')*      *put*

Notice these two forms: the free form of the word to the left is *näyttää*, its stem form *näyttä-*; the free form of the word to the right is *panna*, its stem form *pane-*. If you want to give an order in Finnish to a single person, you must add ' to the stem form though this is not necessarily written. This 'catch' may not always be audible to you, but its presence is shown in two ways. In the first place Ca ~ Cb (see unit 11, comment 4) just as if any other consonant were following the Cb: hence the replacement of *tt* in *näyttä-* by *t* in *näytä(')*, and hence the forms *tee(')* from *tehdä* 'to do', stem *teke-*, or *ala(')* from *alkaa* 'to begin', stem *alka-*. In the second place, if the word following your order begins with a consonant, that consonant will be pronounced double: *pane(')* *päälle* 'put on' is pronounced *paneppäälle*; *mene(')* *matkaasi* 'go on your way' is pronounced *menemmatkaasi*; and so forth. (Note: when the word following your order begins with a vowel, the ' will generally be dropped. In some sections of Finland, however, it will then be pronounced as a 'catch'. Imitate your particular Guide always.)

*antakaa minulle*

give me

*sanokaa minulle*

tell me

Besides giving an order to a single person, you may want to give an order to a number of people ('you all'). In such a case you must add the suffix *-kaa* to the stem (the consonant stem of verbs belonging to the second class). Very rarely the personal suffix for the plural second person, *-tte*, may follow the *-kaa-*, but it's almost always omitted in actual speech: *antaa* 'to give', *anta-*, *antakaa(tte)* 'give'; *viljellä* 'cultivate', *ostakaa* 'buy', and so on.

You may also want to give an order to a number of people including yourself ('let's'). There are two ways of doing this. Rather more rarely, you add *-kaa* to the stem, followed by the personal suffix *-mme*, as in *menkäämme* 'let's go', *piirtäkäämme* 'let's draw'. In actual usage, however, you may expect your Guide to employ quite another form with this meaning, as explained below in comment two.

*Comment Two—The Suffixes -(t)ta('), -(h)xn*

*lähdetään nyt*

let's start now

*joko pian syödään?*

are we going to eat  
soon?

*lypsetään käsin*  
*mennään jalan*

let's milk by hand  
let's go on foot

Study the composition of the form *lähdetään* from the free form *lähteä* 'to start'. The stem form is *lähte-*. To this is added a suffix *-ta(')* (here *-tä(')*). This is followed by *-an*. The stem consonant *-t-* is replaced by a *-d-*. This is the story:

1. The suffix *-(t)ta(')* is added to stems before the *-(h)xn* suffix, the use of which is explained in the next paragraph below. Here we'll take up its form only. This suffix, after a short stem vowel, such as *anta-* (from *antaa* 'to give'), will be *-tta(')*, before which *-a-* and *-ä-* are automatically replaced by *-e-*. The 'catch' will act as a consonant always, and *Ca* will be replaced by *Cb*. Hence *annetta-* (*nt* replaced by *nn*). After two vowels, or after consonant stems in the second group, the suffix will be simply *-ta(')*: *saada* 'to get', *saa-*, *saata-*; *tehdä* 'to do', *teh-*, *tehtä-*. Taking the verbs from the illustrations above, *lähteä* 'to start', *lähte-*, *lähdetä-*; *syödä* 'to eat', *syö-*, *syödä-*; *lypsää* 'to milk', *lypsä-*, *lypsetä-*; and *mennä* 'to go', *men-*, *mennä-*. Note especially the automatic changes in each case. The ' is omitted, however, in the spelling.

2. The suffix *-(h)xn* is a personal verb suffix, always following the stem plus *-(t)ta(')*. The two suffixes combined give a so-called passive meaning to the verb

they are attached to, and are usually translated as 'one does' or 'you do' or 'is being done'. The *-h-* of the suffix almost always drops in actual usage and the value of *-x-* is equal to the vowel that immediately precedes. Hence *lähdetä-* plus *-(h)xn* will become *lähdetähän*, *lähdetään*; *syödä-* plus *-(h)xn* will become *syödähän*, *syödään*; *lypsä-* plus *-(h)xn* will become *lypsetähän*, *lypsetään*; and *mennä-* plus *-(h)xn* will become *mennähän* or *mennään*. This construction is then also used to give an order to several people when you're one of that group. Hence the meaning 'let's go', *mennään*, and so forth. The latter usage is much preferred to that discussed at the end of comment two above.

*konsulimme siirrettiin*    our consul was transferred

Note the verb in this expression. It is a past passive form. The free form of this verb is *siirtää* 'to transfer'. First you add the passive suffix *-(t)ta(')* to the stem *siirtä-*. Due to the ' , the *rt* will be replaced by *rr*. Hence *siirrettä-* (with the automatic change of *-ä-* to *-e-*). The present form would be *siirretähän*, *siirretään*. Add to this the sign of the past *-i-*, and the stem vowel *-ä-* will automatically drop before it: hence *siirretti-*. Now finally add *-(h)xn*, and drop the *-h-*, getting *siirrettiin*. Thus, also *keitettiin* 'it was cooked', *mentiin* 'one went', and so on.

Instead of *me menemme* 'we're going' or *me menimme*

'we went', you may hear your Guide say *me mennään* or *me mentiin*, and so forth, with the same meaning. If your Guide uses these forms, imitate him, and don't be impressed by protests that this form 'isn't literary'.

### *Comment Three—Summary*

1. You have learned four new case suffixes, the *-na*, the *-hxn*, *-seen*, the two *-n* suffixes (one the genitive). You now know twelve altogether.

2. You have learned a number of verb suffixes: *-isi*, *-nut*, *-(t)ta(')(h)xn* and the suffixes for the order giving forms. You also know how to give the negative of a verb in the present and in the past and of an *-isi* form, though you don't know how to give a negative order yet.

3. You have learned two types of *pronouns*: the

personal (*minä* 'I', *sinä* 'you', and so on), and the pronoun *itse* 'self'. Pronouns behave exactly like nouns, and can not be distinguished in form.

4. Among the other new suffixes you have met are *-tar* (feminine suffix), *-sti(')*, and four emphatic suffixes: *-han*, *-pa*, *-kin*, and its negative, *-(ka)an*.

## **2. Covering the English and Finnish of Word Study**

Give the English equivalents of all expressions in the *Word Study* and the Finnish for all the English. This is individual study.

## **3. Review of Basic Sentences**

Further oral practice with the first part of the *Basic Sentences*.

# **SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES (Cont.)**

## **1. Review of Basic Sentences (Cont.)**

Further oral practice with the second part of the *Basic Sentences*.

## **2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences**

Check your knowledge of the meaning of all words

and phrases in the *Basic Sentences*. This is individual study.

## **3. What Would You Say?**

I. Complete the following statements with one of the three solutions offered and then read the complete statement aloud:

1. *Jos tänään on lauantai*  
a. huomenna on maanantai.  
b. eilen oli perjantai.  
c. ensi torstaihin on neljä päivää.

2. *Kun olen väsynyt tahdon*  
a. nukkua.  
b. tanssia.  
c. kävellä.

3. *Kun minulla on päänsärkyä*  
a. menen ostoksille.  
b. käyn hammaslääkärissä.  
c. otan päänsärkylääkettä.

4. *Seitsemän kertaa kuusikymmentäyksi on*  
a. neljäsataakaksikymmentäseitsemän.  
b. kolmesataakahdeksankymmentäkuusi.  
c. satayhdeksänkymmentäviisi.

5. *Jos sisällä on kylmä*  
a. panen lisää puita pesään.  
b. otan saappaat pois jaloistani.  
c. minulla on hyvin lämmin.

6. *Jos minulla olisi talo*  
a. menisin sinne kesälomakseni.  
b. lähettäisin kenkäni suutariin.  
c. tulisin kanssasi elokuviin.

7. *Kun talossa on nyt viiniä.*  
a. lähetän pyykkini ulos.  
b. siellä sataa.  
c. otan ryyppyn.

8. *Veljeni hotellissa on*  
a. kilpa-ajot.  
b. keskuslämmitys.  
c. hiihtokilpailut.

9. *Hän menisi tanssimaan*  
a. mutta hänellä ei ole kenkiä.  
b. jos hänellä olisi hyvät sukset.  
c. jos konsulaatti olisi kaukana asemasta.

10. *Lähtisin laivalla maalle*  
a. jos minulla olisi lomaa.  
b. jos rohdoskaupasta saisi tupakkaa.  
c. mutta minulla on yskää.

II. The words enclosed in parentheses are to be transposed in the order giving form. In some cases there is more than one solution possible without changing the rest of the sentence. Read the sentences aloud in each case.

1. (Tulla) katsomaan meidän uutta navettaamme!  
2. (Päättää) pian tuletko kanssamme konserttiin vai etkö!

3. *Jos olet kotona (soittaa) minulle ensi keskiviikkona!*
4. *Koska meille tulee vieraita tänä iliana (keittää) hyvää kahvia ja tarpeeksi.*
5. *(Opettaa) minuakin tanssimaan!*
6. *(Kuunnella) sinä uutiset ja (sanoa) sitten minulle mitä kuulit!*
7. *(Olla) hyvä ja (sulkea) radio, sillä tahdon puhua puhelimessa!*
8. *Samalla kun menet kaupungille (ostaa) minulle partasaippuaa ja parranajokoneen teriä.*
9. *(Lähetää) äidille sähkösanoma että tulemme kotiin lomalle pariksi päiväksi ensi viikolla!*
10. *(Etsiä) meille kaunis kolmen huoneen huoneusto.*
11. *(Mennä) ja (tuoda) lehmät pellolta.*

12. *Pidän siitä laulusta niin paljon, että (soittaa) se minulle vielä kerran.*

III. Fit the forms in parentheses into the sentence and read the completed statement aloud.

1. *Yliopiston Apteekki (sulkea) kello kahdeksantoista.*
2. *Kun kuolemme (soittaa) meille kirkonkelloja.*
3. *Meille (sanoa) että oli aika lähteä kotiin.*
4. *Huomaan, että naapurissa (keittää) lihalientä.*
5. *Ruotsalaisissa kouluissa (opettaa) kieliä.*
6. *Tavaramme (pakata) tänä aamuna.*
7. *Amerikassa (olla) uudenaikaisia.*
8. *(Mennä) katsomaan tuota rakennusta.*
9. *Maatilalla (viljellä) ruista, kauraa, ohraa ja vehnää.*
10. *Heiltä (kysyä) mitä kieliä Saksassa (puhua).*

## SECTION D—LISTENING IN

### 1. What Did You Say?

With the other members of the group, give orally your responses to the previous exercises as the Leader calls for them.

### 2. Word Study Check-Up

Give the Finnish for all English equivalents in the *Word Study* as the Leader calls for it.



### 3. Listening In

The following story is told by an American who has just returned from a visit to a Finnish farm.

#### *Lauantaipäivä suomalaisella maatilalla*

*Olin ollut Suomessa vain pari kuukautta kun suomalainen sotilastoverini pyysi minut kanssaan isänsä maatilalle Keski-Suomeen.*

*Koska en ollut koskaan enemmin ollut suomalaisella maatilalla sanoin että tulen mielelläni.*

*Niinpä eräänä kesäpäivänä lähdimme ystäväni kanssa autolla Tampereelta itäänpäin.*

*Matkamme päänä oli toverini koti noin sata kilometriä Tampereelta.*

*Puoli matkassa automme meni rikki.*

*Se oli pian korjattu ja taas olimme menossa.*

*Saavuimme Pohjolan tilalle perjantai-iltana.*

*Päärakennus oli kaunis valkoinen talo, ulkorakennukset punaisia.*

*Olimme väsyneitä matkasta ja nukuimme hyvin ensimmäisen yönne.*

*Lauantai-aamulla aikaisin kuulin kun kukko lauloi.*

*Emäntä toi minulle hyvän aamiaisen huoneeseeni.*

*Kun olin syönyt tuli toverini katsomaan olinko jo valmis*

*Yhdessä sitten menimme ulos.*

*Aamu oli lämmin ja rauhallinen.*

*Ensiksi halusin nähdä navetan ja tallin.*

*Navetassa juuri navettatyötöet lypsivät lehmii.*

*Sanoin toverilleni, että Amerikassa aina miehet lypsävät ja hän oli hyvin hämmästynyt.*

*Kysyin montako kertaa päivässä Suomessa lypsetään.*

*Toverini sanoi, että joko kaksi tai kolme kertaa.*

*Kesällä lehmät ovat pellolla päivällä ja yöllä.*

*Talvella niiden täytyy olla navetassa aina, sillä ulkona on liian kylmä.*

*Tallissa oli neljä hevosta.*

*Ne eivät olleet niin kauniita, mutta hyviä työhevosia.*

*Yksi hevosista oli ollut hyvä kilpahevonon nuorempana.*

*Tallista menimme katsomaan sikoja ja kanoja.*

*Kysyin mitä he tekevät kaikilla kananmunilla.*

*Toverini sanoi, että osuuskauppa ostaa munia ja lähettää ne kaupunkeihin.*

*Pian kello olikin jo kaksitoista ja emäntä pyysi meidät päivälliselle.*

*Sen jälkeen lähdimme katsomaan viljapelloja.*

*En ollut koskaan nähnyt niin hyvää ruista ja ohraa.*

*Näin että sinä kesänä viljapellot olivat Pohjolan isännän ylpeys.*

*Iltapäivällä palasimme takaisin taloon.*

*Emäntä sanoi, että sauna on pian lämmin, nythän oli lauantaiilta.*

*Kun miehet palasivat työstä pelloilta, menimme kaikki saunaan yhtäikaa.*

*Saunan jälkeen kävimme uimassa ja olimme kuin uusia ihmisiä.*

*Kaiken tämän jälkeen söin kuin hevonen.*

*Olinhan ollut raittiissa ilmassa monta tuntia.*

*Kuulin että kilometrin päässä oli tanssit.*

*Tietysti halusin mennä sinnekin.*

*Niissä tansseissa näin ensi kerran Katrin. Kaksi vuotta myöhemmin hänestä tuli vaimoni.*

## SECTION E—CONVERSATION

### 1. Covering the Finnish of Basic Sentences

With the Finnish covered, practice until you can speak the Finnish for each English sentence without hesitation. This is individual study.

### 2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Give the Finnish for all English sentences in the *Basic Sentences* as the Leader calls for it.

### 3. Conversation

1. You discuss with a friend the prices of movies, theatres and opera on various days of the week.

Each of you tells an anecdote (pretend it was an

incident in one of the pictures; for example, I saw a good movie the day before yesterday . . . etc. In one place . . . etc.).

2. You're discussing with a friend what each of you would do if he could change his occupation. Your friend says that his ambition has always been to run a hotel. He tells you in great detail what sort of rooms there would be, lighting, heating, elevators, shops, restaurant, how the prices would run, and so forth. Then you tell him what you've always wanted was a farm; describe in detail what you would have in the way of produce and stock if you owned a farm.

3. You're driving along the highway somewhere in Finland. You stop the car and ask an elderly farmer for directions to a certain town. You hand him a pencil and ask him to point out the place on a map. He puts a mark, and tells you how far it is. You

inquire about the condition of the road straight ahead and are assured that it's in fine condition. Finally you ask him for the whereabouts of a filling station and are told that there's one about five kilometers to the right.

## SECTION F—CONVERSATION (*Cont.*)

Continue conversation. Additional check-up on the material of the *Basic Sentences* by the Leader if it seems necessary.

### *Review*

Complete check-up on the material of the *Word Study* and *Basic Sentences*.

### **Finder List**

<i>aikaisin</i>	early
<i>ajatus</i>	idea or thought
<i>auto</i>	car
<i>benssiini</i>	gasoline
<i>ennen</i>	before

<i>huoli</i>	care
<i>-(h)xn</i>	passive personal suffix
<i>jälkeen</i>	after
<i>-kaa</i>	order giving suffix
<i>kanala</i>	chickenhouse
<i>kartta</i>	map
<i>kukko</i>	rooster
<i>kunto</i>	condition
<i>kuolla</i>	to die
<i>kynä</i>	pencil
<i>käsi</i>	hand
<i>laji</i>	sort
<i>laulu</i>	song
<i>lehmä</i>	cow

<i>lempi-</i>	favorite	<i>ruis</i>	rye
<i>lypsää</i>	to milk	<i>sika</i>	pig
<i>meijeri</i>	dairy <i>or</i> creamery	<i>sähkö</i>	electricity
<i>merkki</i>	mark	<i>talli</i>	stable
<i>metsä</i>	forest	<i>tarkalleen</i>	exactly
<i>navetta</i>	barn	<i>tie</i>	road
<i>nykyään</i>	to present	<i>-(t)ta(')</i>	passive suffix
<i>näyttää</i>	to show	<i>uusi</i>	new
<i>ohra</i>	barley	<i>valtio</i>	government <i>or</i> state
<i>osuus-</i>	co-operative	<i>vehnä</i>	wheat
<i>ottamaan</i>	to take	<i>vilja</i>	gain
<i>pelto</i>	field	<i>viljellä</i>	to cultivate
<i>piirtää</i>	to draw	<i>väsyä</i>	to get tired
<i>Polle</i>	Polle	<i>ylpeys</i>	pride
<i>punainen</i>	red	<i>ympyrä</i>	circle
<i>rakennus</i>	building	<i>-'</i>	order giving suffix

## REVIEW

## SECTION A—WHAT DO YOU KNOW IN FINNISH?

*To the Group Leader:* Like units 6 and 12, this unit is a review of all the work done up to date. In general, the procedure will be the same as in those units.

In Section A of this unit are anecdotes followed by a series of statements. The statements which are based on the anecdotes, are to be used like the T-F statements of earlier review units. The Guide is to read the anecdotes and the statements to the group. If you have no Guide, choose, or have the group choose, one of the students to do the reading. The anecdotes and statements will be found in Guide's *Manual*. Each statement is to be read twice and the number of each statement is to be called out so that the members of the group can mark *T* or *F* the corresponding numbers in their books.

After the reading of the anecdote, explain that the first statement will be read as an example. The statement: "*Hotellinjohtajan vaimo oli kuollut*," means: "The hotel manager's wife was dead" and should be marked as *F*, since the story definitely indicates that his wife is alive.

After the quiz is over, correct it with the group as in units 6 and 12.

This unit is another review of the work done up to this point. For the most part, it is like units 6 and 12. The first section will be a true-false quiz. A number of anecdotes in Finnish will be read to you by the Guide or by a member of the group. Listen carefully because after each anecdote there will be read a number of statements about the story you have heard. You will

mark these statements as either *T* or *F*, according to what you have understood about the anecdote. After the first anecdote has been read, the first statement will be given you as a sample.

When all the anecdotes have been read and you have had a chance to mark all the statements, the Guide or Leader will go over the answers with you.

## SECTION B—HOW WOULD YOU SAY IT?

### (Individual Study)

Prepare to give orally the Finnish for each of the following sentences. Do not write anything down.

#### I

1. He's a typical Finnish businessman.
2. Porter, can you help me?
3. I wouldn't be surprised if it had already left.
4. He sat in a smoker.
5. Reserve me a table at the restaurant.
6. Give me that fifth magazine to the left.
7. The suit cases are in the checkroom.
8. I suggest you go by first class.

#### II

1. Do you mean that he got impertinent?
2. This is January; spring will be here in two months.
3. I hope you didn't break your skis.
4. If it were five degrees warmer, it would help a good deal.
5. I prefer whiskey, but I've drunk enough for today.
6. Put the boots on your feet.

7. Walk south.

8. I knew exactly what the teacher meant.

#### III

1. He was Swedish consul in Japan.
2. There are many Russians in France.
3. There's a Norwegian play in the theatre on Thursday.
4. He cares only for horse races and night clubs.
5. There's a German dance band at the movie theatre.
6. By the way, is there a translation?
7. Can we go rowing or do we need a ticket?
8. Salesmen are so stupid!

#### IV

1. Isn't there a janitor in this building?
2. There are many regular guys in the army.
3. The elevator is out of order.
4. What are those things in your hand?
5. For goodness sake, tell me what troubles you.

6. The second man to the right is the military attaché.
7. What's your telephone number?
8. I have a bad cold and a headache.

### V

1. That's a map of France.
2. I see that the government takes good care of your roads.

3. Bring me a box of pencils.
4. I'll mark the road in red for you.
5. Oh, mother, the cow drank the gasoline.
6. The soldiers were in a circle on the field.
7. I'm tired of all these people.
8. The rooster crows at six thirty.

## SECTION C—HOW DID YOU SAY IT?

Quiz by the Leader on the sentences in Section B, asking various members of the group: „*Kuinka te sanotte suomeksi...?*”

## SECTION D—HOW WOULD YOU SAY IT? (Cont.)

### (Individual Study)

Do the following exercises. Read all sentences aloud with correct solutions. Have everything well fixed in your mind, and ready to speak in the next group meeting.

### I

Here is a list of ten verbs. Put each in an order giv-

ing form and make up a complete sentence using each order.

- a. *Syödä*
- b. *Koettaa*
- c. *Toivoa*
- d. *Ostaa*
- e. *Lähteä*

- f. *Tehdä*
- g. *Ymmärtää*
- h. *Katkaista*
- i. *Käydä*
- j. *Kuulla*

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_
7. \_\_\_\_\_
8. \_\_\_\_\_
9. \_\_\_\_\_
10. \_\_\_\_\_

## II

Change each of the following sentences from the negative to the positive.

11. *En mene kesälomalle tänä vuonna.*
12. *Hän ei voinut tulla kanssamme tänä iltana.*
13. *Lippu ei ollut liian kallis.*
14. *Ette voi saada laivaa Jyväskylään täältä.*
15. *Minäkään en pidä pöytäviinasta.*
16. *Hän ei ole voinut loukata jalkaansa.*
17. *Isäni huoneustossa ei ollut keskuslämmitystä.*
18. *Tässä huoneessa ei ole raitista ilmaa.*
19. *Suomalaiset eivät syö hevosenlihaa.*

20. *Hän koetti keittää naapurin hellalla.*
21. *Tässä autossa ei ollut bensiiniä.*
22. *Valtio ei tee uusia teitä.*
23. *Puhelimet eivät tarvitse sähköä.*
24. *Tämä konjakki ei ole hintansa arvoista kullassa.*
25. *Upseerilla ei voisi olla koiraa.*

## III

Here are two lists of words. By adding the genitive suffix (singular or plural, as the case may be) to each word in the column to the left you can relate it to the corresponding word in the series to the right. Take each of the ten combinations so gained and use them in complete sentences.

- |                         |                     |
|-------------------------|---------------------|
| a. <i>emäntä</i>        | a. <i>tytär</i>     |
| b. <i>hevonen</i>       | b. <i>nimi</i>      |
| c. <i>housut</i>        | c. <i>hinta</i>     |
| d. <i>tarjoilijatar</i> | d. <i>juomaraha</i> |
| e. <i>vihannekset</i>   | e. <i>kanssa</i>    |
| f. <i>huoneustot</i>    | f. <i>vuokrat</i>   |
| g. <i>rauhallinen</i>   | g. <i>talo</i>      |
| h. <i>sika</i>          | h. <i>liha</i>      |
| i. <i>sotilaat</i>      | i. <i>morsiamet</i> |
| j. <i>myymälät</i>      | j. <i>johtaja</i>   |



Sentences:

26. \_\_\_\_\_
27. \_\_\_\_\_
28. \_\_\_\_\_
29. \_\_\_\_\_
30. \_\_\_\_\_
31. \_\_\_\_\_
32. \_\_\_\_\_
33. \_\_\_\_\_
34. \_\_\_\_\_
35. \_\_\_\_\_

#### IV

The following sentences contain English words in parentheses, which should be translated and fitted into their respective contexts.

36. *Tein tämän takin aivan* (with my own hands).

37. *Olin* (saleslady) *tavaratalossa Helsingissä.*
38. *Tutustuin Saksan* (ambassador) *Japanissa.*
39. *Haluaisin muuttaa* (to this modern building).
40. *Hän pyysi minua* (to the phone).
41. (During a cold summer) *vija ei tule hyvää.*
42. *Äiti sai kellon* (as a gift) *isältä.*
43. *Voimme mennä* (to the third floor) *hissillä.*
44. *Mistä voin saada uusia teriä* (for my razor).
45. *Mennäänkö* (to the stores) *ensin ja sitten* (to the theatre)?
46. (On the sixth day) *alkoi sataa lunta.*
47. *Tulin tähän maahan* (last spring).
48. (Being typical Finnish girls) *emme pidä nenäkäistä herroista.*
49. (Does the price of the ticket include) *myös laivamatka?*
50. *Varmaankaan et palaa Renon matkalta hänen* (wife).

## SECTION E—HOW DID YOU SAY IT?

Quiz by the Leader on the work you did in Section D. Keep your book closed. If you have a Guide, he will check on pronunciation and the correctness of

your Finnish; if not, other members of your group will criticize.

## SECTION F—CONVERSATION REVIEW

The members of the group will carry on short conversations lasting from two to five minutes. Everyone should take part as often as possible. Remember to begin and end conversations with the proper greeting. By this time you have more words to use and more subjects to talk about. The group will be given one hundred minutes and you should be able to talk longer on one topic. Don't be afraid to bring in other things that you can think of and talk about besides those suggested here. Let the talk be as natural as possible, try to answer what is asked you and to keep the conversation moving by asking questions in turn.

### *Suggested Topics:*

1. Going for a ride in a car.

(Include: talk about the scenery, farms, towns, churches, etc. Stopping to ask directions at a

filling station; buying gas, or a drink, or ice cream, and drive on. The weather worries you, and finally it starts to rain, so you return home.)

2. Discuss the sports of various nations.

(Include: skiing, rowing, swimming, walking, horse-races, dancing, as done in America, Finland, Sweden, Germany, France, Japan.)

3. Visiting.

(Include: courtesy call at your consul's home; old friend of your father's; exchanges of polite greeting, offer and acceptance of smokes and drinks; talk of languages you speak with possible view to a job at the consulate; mention various nations, but getting evasive answers; appointment for next week to the ambassador at his office.)

4. At a railroad station.

(Include: buying tickets, asking for places on a map, talking to the porter, getting reservations, buying magazines and candy.)

5. Going rowing.

(Include: preparations, hiring a boat, going on lake, resting, swimming, eating food brought along, having drinks.)

6. On a farm.

(Include: farmer showing you around; seeing the barns and stables, the sauna, the fields, the animals, the dairy, talk about the various grains and the influence of the seasons and the weather.)

7. Skiing.

(Include: getting dressed warmly, talking about the snow and other skiing conditions, coming back and sitting around the fire talking about different things.)

8. Meeting a girl on the train.

(Include: offering a cigarette, candy, or magazines; introductions; talking about your home town, your relatives, the weather, countries you've been to; asking for her address and phone number and promise to look her up.)

9. Trying to find someone.

(Include: asking for directions, finding house and getting information from the janitor; walking around to right entrance, but having trouble finding right door.)

## POSTI

OSA<sup>3</sup> A—PERUSLAUSEET<sup>4</sup>

*Herra ja rouva Alanne keskusteleval<sup>5</sup> poikansa ulkomaan<sup>6</sup> matkasta ja hänen postinsa lähettämisestä.<sup>7</sup>*

## ENGLANNIKSI

## SUOMEKSI

*Rouva Alanne*

When did you say George arrives in Sweden?

*Mihin aikaan sinä sanoit, että Yrjö saapuu Ruotsiin?*

*Herra Alanne*

to reach one's destination

He ought to be there around seven-thirty tonight.

*olla perillä*

*Hänen pitäisi olla perillä noin puoli kahdeksan tänä iltana.*

<sup>1</sup>Starting with this unit, more and more headings and directions will be given regularly in Finnish. You will find the meanings of the new words in footnotes running consecutively through each unit and again in the Finder List. Forms that were previously explained will be given in their free form, others in the form in which they occur in the text. *Jakso* 'part'.

<sup>2</sup>*Luku* 'chapter'.

<sup>3</sup>*Osa* 'section'.

<sup>4</sup>Compound word; *perus* 'basis', *lause* 'sentence'.

<sup>5</sup>*Keskustella* 'to converse'.

<sup>6</sup>Compound word; *ulkomaa* 'foreign country' or 'abroad'.

<sup>7</sup>*Lähetäminen* 'sending'.

*Rouva Alanne*

case  
to cross  
border

*tapaus  
ylittää  
raja*

In that case he has crossed the Finnish border long ago.

*Siinä tapauksessa hän on ylittänyt Suomen rajan jo  
kauan sitten.*

*Herra Alanne*

clear  
Stockholm

*selvä  
Tukholma*

Well, obviously, from our border it's still many an  
hour's trip to Stockholm.

*Sehän on selvä asia, rajaltammehan on vielä monen  
tunnin matka Tukholmaan.*

But what'll we do with his mail?

*Mutta mitä me teemme hänen postinsa kanssa.*

*Rouva Alanne*

letter  
cover  
to forward *or* to turn *or* to translate

*kirje  
kuori  
kääntää*

Put it in an envelope and forward it to George today.

*Pane ne kirjekuoreen ja käännä ne tänä päivänä Yrjölle.*

*Herra Alanne*

air mail

*lentoposti*

But don't you think it's better to send his mail by air,

*Eikö luule, että on parasta lähettää hänen kirjeensä  
lentopostissa,*

to continue

*jatkaa*

so he'll receive it before he continues his trip?

*niin hän saa ne ennenkuin hän jatkaa matkaansa?*

*Rouva Alanne*

Denmark  
If I were you, I'd send his letters to Denmark.

address  
You have his address, don't you, and they'd be there  
before him.

registered  
Besides, I'd send his letters registered.

*Tanska*  
*Minä sinuna lähettäisin hänen kirjeensä Tanskaan.*

*osoite*  
*Sinullahan on hänen osoitteensa ja ne olisivat siellä  
ennen häntä.*

*sisäänkirjoitettu*  
*Sitäpaitsi lähettäisin hänen kirjeensä sisäänkirjoitettuna  
kirjeenä.*

*Herra Alanne*

How much do you think it costs?

to collect  
stamp  
different  
worth

George is quite a stamp collector and I'd like to put  
different denominations on his envelope.

yellow  
blue

He asked for yellow and blue stamps, didn't he?

*Kuinka paljon sinä luulet että se maksaa?*

*koota*  
*postimerkki*  
*eri*  
*arvoinen*

*Yrjöhän kokoaa postimerkkejä ja haluaisin panna  
eriarvoisia merkkejä hänen kirjekuoreensa.*

*keltainen*  
*sininen*

*IIänhän pyysi keltaisia ja sinisiä merkkejä?*

*Rouva Alanne*

That's your business!

*Se on sinun asiasi!*

package  
to take  
office  
as well as

I've a package for him ready and I'd like you to take  
the letters along with the package to the Post Office.

Very well.

clerk  
to help

I'll take your package and ask the postal clerk to help  
me.

anyway  
to fill out  
form *or* blank  
with all  
with particulars

Anyway, I'll have to fill out a blank package form  
with all the particulars,

sender  
receiver  
contents  
and so on

such as the sender's and receiver's name, the contents  
of the package, and so on.

<sup>8</sup>Abbreviated as *j.n.e.* 'etc.'

*paketti*  
*viedä*  
*toimisto*  
*niin . . . kuin*

*Minulla on hänelle paketti valmiina ja tahtoisin että  
veisit niin kirjeet kuin paketinkin tänään postiloi-  
mistoon.*

*Herra Alanne*

*Hyvä on.*

*virkailija*  
*auttamaan*

*Vien pakettisi ja pyydän postivirkailijaa auttamaan  
minua.*

*kuitenkin*  
*täyttää*  
*kaavake*  
*kaikkine*  
*yksityiskohtineen*

*Minun täytyy kuitenkin täyttää postipakettikaavake  
kaikkine yksityiskohtineen,*

*lähettäjä*  
*vastaanottaja*  
*sisältö*  
*ja niin edespäin<sup>8</sup>*

*kuten lähettäjän ja vastaanottajan nimen, paketin  
sisällön, j.n.e.*

*Rouva Alanne*

value

I think that when one sends a package abroad, they want to know its value.

to insure *or* to assure

And, by the way, it's best to insure it, too.

*arvo*

*Minä luulen, että kun lähettää paketin ulkomaille, he tahtovat tietää paketin arvon.*

*vakuuttaa*

*Ja kesken kaiken parasta on, että vakuutat sen myöskin.*

*Herra Alanne*

Well, then I'll call up the Post Office first and find out about all these things. What was their telephone number?

*Sitten minä soitankin ensin postitoimistoon ja otan selvän kaikista näistä asioista. Mikä heidän puhelinnumeronsa olikaan?*

*Rouva Alanne*

directory

I don't know; look in the phone directory, you'll find it there.

*luettelo*

*En minä tiedä, katso puhelinluettelosta, siinähan se on.*

*Herra Alanne*

That boy is sure a lot of trouble.

*Kyllä siitä pojasta on vaivaa.*

to wire

perhaps

I suppose it's best to wire him so the boy knows we are sending him mail to Denmark.

*sähköittää*

*kyllä kai*

*Kyllä kai meidän on parasta sähköittää hänelle, että poika tietää, että lähetämme hänelle postia Tanskaan.*

*Rouva Alanne*

What are you muttering about there all by yourself?

*Mitä sinä mutiset siellä yksinäsi?*



*Herra Alanne*

to think  
I was just thinking that I'll wire George so he can  
expect his mail.

*ajatella*  
*Ajattelin tässä vain, että lähetän sähkösanoman Yrjölle,*  
*niin hän voi odottaa postiansa.*

*Rouva Alanne*

Do that!

*Tee se!*

*Monta tuntia myöhemmin*

*Herra Alanne*

Oh, I'm tired.  
I had to wait at the Post Office an hour and a half, but  
I got everything cleared up.

*Voi kun minä olen väsynyt.*  
*Minun täytyi odottaa postitoimistossa puolitoista tuntia,*  
*mutta sainpa kuin sainkin kaiken selväksi.*

*Rouva Alanne*

That's good.  
I have coffee for you on the stove.

*Sepä hyvä.*  
*Minulla on sinulle kahvia hellalla.*

to tell  
Now, tell me how everything went and why you were  
out so long.

*kertoa*  
*Kerro nyt minulle miten kaikki meni ja miksi olit niin*  
*kauan.*

*Herra Alanne*

First, of course, I went to the Post Office.  
I filled out all the forms and that took time.

*Menin tietysti ensin postitoimistoon.*  
*Täytin kaikki kaavakkeet ja siinä meni aikaa.*

And I'll tell you, it certainly is expensive to send  
letters by air mail.

especially  
Especially when there are a great many of them.

*Ja sen minä sanon, että se tulee hyvin kalliiksi lähettää  
kirjeitä lentopostissa.*

*varsin  
Varsinkin kun niitä on paljon.*

Did you insure the package?

*Rouva Alanne*

*Vakuutitko sinä sen paketin?*

Sure.

*Herra Alanne*

*Vakuutin.*

at the latest  
And the postal clerk said George would get the letters  
and the package on Thursday, at the latest.

*viimeistään  
Ja postivirkailija sanoi, että Yrjö saa kirjeet ja paketin  
viimeistään torstaina.*

happy or glad  
I'm glad you went to the Post Office.

*Rouva Alanne*

*iloinen  
Kyllä minä olen iloinen, että kävit postitoimistossa.*

near  
If you'd taken those letters to the nearest mail box,  
I'm sure that he wouldn't have gotten them before  
next week.

*lähellä  
Jos olisit vienyt ne kirjeet tuohon lähimpään postilaatik-  
koon, olen varma, että hän ei olisi saanut niitä ennen-  
kuin ensi viikolla.*

## SECTION B—WORD STUDY AND REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

### 1. Word Study

*Comment One—The Suffix -ta(')*

*or*

*How to Build Free Forms from Stems*

Reread in this connection the discussion of verb stems in unit 8 and thereafter.

<i>mutista</i>	to mutter	<i>korjata</i>	to repair
<i>tarvita</i>	to need	<i>varata</i>	to reserve

The suffix *-ta(')*, meaning 'to do' and so forth, is added to the consonant stem of two syllable stems: *mutise-*, *mutis-*, *mutista*; because of the ', consonant stems ending in *-t* drop their ending: *korjat-ta(')* is replaced by *korja-ta*, *tarvit-ta(')* is replaced by *tarvi-ta*, *varat-ta(')* is replaced by *vara-ta*, and so forth.

<i>viljellä</i>	to cultivate	<i>panna</i>	to put
-----------------	--------------	--------------	--------

The *-t-* of the suffix *-ta(')* is replaced by *-l-* after stems ending in *-l*, by *-n-* after stems ending in *-n* (and by *-r-* after stems ending in *-r*).

<i>jatkaa</i>	to continue	<i>toimia</i>	to work
<i>erehtyä</i>	to make a mistake	<i>toivoa</i>	to hope

After a short, unstressed vowel (that is, in a syllable other than the first), the *-t-* of the *-ta(')* suffix drops out: *jatka-ta(')* is replaced by *jatkaa*, *toimi-ta(')* is replaced by *toimia*, *erehty-tä(')* is replaced by *erehtyä*, *toivo-ta(')* is replaced by *toivoa*.

<i>tuoda</i>	to bring	<i>saada</i>	to get
<i>syödä</i>	to eat	<i>viedä</i>	to take

After a stem of a single syllable, the *-t-* of the suffix *-ta(')* is replaced by *-d-*: *tuo-ta(')* is replaced by *tuoda*, *saa-ta(')* is replaced by *saada*, *syö-tä(')* is replaced by *syödä*, *vie-tä(')* is replaced by *viedä*. Note that this same replacement of *-t-* by *-d-* takes place after any stem ending in *-oi-*. Recall also these two verbs: *nähdä* 'to see' and *tehdä* 'to do'.

<i>minun tietääkseni olet</i>	to my knowledge you're
<i>oikeassa</i>	right

Study this sentence carefully. Note the construction of the form *tietääkseni*: *tietä-tä(')*, *tietää* 'to know'; this is followed by the case suffix *-ksi*; this, in turn, must be followed by a personal suffix (here *-ni*, before which the *-i-* of *-ksi* is replaced always by *-e-*). Note that the speaker of this sentence (or, its 'subject') is *minä*, stem *minu-*; the subject of a sentence containing a

form of the *tietääkseni* type bears the genitive suffix (see unit 14, pages 237-8). Now examine these further examples:

(*minun*) *luullakseni hän on kaupungissa*

in my opinion he's in town

*niin sanoakseni hän on sika*

he's a pig, so to speak

*kirjoittaakseni sinulle, sinun täytyy kirjoittaa minulle ensin*

if you want me to write you, you'd better write me first

*ollakseni hyvä, teen sen*

to be good, I'll do it

Learn especially the forms *luullakseni* 'in my opinion', and *sanoakseni* 'so to speak'. Other verbs are generally used with the meaning 'that I', as in *kirjoittaakseni* 'that I write', *ollakseni* 'that I be', *viedäkseni* 'that I take', and so on.

#### Comment Two—The Suffix *-ma*

*käyn ostamassa*

I'm going to buy

*olin hiihtämässä*

I went to ski or I was skiing

Note the forms *ostamassa* 'to buy' and *hiihtämässä* 'to ski'. The suffix *-ma* follows always the vowel stem, *osta-* (from *ostaa* 'to buy'), *hiihtä-* (from *hiihtää* 'to ski'). When it is followed by the case suffix *-ssa* (see unit 3, page 55), the general meaning is simply 'action you're engaged in'. Further examples: *kävin pyytämässä häneltä makeisia* 'I went to ask him for some sweets', *olin tanssimassa eilen* 'I went dancing yesterday' (or 'I went to dance . . .').

*lähdetään katsomaan*

let's go to see

*menen tassimaan*

I'm going to dance

*tahtoo mennä soutelemaan*

he wants to go rowing

Note the forms *katsomaan* 'to see', *tanssimaan* 'to dance', *soutelemaan* 'rowing' or 'to row'. The suffix *-ma* follows, as always, the vowel stem, *katso-* (from *katsoa* 'to look at'), *tanssi-* (from *tanssia* 'to dance'), *soutele-* (from *soudella* 'to be rowing'). When it is followed by the case suffix *-(h)xn* (see unit 15, pages 252-3), the general meaning is literally or figuratively motion to perform an action, or 'with the purpose of . . .-ing'. Note these further examples:

*menen kertomaan siitä hänelle*

I'm going to tell him about it

*pyysin häntä minua auttamaan*

I asked him to help me

*menisin korjaamaan hänen* I'd go to repair his stove,  
*hellansa, jos . . .* if . . .

Certain other case suffixes, such as *-sta*, *-lla*, *-lla* will also occur following the *-ma* suffix, but you have as yet no examples of these.

*kuolema*

death

The suffix *-ma*, when added to certain verbs, such as *kuolla* 'to die' (*kuole-*), will turn the verb into a noun. Thus, *sanoa* 'to tell', *sanoma* 'report' or 'speaking'.

## SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES (*Cont.*)

### 1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

Further oral practice with the second half of the *Basic Sentences*.

### 2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences

Check your knowledge of the meaning of all words and phrases in the *Basic Sentences*. This is individual study.

### 3. What Would You Say?

I. With the vocabulary that you have, you should be able to answer questions on a general subject

### 2. Covering English and Finnish of Word Study

Give the English equivalents of all expressions in the *Word Study* and the Finnish for all English. This is individual study.

### 3. Review of Basic Sentences

Further oral practice with the first half of the *Basic Sentences*.

without expecting to find the exact answer in the *Basic Sentences*. The Guide or the group as a whole should check to determine whether or not your answer makes sense. Prepare *orally* answers to the following:

1. *Monesko päivä on tänään?*
2. *Tiedätkö te onko Suomessa talvella paljon lunta?*
3. *Kuunteletteko te radiota joka ilta?*
4. *Pidätkö te näytelmistä tai konserteista?*
5. *Onko Amerikassa vuokratilojen ovissa nimikilvet tai ovinumerot?*
6. *Tiedätkö te kuinka monta sotilasta on amerikkalaisessa armeijassa?*

7. *Minä on teidän lempi-toimenne?*
8. *Osaatteko te tarkalleen sanoa, missä kotinne on kartalla?*
9. *pitääkö valtio teistä huolen Amerikassa?*
10. *Mitä viljalajeja, Amerikassa, viljellään?*

II. Substitute the appropriate forms for the stem forms in parentheses below.

1. *Kävin eilen (katso-) kaupunkia.*
2. *Menimme myöhemmin ravintolaan (tanssi-).*

3. *Kun lähdimme ravintolasta menimme (syö-).*
4. *Tulin (kirjotta-) pitkän kirjeen.*
5. *He menivät (keskustel-, keskustele-) asiasta.*
6. *(Luul-, luule-) autoni on hyvässä kunnossa.*
7. *(Tek-, teke-) tämän oikein, sinun täytyy auttaa minua.*
8. *Hän tuli (esitele-, esitel-) minut tälle miehelle.*
9. *Tulin (pyytä-) liian paljon.*
10. *Tulin (saa-) paljon rahaa tuosta työstä.*

## SECTION D—LISTENING IN

### 1. What Did You Say?

With the other members of the group, give orally your responses to the previous exercises as the Leader calls for them.

### 2. Word Study Check-Up

Give the Finnish for all English equivalents in the *Word Study* as the Leader calls for it.

### 3. Listening In

I. *Postitoimistossa maalla.*

310 [19-D]

*Postineiti*

*No, hyvää päivää emäntä.*

*Mitä teille kuuluu?*

*Tehän saitte eilen kirjeen Amerikasta.*

*Mitä se teidän Yrjönne kertoo sieltä?*

*Emäntä*

*Yrjö sanoo, että hän on muuttanut asumaan Indianan valtioon.*

*Sen pitäisi olla keski-lännessä.*

*Postineiti*

*Joko Yrjöllä on perhettä?  
Hänhän on ollut niin kauan naimisissa.*

*Emäntä*

*Tässä kirjeessä hän juuri kertoo, että hänellä on vuoden  
vanha poika.*

*He ovat antaneet sille suomalaisen nimenkin Lauri  
Kalervo.*

*Heillä on nyt oma maatilansa ja he tulevat toimeen  
oikein hyvin.*

*Postineiti*

*Aikooko Yrjö tulla pian kotona käymään?  
Siitähän on pitkä aika kun hän viimeksi kävi Suomessa.*

*Emäntä*

*Kyllä Yrjö haluaisi tulla, mutta matka on pitkä ja kallis.  
Minä tässä juuri haluaisin panna postiin hänelle kir-  
jeen.*

*Kuinka paljon siihen menee postimerkkejä?*

*Postineiti*

*Tahdotteko lähettää hänen kirjeensä lentopostissa?  
Se minisi sinne kahdeksassa päivässä.  
Ja maksaa noin yksitoista markkaa.*

*Emäntä*

*No, pannaan se sitten lentopostissa.*

*Yrjö sanoi että hän on lähettänyt meille paketinkin,  
mutta se kai saapuu myöhemmin.*

*Postineiti*

*Kyllä minä soitan teille heti, kun se tulee perille.*

*Ja tässä on teidän tämän päivän postinne.*

*Emäntä*

*Kiitoksia paljon.*

*II. Johtaja Vuori keskustelelee tohtori Heinon kanssa  
ulkomaan matkastaan.*

*Tohtori Heino*

*Sinähän olit ulkomailla viime kesänä!*

*Missä sinä kävit?*

*Johtaja Vuori*

*Minä kävin Ruotsissa, Tanskassa, Saksassa ja Ran-  
skassa.*

*Tohtori Heino*

*Menitkö sinä laivalla?*

*Johtaja Vuori*

*Menin lentokoneella<sup>9</sup> Tukholmaan ja sieltä laivalla Saksaan.*

*Tohtori Heino*

*Kuinka pitkä on junamatka Ranskan rajalle?*

*Johtaja Vuori*

*Yhden yön ja päivän. Saavuin Pariisiin aamulla.*

*Tohtori Heino*

*Ranskastako sinä ostit autosi?*

*Johtaja Vuori*

*Kyllä, ja ajoin koko matkan takaisin kotiin.*

*Se tuli hyvin halvaksi, sillä autoni ei syö paljon bensiiniä.*

*Tohtori Heino*

*Arvasin sen.*

*Varmaankin pidit kotimatkastasi.*

*Johtaja Vuori*

*Olet aivan oikeassa.*

*Näin niin paljon enemmän näistä maista, kun tulin takaisin, kun matkallani sinne.*

*Tohtori Heino*

*Minäkin haluaisin kerran tehdä sen matkan.*

## SECTION E—CONVERSATION

### 1. Covering the Finnish of the Basic Sentences

With the Finnish covered, practice until you can speak the Finnish for each English sentence without hesitation. This is individual study.

### 2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Give the Finnish for all English sentences in the *Basic Sentences* as the Leader calls for it.

---

<sup>9</sup>*Lentokone* 'airplane'; literally, *lento* 'flight', *kone* 'machine'.



### 3. Conversation

1. Two soldiers have just received a package in the mails. They open it and see it is from home, with a lot of food-stuffs inside, candy, tobacco, cigarettes, a pipe, and so forth. Beneath a bit of cloth they find—some whiskey.
2. A gentleman expects a phone call from his son, who is abroad, and discusses with a friend what his son is doing in the foreign country (he has entered the ski races on behalf of his own country). The father points out on a map the places his son has visited. Instead of a phone call, finally, a tele-

gram comes, asking the father to meet him at the station tonight at quarter past seven by car, because he's bringing home a big package for his mother. The father decides to stop off on the way to the station to buy some tickets at the theatre.

3. A asks a stranger in the street to direct him to the post office. The other gives him the address, explaining its position in relation to some well known building. A finally finds the place, goes in, and buys a number of stamps. He also sends a telegram home, thanking his parents for a package he has just received.

## SECTION F—CONVERSATION (*Cont.*)

Continue conversation. Additional check-up on the material of the *Basic Sentences* by the Leader if it seems necessary.

### *Review*

Complete check-up on the material of the *Word Study* and *Basic Sentences*.

### Finder List

<i>ajatella</i>	to think
<i>arvo</i>	value
<i>arvoinen</i>	worth

<i>eri</i>	different
<i>iloinen</i>	happy or glad
<i>jakso</i>	part
<i>ja niin edespäin (j.n.e.)</i>	and so forth (etc.)
<i>jatkaa</i>	to continue
<i>kaavake</i>	form or blank
<i>kaikkine</i>	with all
<i>keltainen</i>	yellow
<i>kertoa</i>	to tell

<i>keskustella</i>	to converse	<i>raja</i>	border
<i>kirje</i>	letter	<i>selvä</i>	clear
<i>koota</i>	to collect	<i>sininen</i>	blue
<i>kuitenkin</i>	anyway	<i>sisältö</i>	contents
<i>kuori</i>	cover	<i>sisäänkirjoitettu</i>	registered
<i>kylläkai</i>	perhaps	<i>sähköttää</i>	to wire
<i>kääntää</i>	to forward <i>or</i> to turn <i>or</i> to translate	<i>Tanska</i>	Denmark
<i>lentokone</i>	airplane	<i>tapaus</i>	case
<i>lentoposti</i>	air mail	<i>-ta(')</i>	verb suffix
<i>luettelo</i>	directory	<i>toimisto</i>	office
<i>luku</i>	chapter	<i>Tukholma</i>	Stockholm
<i>lähellä</i>	near	<i>täyttää</i>	to fill out
<i>lähettäjä</i>	sender	<i>ulkomaa</i>	foreign country <i>or</i> abroad
<i>lähettäminen</i>	sending	<i>vakuuttaa</i>	to insure <i>or</i> to assure
<i>-ma</i>	verb suffix	<i>varsin</i>	especially
<i>niin . . . kuin</i>	as well as	<i>vastaanottaja</i>	receiver
<i>olla perillä</i>	to reach one's destination	<i>viedä</i>	to take
<i>osa</i>	section	<i>viimeistään</i>	at the latest
<i>osoite</i>	address	<i>virkaileja</i>	clerk
<i>paketti</i>	package	<i>yksityiskohtineen</i>	with particulars
<i>peruslause</i>	basic sentence	<i>ylittää</i>	to cross
<i>postimerkki</i>	stamp		

PANKISSA

OSA A—PERUSLAUSEET

*Sotilas puhuu hotellinomistajan kanssa.*

—ENGLANNIKSI—

—SUOMEKSI—

*Sotilas*

Please give me my bill.

*Olkaa hyvä, antakaa minulle laskuni.*

*Hotellinomistaja*

What's your name, please?

*Mikä on teidän nimenne?*

*Sotilas*

Frank Miller.

*Frank Miller.*

My room number is thirty-nine.

*Huoneeni numero on kolmekymmentäyhdeksän.*

key

*avain*

Here's my key.

*Tässä on avaimeni.*

*Hotellinomistaja*

to remember

*muistaa*

I remember now, you came two weeks ago.

*Nyt minä muistan, te tulitte kaksi viikkoa sitten.*

satisfied  
service  
I hope you're satisfied with the service.

Yes, I'm well satisfied.  
reasonable  
Your prices are very reasonable.  
first class *or* first rate  
And your restaurant is first class.  
to regret *or* to be sorry  
with  
I'm sorry I haven't enough money on me.

to accept  
check  
Will you accept a check?

to be afraid  
impossible  
I'm afraid that's impossible.  
I can't accept it because we don't know you.

Well, where's the nearest bank?  
316 [20-A]

*tyytyväinen*  
*palvelus*  
*Toivon että olette tyytyväinen palvelukseen.*

*Sotilas*

*Kyllä, olen hyvin tyytyväinen.*  
*kohtuullinen*  
*Hintanne ovat hyvin kohtuulliset.*  
*ensiluokkainen*  
*Ja ravintolanne ensiluokkainen.*  
*olla pahoillansa*  
*mukana*  
*Olen pahoillani, että minulla ei ole tarpeeksi rahaa*  
*mukanani.*  
*hyväksyä*  
*sekki*  
*Hyväksyttekö te sekin?*

*Hotellinomistaja*

*peljätä*  
*mahdoton*  
*Pelkään, että se on mahdotonta.*  
*En voi hyväksyä sitä, sillä emme tunne teitä.*

*Sotilas*

*Missä on lähin pankki?*

*Hotellinomistaja*

It's two blocks to the right from here.  
Opposite that co-operative store.

*Se on kaksi kadunkulmaa oikealle tästä.  
Vastapäätä tuota osuusliikettä.*

*Sotilas*

I'll be back in a quarter of an hour.

*Palaan neljännestantunnissa.*

servant  
Have the porter bring my suitcases down in the  
meantime.

*palvelija  
Antakaa palvelijan tuoda minun laukkuni alas sillä  
aikaa.*

*Kadulla*

*Sotilas*

Excuse me, I'm a stranger in town.  
I'd like to know where the bank is.

*Anteeksi, olen vieras kaupungissa.  
Haluaisin tietää, missä on pankki.*

to get lost  
I lost my way.

*eksyä  
Eksyin matkalla.*

to advise  
Could you direct me?

*neuvoa  
Voitteko te neuvoa minua?*

*Poliisi*<sup>1</sup>

wrong  
direction  
You're walking in the wrong direction.

*väärä  
suunta  
Olette menossa väärään suuntaan.*

<sup>1</sup>*Poliisi* 'police' or 'policeman'.

to turn  
Turn back and walk two blocks to the left and then  
two more to the right.

*kääntyä*  
*Kääntykää takaisin ja kävelkää kaksi kadunkulmaa*  
*vasemmalle ja sitten toiset kaksi oikealle.*

Thank you very much.

*Sotilas*  
*Kiitoksia paljon.*

You're welcome.

*Poliisi*  
*Ei ansaitse.*

to change  
I'd like to cash this check.

*Pankissa*  
*Sotilas*  
*vaihtaa*  
*Haluaisin vaihtaa tämän sekin.*

account  
Do you have an account with us?

*Kassaneiti*  
*tili*  
*Onko teillä tili täällä?*

No, I don't.

*Sotilas*  
*Ei minulla ole.*

to prove  
identification  
Can you identify yourself?

*Kassaneiti*  
*todistaa*  
*henkilöllisyys*  
*Voitteko todistaa henkilöllisyytenne?*

natural  
Naturally!

to address *or* to point  
Here is a letter addressed to me.

cross  
It's from the American Red Cross.

card  
photograph  
We can only accept an identification card with a  
photo on it.

that kind  
Have you got one?

I think so.

official  
company  
commander  
I have an official card from my company commander.

That's good.

*Sotilas*

*luonnollinen*  
*Luonnollisesti!*

*osoittaa*  
*Tässä on minulle osoitettu kirje.*

*risti*  
*Se on Amerikan punaiselta ristiltä.*

*Kassaneiti*

*kortti*  
*valokuva*  
*Voimme vain hyväksyä henkilöllisyyskortin valokuvan*  
*kanssa.*

*sellainen*  
*Onko teillä sellaista?*

*Sotilas*

*Luulen, että minulla on.*

*virallinen*  
*komppania*  
*päällikkö*  
*Minulla on virallinen kortti komppanian päälliköltä.*

*Kassaneiti*

*Se on hyvä.*

*Sotilas*

to hurry  
I must hurry up; I see lots of people are waiting.

*kiiruhtaa*  
*Minun täytyy kiiruhtaa sillä näen paljon ihmisiä odottamassa.*

*Kassaneiti*

hurry  
Take your time, sir.

*kiire*  
*Ei ole kiirettä, herra.*

*Sotilas*

to find  
I can't find it now.  
ahead *or* before  
Excuse me perhaps you'd care to step ahead.

*löytää*  
*En löydä sitä nyt.*  
*edellä*  
*Anteeksi mutta ehkä te haluatte mennä edellä.*

*Rouva*

polite  
Thank you, young man, for being so polite to an old lady.  
I notice you're with the U.S. Army.  
branch  
What branch are you with?

*kohtelias*  
*Kiitos nuori mies, kun olette niin kohtelias vanhalle rouvalle.*  
*Huomaan, että kuulutte Yhdysvaltain armeijaan.*  
*osasto*  
*Missä osastossa te olette?*

*Sotilas*

infantry  
I'm in the infantry.  
320 [20-A]

*jalkaväki*  
*Olen jalkaväessä.*



face  
Why's your face so red?  
Is there something wrong?

to lose  
I've lost my identification card.  
Now I can't cash my check.  
If I don't get the money, I can't pay my hotel bill.

to report  
barracks  
I have to report at the barracks at five-thirty.

How much is involved?

Only three hundred marks.

Give me the check.

to sign  
I'll be glad to sign it.

*Rouva*  
*kasvot*  
*Miksi teidän kasvonne ovat niin punaiset?*  
*Onko jotain väärin?*

*Sotilas*  
*hukata*  
*Olen hukannut henkilöllisyyskorttini.*  
*Nyt en voi vaihtaa sekkiäni.*  
*Jos en saa rahaa en voi myöskään maksaa laskuani*  
*hotellissa.*  
*ilmoittautua*  
*parakki*  
*Minun täytyy ilmoittautua kello puoli kuusi parakissa.*

*Rouva*  
*Kuinka paljon on kysymyksessä?*

*Sotilas*  
*Vain kolmesataa markkaa.*

*Rouva*  
*Antakaa minulle se sekki.*  
*allekirjoittaa*  
*Allekirjoitan sen mielelläni.*

I'm known here.  
Please cash it.

*Olen tunnettu täällä.  
Olkaa hyvä ja vaihtakaa.*

Surely, madam.

*Kassaneiti*

*Kyllä, rouva.*

*Rouva*

to forget  
who *or* which  
I also have a son in the army who forgets everything.

*unohtaa  
joka  
Minulla on myöskin poika armeijassa, joka aina unoh-  
taa kaiken.*

*Takaisin hotellissa*

*Sotilas*

I've come back.

to owe  
How much do I owe you?

*Olen tullut takaisin.  
olla velkaa  
Kuinka paljon olen velkaa?*

*Hotellinomistaja*

Three hundred and fifty.

to write  
receipt  
I'll write you a receipt.

*Kolmesataaviisikymmentä markkaa.  
kirjoittaa  
kuitti  
Kirjoitan teille kuitin.*

No, you're mistaken.

only  
I pay for the room only.

The U.S. Government will pay for the food.

*Sotilas*

*Ei, te erehdytte.*

*ainoastaan*  
*Maksan ainoastaan huoneesta.*

*Yhdysvaltain valtio maksaa ruoan.*

### Check Your Pronunciation

*How to pronounce the word 'sekkä':* This word has two pronunciations, and you should use whichever your Guide uses. The alternative pronunciation is as if it were spelled *shekki*, the *sh* being similar to the *sh* of English *she*.

#### Practice 56

*sekkä*

check

## SECTION B—WORD STUDY AND REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

### 1. Word Study

Review carefully the *Word Study* sections of units 2, 3, 4 and 5.

#### *Comment One—Pronouns*

A pronoun is the sort of word discussed in unit 14, pages 238-9 (*Comments Three and Four*). There are other sorts of pronouns in Finnish, as discussed below:

a. *toinen* 'the other'.

*Pidätkö te toisistanne?*  
*Pidätkö te toinen*  
*toisestanne?*

Do you like each other?

*Me kysyimme toisil-*  
*tamme neuvoa.*  
*Me kysyimme toinen*  
*toiseltamme neuvoa.*

We asked each other's  
advice.

{ <i>Luuletteko, että voitte auttaa toisianne?</i> <i>Luuletteko, että voitte auttaa toinen toistanne?</i>	Do you think that you can help each other?
---	---

Note how you say 'each other' or 'one another' in Finnish. There are two ways actually, and your Guides will usually prefer one or the other way. The first sentence in each of the above groups has the pronoun *toinen* in the plural, with a case suffix and a possessive suffix: stems *toise-*, *tois-*, plus *-i-* plural sign—*toisi-*, followed by *-sta-*, *-lta-* or *-(t)a-*, followed by *-nne*, *-mme*, and so forth. The second sentence in each of the above groups has the pronoun *toinen* twice; the first is in its free form, *toinen*, the second is with a case suffix and a possessive suffix, but in the singular: note the absence of the *-i-* and the corresponding differences. Note this additional example: *he eivät ymmärrä toisiaan* 'they don't understand one another'; also *he eivät ymmärrä toinen toistaan*. The form *toistaan* is a common way of saying *toistansa* (that is, *tois-ta-nsa*); the corresponding plural is *toisiaan*, a common way of saying *toisiansa* (that is, *tois-i-(t)a-nsa*).

b. *tämä* 'this'; *tuo* 'that'; *se* 'it, that'.

Most case suffixes are added in the singular to the stems *tä-*, *tuo-*, and *si-* respectively, as *tätä*, *tuota*, *sitä*, and so forth, but you must learn the following exceptions.

324 [20-B]

The various *-n* suffixes form *tämän* and *sen*.

The suffix *-ssa* cannot be added to *se*. Instead you must use *siinä* 'inside it'.

The suffix *-sta* cannot be added to *se*. Instead you must use *siitä* 'from it'.

The suffix *-(h)xn* cannot be added to *se*. Instead you must use *siihen* 'into it'.

The plural forms of these pronouns are *nämä* or *nämät* 'these', *nuo* or *nuot* 'those', and *ne* 'they, those', respectively. All case suffixes are added in the plural to the stems *näi-*, *noi-*, *ni-*, as *näitä*, *noita*, *niitä*, and so forth.

c. *kuka*, *ken* 'who'; *mikä* 'what, which'.

Forms of but one syllable generally take the *-ka* suffix; thus, the case with the *-n* suffix of *mikä* (stem *mi-*) will be *minkä* 'what' or 'of what', and the plural of the free form will be *mitkä*.

In the speech of your Guides, the most frequent forms of *kuka* (stem *ku-*) 'who' are *kuka* 'who' in the singular, *kutka* 'who' (and 'whom') in the plural. Although other case suffixes may be added to the stem *ku-*, generally forms of *ken* (stem *kene-*) 'who' are substituted. Thus, *ketä* with the *-(t)a* suffix, *kenet* 'whom', *kenessä* 'inside whom', and so forth.

d. *joka* 'which, who'.

Forms of but one syllable take the *-ka* suffix; thus

*jonka* 'of which', *joiden* or *joitten* 'of which' (plural), and so forth.

## 2. Covering English and Finnish of Word Study

Give the English equivalents of all Finnish expres-

sions in the *Word Study* and the Finnish for all the English. This is individual study.

## 3. Review of Basic Sentences

Further oral practice with the first half of the *Basic Sentences*.

# SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES (*Cont.*)

## 1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

Further oral practice with the second part of the *Basic Sentences*.

## 2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences

Check your knowledge of the meaning of all words and phrases in the *Basic Sentences*. This is individual study.

## 3. Mitä te sanoisitte?

Translate the words in parentheses into Finnish and fit them into their respective sentences.

1. *Onko täällä* (anybody who) *puhuu suomea*?
2. (This) *on* (that) *talo* (in which) *asun*.

3. (These) *ovat* (the) *pojat* (which) *olivat eilen elokuvissa*.
4. *Kaksi miestä meni ravintolaan* (of whom) *toinen tuli heti pois*.
5. (For whom) *sinä ostit* (that) *kellon lahjaksi*.
6. (Whom) *haluaisit tutustua*?
7. (For whom) *luulit minua*?
8. (Of whom) *kaikilta sinä kysyit neuvoa*?
9. (About whom) *te puhuitte nyt juuri*?
10. (Who) *aikovat mennä konserttiin Yliopiston juhlasaliin tänään*?
11. (That) *miehellä ei ole koskaan rahaa*.
12. (That) *nainen tietää mitä tahtoo*.

13. *En pidä yhtään* (that) *ajatuksesta*.
14. *Olen velkaa yhdeksänkymmentä markkaa* (to that) *miehelle* (whom) *näet tuolla*.
15. *Tulin luulleeksi sinua* (for that) *mieheksi*.
16. (That) *päivänä* (on which) *lomani alkoi lähdin ulkomaille*.

17. *Toverini* (whom) *näin viimeksi kolme vuotta sitten kuoli tiistaina*.
18. *Minäkin haluan* (that) *samaa lajia jos teillä vielä on* (it).
19. (Who) *kertoi sinulle* (about this) *asiasta?*
20. (Of these) *talojen hevoset ovat parhaita työhevosia*.

## SECTION D—LISTENING IN

### 1. Mitä te sanoitte?

With the other members of the group, give orally your responses to the previous exercise as the Leader calls for them.

### 2. Word Study Check-Up

Give the Finnish for all English equivalents in the *Word Study* as the Leader calls for it.

### 3. Listening In

#### I. Mitä sinulla olisi jos et polttaisi.

*Herra A—Kuinka monta laatikkoa savukkeita sinä poltat päivässä?*

*Herra B—Noin kolme laatikkoa päivässä.*

326 [20-D]

*Herra A—Kuinka paljon ne maksavat?*

*Herra B—Kahdeksan markkaa laatikko.*

*Herra A—Taivas, se on kaksikymmentäneljä markkaa päivässä. Kuinka kauan olet polttanut?*

*Herra B—Kolmekymmentä vuotta.*

*Herra A—Kaksikymmentäneljä markkaa päivässä kolmenkymmenen vuoden ajalla. Se on paljon rahaa.*

*Herra B—Kyllä hyvin paljon.*

*Herra A—Näetkö tuon suuren ja kauniin konttorirakennuksen tuolla kadunkulmassa?*

*Herra B—Kyllä, mitä sitten?*

*Herra A—Jos et polttaisi, niin nyt voisit olla tuon rakennuksen omistaja.*

*Herra B—Poltatko sinä?*

*Herra A—Ei, en ole koskaan polttanut.*

Herra B—Oletko sinä tuon konttorirakennuksen omistaja?

Herra A—En ole.

Herra B—Mutta minäpä olen.

## II. Pankissa.

Eräänä päivänä kaunis nuori rouva meni pankkiin ja sanoi pankkivirkailijalle:

—Haluan vihtaa tämän sekin.

—Kyllä rouva (sanoi apulainen) olkaa hyvä ja allekirjoittakaa se.

—Miksi, minun mieheni lähetti sen minulle, ja nyt hän on matkalla Helsinkiin.

—Mutta rouva, olkaa hyvä ja allekirjoittakaa se. Kir-

joittakaa nimenne siihen, niin teidän miehenne tietää, että olemme antaneet teille rahan.

Rouva allekirjoitti sekin:

—Sinun lempivaimosi Sirkka.

## III. Suuri Juomaraha.

Mies on ravintolassa toverinsa kanssa. Tarjoilijatar tuo hänen takkinsa ja hän antaa tarjoilijattarelle viisikymmentä markkaa juomarahaa. Hänen toverinsa huomaa tämän ja sanoo:

—Viisikymmentä markkaa on aivan liian paljon, neljä tai viisi markkaa olisi ollut tarpeeksi.

Hänen toverinsa vastaa<sup>2</sup>:

—Mutta katso tätä takkia. Se on sadan markan arvoinen.

## SECTION E—CONVERSATION

### 1. Covering the Finnish of Basic Sentences

With the Finnish covered, practice until you can speak the Finnish for each English sentence without hesitation. This is individual study.

### 2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Give the Finnish for all English sentences in the *Basic Sentences* as the Leader calls for it.

<sup>2</sup>*Vastata* 'to answer'.

### 3. Conversation

1. *A* and his wife discuss the hotel which they are about to leave. *A* says that he was not satisfied with the service, and Mrs. *A* feels that the bill is large enough for them to have received food in the restaurant. They decide to leave without giving tips to the servants.
2. *A* wants to cash a check in a strange town. He addresses *B*, asking for information, and gets full directions: the bank is to the right, about four streets away, opposite a big department store, right next to the post office. *A* goes there, but cannot have his check (which is drawn on a Swedish bank) cashed, unless a depositor countersigns. He identifies him-

self, but to no avail. *A* gets mad, says he's in a hurry: he must cash the check or miss his train; he threatens to call the police. The bank clerk is very courteous, but says she can't help him, and *A* finally leaves, somewhat pacified.

3. A father tells his son, who is about to go on a trip, what he must *not* do while travelling. For example, he must not leave hotels without paying his bills, he must not forget to write home his address or to put stamps on his letters, he must not make acquaintance with strangers, and so on. The son is getting tired of all these admonitions and tells his father not to always tell him what to do and what not to do.

## SECTION F—CONVERSATION (*Cont.*)

Complete conversation. Additional check-up on the material of the *Basic Sentences* by the Leader if it seems necessary.

### *Review*

Complete check-up on the material of the *Word Study* and *Basic Sentences*.

### Finder List

<i>alekirjoittaa</i>	to sign
<i>ainoastaan</i>	only
<i>avain</i>	key
<i>edellä</i>	ahead or before
<i>eksyä</i>	to get lost
<i>ensiluokkainen</i>	first class or first rate



<i>henkilöllisyys</i>	identification
<i>hukata</i>	to lose
<i>hyväksyä</i>	to accept
<i>ilmoittautua</i>	to report
<i>jalkaväki</i>	infantry
<i>okaj</i>	which <i>or</i> who
<i>kasvot</i>	face
<i>kiire</i>	hurry
<i>kiiruhtaa</i>	to hurry
<i>kirjoittaa</i>	to write
<i>kohtelias</i>	polite
<i>kohtuullinen</i>	reasonable
<i>komppania</i>	company
<i>kortti</i>	card
<i>kuitti</i>	receipt
<i>kääntyä</i>	to turn
<i>luonnollinen</i>	natural
<i>löytää</i>	to find
<i>mahdoton</i>	impossible
<i>muistaa</i>	to remember
<i>mukana</i>	with
<i>neuvoa</i>	to advise

<i>olla paheilla</i>	to regret <i>or</i> to be sorry
<i>olla valkaa</i>	to owe
<i>osaste</i>	branch
<i>osoittaa</i>	to address <i>or</i> to point
<i>palvelija</i>	servant
<i>palvelus</i>	service
<i>parakki</i>	barracks
<i>peljätä</i>	to be afraid
<i>poliisi</i>	policeman
<i>päällikkö</i>	commander
<i>risti</i>	cross
<i>sekki</i>	check
<i>sellainen</i>	that kind
<i>suunta</i>	direction
<i>tili</i>	account
<i>todistaa</i>	to prove
<i>tyytyväinen</i>	satisfied
<i>unohtaa</i>	to forget
<i>vaihtaa</i>	to change
<i>valokuva</i>	photo
<i>vastata</i>	to answer
<i>virallinen</i>	official
<i>väärä</i>	wrong

SAIRAALASSA<sup>1</sup>

OSA A—PERUSLAUSEET

*Tohtori Lahti ja sairaanhoitajatar<sup>2</sup> Aino Joki ovat katsomassa potilaita<sup>3</sup> sotilassairaalassa ja menevät vuoteelta<sup>4</sup> vuoteelle.*

ENGLANNIKSI

*Tohtori Lahti*

Miss Joki, what's the trouble with the patient here on the right?

*Sairanhoitajatar Joki*

leg  
private first class  
He broke his leg in the army ski races; didn't you,  
Corporal Laine?

SUOMEKSI

*Neiti Joki, mikä tätä potilasta vaivaa tässä oikealla?*

sääri  
korpraali  
*Hän katkaisi säärensä armeijan hiihtokilpailuissa, eikö  
niin korpraali Laine?*

<sup>1</sup>*Sairaala* 'hospital'.

<sup>2</sup>*Sairanhoitaja* 'nurse'.

<sup>3</sup>*Potilas* 'patient'.

<sup>4</sup>*Vuode* 'bed'.

*Korporaali Laine*

to happen  
That's how it happened.

*tapahtua*  
*Niinhän se tapahtui.*

*Tohtori Lahti*

to hurt  
Does it still hurt much?

*koskea*  
*Vieläkö se koskee kovasti?*

*Korporaali Laine*

anymore  
No, it doesn't hurt much any more.

*enää*  
*Ei se koske enää paljoa.*

*Tohtori Lahti*

That's good.

*Se on hyvä.*

But I do think that you'll have to stay in the hospital  
a couple of weeks longer.

*Mutta luulen että teidän täytyy olla sairaalassa vielä  
pari viikkoa.*

*Korporaali Laine*

to matter or to mean  
It doesn't matter, if only my leg will be all right.

*merkitä*  
*Se ei merkitse mitään jos vaan säärestäni tulee hyvä.*

*Tohtori Lahti*

don't worry  
Don't worry; it certainly will be all right.  
You'll still ski with it, too.

*älkää huolehtiko*  
*Älkää huolehtiko, siitä tulee varmasti hyvä.*  
*Kyllä sillä vielä hiihdetään.*

sergeant major  
And here's Sergeant Leino.

bandage  
wound  
to heal *or* to get well  
Miss Joki, let's take off the bandage so we can see how  
the wound has healed.

*vääpeli*  
*Ja täällähän on vääpeli Leino.*

*side*  
*haava*  
*parantua*  
*Neiti Joki, otetaanpa pois tuo side, että näemme kuinka*  
*haava on parantunut.*

*Vääpeli Leino*

arm  
to feel  
My arm feels very good now.  
Do you think I can go home soon, Doctor?

*käsivarsi*  
*tuntua*  
*Käsivarteni tuntuu oikein hyvältä nyt.*  
*Luuleeko tohtori, että saan pian mennä kotiin.?*

*Tohtori Lahti*

You can go home within a very few days.  
What's the hurry to get home now?  
Aren't you satisfied here?

*Saatte lähteä aivan näinä päivinä.*  
*Mikä kiire teillä sinne kotiin nyt on?*  
*Ettekö ole tyytyväinen täällä?*

*Vääpeli Leino*

Sure, it's fine here; but there's plenty of work waiting  
at home.

*Kyllä täällä hyvä on olla, mutta kotona on paljon töitä*  
*odottamassa.*

*Tohtori Lahti*

I understand.  
332 [21-A]

*Minä ymmärrän.*

*Sairaanhoitajatar Joki*

private

Doctor, here is Private Aho.

lung

fever

high

chart *or* list

He has pneumonia and the fever is high, as you can see on the chart.

*sotamies*

*Tohtori, tässä on sotamies Aho.*

*keuhko*

*kuume*

*korkea*

*lista*

*Hänellä on keuhkokuume ja kuume on korkea, kuten näette kuumelistasta.*

*Tohtori Lahti*

to seem

So it seems.

*näkyä*

*Niin näkyy.*

Did you get some sleep last night, Private Aho?

*Voitteko te nukkua viime yönä, sotamies Aho?*

*Sotamies Aho*

a little

sleep *or* dream

No, but the night nurse gave me some sleeping medicine and then I slept better.

*vähän*

*uni*

*En, mutta yöhoitajatar antoi minulle vähän unilääkettä, ja sitten nukuin paremmin.*

*Tohtori Lahti*

Good.

You'll get some sleeping medicine for tonight, too.

*Hyvä on.*

*Saatte unilääkettä myös ensi yöksi.*

Thank you, Doctor.

*Sotamies Aho*

*Kiitos tohtori.*

sergeant  
How are you today, Sergeant?

*Tohtori Lahti*

*kersantti*  
*Kuinka te voitte tänään kersantti?*

Very well, thanks, Doctor.

*Kersantti*

*Kiitos, oikein hyvin, tohtori.*

to ache *or* to hurt  
Does your foot still ache?

*Tohtori Lahti*

*särkeä*  
*Särkeekö jalkaanne vielä?*

at all  
No, scarcely at **all**.

*Kersantti*

*yhtään*  
*Ei juuri yhtään.*

war  
front  
You were on the front in the last war, weren't you?

*Tohtori Lahti*

*sota*  
*rintama*  
*Tehän olitte myöskin viime sodassa rintamalla.*

to get wounded  
bad  
Did you get wounded very badly then?

*haavoittua*  
*paha*  
*Haavoituitteko hyvin pahasti silloin?*

*Kersantti*

Yes, I did.

scar  
You see the scars on my face.

eye  
to lose  
I was afraid I'd lose my eyes.

*Haavoituin kyllä.*

*arpi*  
*Näettehän arvet kasvoissani.*

*silmä*  
*menettää*  
*Pelkäsin, että menettäisin silmäni.*

*Tohtori Lahti*

Indeed!

Miss Joki, let's go see our lieutenant now.

serious  
There we have a serious case.

horrible  
accident  
It was a horrible accident.

*Todellakin!*

*Neiti Joki, mennäänpä nyt katsomaan luutnanttiamme.*

*vakava*  
*Siinä meillä on vakava tapaus.*

*kamala*  
*onnettomuus*  
*Se oli kamala onnettomuus.*

*Sairaanhoitajatar*

wonderful  
to live  
It certainly is a miracle that he still lives.

unconscious  
He was unconscious for a long time.

*ihmeellinen*  
*elää*  
*On todella ihmeellinen asia että hän elää vielä.*

*tajuton*  
*Hänhän oli tajuttomana niin hauan.*

*Tohtori Lahti*

Well, Lieutenant, what's new today?

*No luutnantti, kuuluuko milään uutta tänään?*

*Luutnantti*

mouth  
dry  
My mouth is very dry.  
Could I have a little water?

*suu  
kuiva  
Suuni on niin kuiva.  
Saisinko vähän vettä?*

*Tohtori Lahti*

Of course.  
Does it hurt very much when you turn your head?

*Tietysti.  
Koskeeko kovin kun käännätte päätänne?*

*Luutnantti*

Yes, it does.  
to get injured  
nose  
Did my nose get badly injured?  
tooth  
And how many teeth did I lose?

*Kyllä se koskee.  
loukkaantua  
nenä  
Loukkaantuiko nenäni pahasti?  
hammas  
Ja kuinka monta hammasta menetin?*

*Tohtori Lahti*

Just one.  
I'm sure that when we take off the bandage your face  
will be quite healed.

*Vain yhden.  
Olen varma että kun otamme siteen pois, kasvonne ovat  
aivan parantuneet.*



*Luutnantti*

I'm glad of that.

*Olen iloinen siitä.*

My wife was afraid I'd have a bad scar on my nose.

*Vaimoni pelkäsi, että saisin nenääni pahan arven.*

*Tohtori Lahti*

as . . . as

You can tell your wife you'll be just as beautiful as before.

*yhtä . . . kuin*

*Voitte sanoa vaimollenne että tulette olemaan aivan yhtä kaunis kuin ennenkin.*

morphine injection

I'll give you a morphine shot now.

*morfiniruiske*

*Annan teille nyt morfiniruiskeen.*

It should take your pain away.

*Sen pitäisi ottaa pois särkynne.*

Do you remember at all, Lieutenant, how the accident happened?

*Muistatteko yhtään, luutnantti, kuinka onnettomuus tapahtui?*

*Luutnantti*

fault or defect

I remember only that the machine went out of order and I couldn't do anything with it.

*vika*

*Muistan vain, että koneeseen tuli vika, enkä voinut tehdä sille mitään.*

*Sairaanhoitajatar*

Your officer friends have called every day to ask how you are.

*Upseeritoverinne ovat soittaneet joka päivä ja kysyneet miten voitte.*

*Luutnantti*

They're nice guys.

*He ovat reiluja poikia.*

*Tohtori Lahti*

Well, I must hurry now.

*No niin, minun täytyy kiiruhtaa.*

Maybe the company commander is waiting already.

*Komppanian päällikkö jo ehkä odottaa.*

*Sairaanhoitajatar*

He's ready to leave for home.

*Hän on jo valmis lähtemään kotiin.*

major  
up

*majuri  
ylhäällä*

How does it feel to be up again, Major?

*No, miltä tuntuu olla ylhäällä taas, majuri?*

*Majuri*

Good, thank you.

*Hyvältä kiitos.*

I have to go and pay my bill in the office.

*Minun täytyy vielä käydä maksamassa laskuni konttorissa.*

Do you think they'll accept my check?

*Luuletteko, että he hyväksyvät sekkini siellä?*

*Tohtori Lahti*

Sure.

*Aivan varmasti.*

## OSA B—WORD STUDY AND REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

### 1. Word Study

Review carefully the *Word Study* sections of units 7, 8, 9, 10 and 11.

*Comment One—Negative Order*

*älä(') anna(')*            don't give

To give a negative order to a single person (or in familiar form) you must use the order giving form of the negative verb, which is *älä(')* (or, as some people say, *elä(')*), followed by the verb of action in its vowel stem form ending in '. Thus, *älä(') pane(')* 'don't put', and so forth (see unit 8, pages 139-40 for the pronunciation).

*älkää huolehtiko*            don't worry

Now note how you give a negative order to more than one person not including yourself (or in a formal way). You must use *älkää* (or, as some people say, *elkää*), followed by the verb of action (*huolehtia* 'to worry', stem *huolehti-*) bearing the suffix *-ko*. Thus, *älkää kävelkö* 'don't walk', *älkää istuko siellä* 'don't sit there'.

*ei anneta(')*            one doesn't give

Note how to say 'one doesn't'. You must use *ei*, followed by the verb of action with the suffix *-(t)ta(')* (hence *anta-* to *anna-* to *annetta-* to *anneta(')* through a series of regular automatic changes).

*Comment Two—Negative Expression*

<i>ei koskaan</i>	never	<i>ei kukaan</i>	nobody
<i>ei yksikään</i>	no one	<i>ei mitään</i>	nothing
<i>ei yhtään</i>	none	<i>ei sittenkään</i>	not even then
<i>ei ennenkuin</i>			not until

Learn these expressions.

### 2. Covering English and Finnish of Word Study

Give the English equivalents of all Finnish expressions in the *Word Study* and the Finnish for all the English. This is individual study.

### 3. Review of Basic Sentences

Further oral practice with the first half of the *Basic Sentences*.

## OSA C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES (Cont.)

### 1. Review of Basic Sentences (Cont.)

Further oral practice with the second half of the *Basic Sentences*.

### 2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences

Check your knowledge of the meaning of all words and phrases in the *Basic Sentences*. This is individual study.

### 3. Mitä te sanoisitte?

These sentences order someone to do something. Change each so that they forbid someone to do the same thing (that is, change the verb to negative).

1. *Tuo kenkäni suutarista.*
2. *Kiiruhtakaa asemalle.*
3. *Asu meillä.*
4. *Siirrä jalkasi pois pöydältä.*

5. *Varaa minulle lippu huomiseksi.*
6. *Ilmoittautukaa torstaina yhdeltätoista.*
7. *Viljekkää sellaista ohraa kuin minä viljelen.*
8. *Tehkää kuten sanon.*
9. *Sulje ovi, täällä on kylmä.*
10. *Ehdottakaa jotain hauskempaa.*
11. *Neuvo lapsiasi.*
12. *Keittäkää minulle kahvia.*
13. *Prässäyttäkää housunne täällä!*
14. *Erehdy tekemään se.*
15. *Vakuuttakaa matkatavaranne ennenkuin lähdette matkalle.*
16. *Tutustu häneen ja sinulla on hauskaa.*
17. *Kuuntele tarkemmin.*
18. *Näyttäkää minulle mitä te teitte eilen.*
19. *Kysykää häneltä kysymyksiä.*
20. *Hyväksykää tämä sekki.*

## OSA D—LISTENING IN

### 1. Mitä te sanoitte?

With the other members of the group, give orally your responses to the previous exercise as the Leader calls for them.

### 2. Word Study Check-Up

Give the Finnish for all English equivalents in the *Word Study* as the Leader calls for it.

### 3. Listening In

#### I. Sairaalassa.

*Nuori mies on ollut potilaana sairaalassa pari viikkoa ja kaunis nuori sairaanhoitajatar on pitänyt hyvää huolta hänestä.*

*—Sairaanhoitajatar (hän sanoo) en halua parantua enkä mennä kotiin, sillä haluan olla täällä hyvin kauan, pidän teistä niin paljon!*

*—Te saatte varmasti olla täällä kauan (vastaa hoitajatar)*  
*Tohtori pitää minusta myöskin ja hän näki kun piditte minua hyvänä eilen illalla!*

#### II. Lääkärissä.

*Potilas—Vaimoni sanoo minulle, että puhun unissani.*  
*Mitä minun pitäisi tehdä?*

*Tohtori—Ei mitään, mitä teidän ei pitäisi.*

#### III. Lääkärissä.

*Tohtori—Nyt teidän ei pitäisi juoda kahvia.*

*Potilas—Minä en koskaan juo sitä.*

*Tohtori—Ja te ette saa polttaa myöskään.*

*Potilas—Mutta minähän en polta.*

*Tohtori—Hm, se on paha. Jos teillä ei ole yhtään pahoja tapoja pelkään, etten voi auttaa teitä paljoa.*

#### IV. Pientä keskustelua.<sup>5</sup>

*A—Kävin eilen lääkärissä, jota sinä suosittelet minulle.*

*B—Kerroitko hänelle, että minä lähetin sinut?*

*A—Kerroin.*

*B—Mitä hän sanoi?*

*A—Hän pyysi minua maksamaan ennenkuin hän teki minulle mitään.*

<sup>5</sup>Keskustelu 'conversation'.

V. Tohtori ja potilas.

- Tohtori, luuletteko, että voin elää sadan vuoden vanhaksi?  
—Kuinka vanha te olette nyt?  
—Olen neljäkymmentä vuotta vanha.  
—Poltatteko te?  
—En.  
—Juotteko te viinaa?  
—En.  
—Käyttekö te tanssiravintoloissa?  
—En.  
—Pidätkö kilpa-ajoista?  
—En.

—Onko teillä mitään pahoja tapoja?

- Ei, minulla ei todellakaan ole mitään pahoja tapoja.  
—Miksi te sitten haluaisitte elää vielä kuusikymmentä vuotta?

VI. Hauskaa hammaslääkärissä.

- Minulla oli hyvin hauskaa käydessäni hammaslääkärissä tänään.  
—En ymmärrä kuinka sinulla voi olla hauskaa hammaslääkärissä.  
—Se on totta. Kun menin sisään eräs toinen hammaslääkäri oli juuri korjaamassa minun hammaslääkärini hampaita.

OSA E—KESKUSTELUA

1. Covering the Finnish of Basic Sentences

With the Finnish covered, practice until you can speak the Finnish for each English sentence without hesitation. This is individual study.

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Give the Finnish for all English sentences in the *Basic Sentences* as the Leader calls for it.

3. Keskustelua

1. *A* and *B* are in two beds next to each other in the hospital. They strike up a conversation and each finds out where the other comes from, what work he used to do back home (one was a teller in a bank, the other a farmer), where he was wounded and the type of wound he received.

2. A soldier in a hospital bed is trying to date the Red Cross nurse for the time when he will be up. The nurse leads him on a bit, but she accepts the invitation in the end and they make a date.
3. Two soldiers in a hospital have just been operated on and they feel very bad and bitter about everything. They think the food is atrocious and criticize the dishes in detail. Then someone mentions

the sergeant, thereby eliciting groans. The conversation turns to various officers of the company to which the two boys belong. The major also was wounded in action. He and the other officers are compared by the men—to the advantage of the major.

4. Tell about your own operation or that of a member of your family.

### OSA F—KESKUSTELUA (Cont.)

Complete conversation. Additional check-up on the material of the Basic Sentences by the Leader if it seems necessary.

#### Review

Complete check-up on the material of the Word Study and Basic Sentences.

#### Sanaluettelo

<i>arpi</i>	scar
<i>elää</i>	to live
<i>enää</i>	anymore
<i>haava</i>	wound
<i>haavoittua</i>	to get wounded

<i>hammas</i>	tooth
<i>huolehtia</i>	to worry
<i>ihmeellinen</i>	wonderful
<i>kamala</i>	horrible
<i>kersantti</i>	sergeant
<i>keuhko</i>	lung
<i>keskustelu</i>	conversation
<i>korkea</i>	high
<i>korpraali</i>	private first class
<i>koskea</i>	to hurt
<i>kuiva</i>	dry
<i>kuume</i>	fever
<i>käsivarsi</i>	arm

<i>lista</i>	chart <i>or</i> list
<i>loukkaantua</i>	to get injured
<i>majuri</i>	major
<i>menettää</i>	to lose
<i>merkilä</i>	to matter <i>or</i> to mean
<i>morfiniruiske</i>	morphine injection
<i>nenä</i>	nose
<i>näkyä</i>	to seem
<i>onnettomuus</i>	accident
<i>paha</i>	bad
<i>parantua</i>	to heal <i>or</i> to get well
<i>potilas</i>	patient
<i>rintama</i>	front
<i>sairaala</i>	hospital
<i>sairaanhoitaja</i>	nurse
<i>side</i>	bandage
<i>silmä</i>	eye

<i>sota</i>	war
<i>sotamies</i>	private
<i>suu</i>	mouth
<i>särkeä</i>	to ache <i>or</i> to hurt
<i>sääri</i>	leg
<i>tajuton</i>	unconscious
<i>tapahtua</i>	to happen
<i>tuntua</i>	to feel
<i>uni</i>	sleep <i>or</i> dream
<i>vakava</i>	serious
<i>vika</i>	fault <i>or</i> defect
<i>vuode</i>	bed
<i>vähän</i>	a little
<i>vääpeli</i>	sergeant major
<i>yhtä . . . kuin</i>	as . . . as
<i>yhtään</i>	at all
<i>ylhäällä</i>	up



KONTTORISSA

OSA A—PERUSLAUSEET

*Sotilas tulee toimistoon, missä hänen ystävättäressä tekee työtä, ja pyytää häntä ulos kanssansa.*

ENGLANNIKSI

Hello, honey, are you ready?

You're here already?

I'm afraid you came too early.

I still have a lot to do.

reading matter  
You'll find something to read on that table.

to read  
Sit down and read some newspapers or those magazines.

Okay, but hurry up.

SUOMEKSI

*Antti*

*Päivää, kulta, joko olet valmis?*

*Sirkka*

*Joko sinä tulit?*

*Pelkään, että tulit liian aikaisin.*

*Minulla on vielä paljon työtä.*

lukemista  
*Tuolla pöydällä on lukemista.*

lukea  
*Istu alas ja lue sanomalehtiä tai noita kuvalehtiä.*

*Antti*

*Hyvä on, mutta kiiruhda.*

suspense  
novel  
pocket

I've a very good detective story in my pocket.

book

I'll read my own book.

paper  
Antti, hand me that package of stationery.

Here you are.

ink

By the way, where's the ink?

fountain pen

I'd like to fill my fountain pen.

black  
or

Do you want black or blue ink?

It's all the same.

346 [22-A]

jännitys  
romaani  
tasku

*Minulla on oikein hyvä jännitysromaani taskussani.*

kirja

*Luen omaa kirjaani.*

*Sirkka*

paperi

*Antti, annapa minulle tuo kirjepaperi paketti.*

*Antti*

*Tässä on.*

muste

*Kesken kaiken missä teillä on mustetta?*

täytekössä

*Haluaisin täyttää täytekössäni.*

*Sirkka*

musta  
vai

*Tahdotko mustaa vai sinistä mustetta?*

*Antti*

*Se on samantekevä.*

God  
Oh, Lord!  
I'm sorry!

clumsy  
Boy, are you clumsy!  
to make a mess of  
Did you have to come here to mess up the place?

quiet  
Keep quiet!  
I said I was sorry, didn't I?

on purpose  
Besides, do you think I did it on purpose?

towel  
Please give me some soap and a towel.

washroom  
Where's your washroom, anyway?

<sup>1</sup>*Kaataa* 'to spill' or 'to turn over'.

<sup>2</sup>*Pullo* 'bottle'.

(*Hän kaataa*<sup>1</sup> *mustepullon*.<sup>2</sup>)

*Jumala*  
*Voi Jumala!*  
*Olen pahoillani!*

*Sirkka*

*kömpelö*  
*Kyllä sinäkin sitten olet kömpelö!*  
*sotkea*  
*Täytyikö sinun tulla tänne sotkemaan paikkoja?*

*Antti*

*hiljaa*  
*Ole hiljaa!*  
*Sanoinhan että olen pahoillani.*  
*tahalla*  
*Sitäpaitsi luuletko että tein sen tahallani?*  
*pyyhe*  
*Anna minulle saippuaa ja pyyhe, ole hyvä.*  
*pesuhuone*  
*Missä teidän pesuhuoneenne onkaan?*

corridor  
It's outside in the corridor, to the left of the door.

Okay.  
When'll you be ready?

opera  
I've tickets for the opera tonight.

to get done  
fast  
If you keep quiet, I'll get my work done faster.  
Get going to the washroom!

that I have given  
Have you finished typing those letters I gave you?

Yes, sir.  
typewriter  
They're over there on the typewriter desk.

<sup>3</sup>Tuomari 'lawyer' or 'judge'.

*Sirkka*

käytävä  
*Se on ulkopuolella, käytävässä, ovesta vasemmalle.*

*Antti*

Hyvä on.  
Milloin olet valmis?  
ooppera  
*Minulla on meille liput oopperaan täksi illaksi.*

*Sirkka*

saada tehtyä  
nopea  
*Jos olet hiljaa, niin saan työnikin nopeammin tehtyä.*  
*Ja ala nyt jo mennä sinne pesuhuoneeseen.*

*Tuomari*<sup>3</sup>

antamani  
*Joko olette kirjoittaneet koneella teille antamani kirjeet?*

*Sirkka*

Kyllä, herra tuomari.  
kirjoituskone  
*Ne ovat tuolla kirjoituskonepöydällä.*

signature  
They just need your signature.

Hand me a pen.  
Have you addressed the envelopes?

Not yet.  
Today is Saturday.  
I'll send them Monday morning.

to be convenient *or* to fit  
That's fine.

to dictate  
I wish you'd take some dictation before you go.  
And would you please write them right away?  
I intend to stay in the office a little later tonight.

but I can't  
to stay  
overtime  
I'm sorry, but I can't work overtime today.  
I'm going out with an American soldier.

*allekirjoitus*  
*Ne tarvitsevat vain allekirjoituksenne.*

*Tuomari*

*Antakaapa minulle täytekynä.*  
*Oletteko jo kirjoittaneet osoitteet kuoriin?*

*Sirkka*

*En vielä.*  
*Tänään on lauantai.*  
*Lähetän ne maanantai-aamuna.*

*Tuomari*

*sopia*  
*Se sopii hyvin.*  
*sanella*  
*Haluaisin sanella pari kirjettä ennenkuin menette.*  
*Ja myöskin että kirjoittaisitte ne heti.*  
*Aijon olla toimistossa vähän myöhempään tänä iltana.*

*Sirkka*

*mutten tai mutta en*  
*jäädä*  
*ylityö*  
*Olen pahoillani, mutten voisi jäädä ylitöihin tänään.*  
*Olen menossa ulos erään amerikkalaisen sotilaan kanssa.*

interesting  
How interesting!

You know, of course, my wife is an American  
Where are you going?

First to the opera, and perhaps later to dance.

to leave  
In that case, leave those letters till next week, but  
don't forget them on Monday.

long distance call  
I just remembered, I'm expecting a long distance call  
Monday morning at eight-fifteen.

The call might be person to person.  
I hope you'll be here on time Monday.

general or usual  
I'm not generally late, sir.

That's true.  
350 [22-A]

*Tuomari*

*mielenkiintoinen*  
*Sepä mielenkiintoista.*  
*Tiedättehän että vaimonikin on amerikkalainen.*  
*Mihin te aijotte mennä?*

*Sirkka*

*Ensin oopperaan ja ehkä myöhemmin tanssimaan.*

*Tuomari*

*jättää*  
*Siinä tapauksessa jättäkää nuo kirjeet ensi viikkoon,*  
*mutta älkää unhoittako niitä maanantaina.*

*kaukopuhelu*  
*Nytpä muistankin että odotan kaukopuhelua neljän-*  
*nestä yli kahdeksan.*

*Ehkä puhelu on henkilöpuhelu, en tiedä.*  
*Toivottavasti olette täällä ajoissa maanantaina.*

*Sirkka*

*tavallinen*  
*En tavallisesti ole myöhässä, herra tuomari.*

*Tuomari*

*Se on totta.*

to tease  
I'm just teasing you.  
Have a good time.

*kiusata*  
*Kiusaan teitä vain.*  
*Pitäkää hauskaa.*

Thank you.

*Sirkka*  
*Kiitos.*

*(Antti tulee takaisin huoneeseen.)*

In my opinion, you work too hard.  
employer  
Besides, I don't like your employer.

*Antti*  
*Minusta sinä teet liian kovasti työtä.*  
*työnantaja*  
*Sitäpaitsi en pidä työnantajastasi.*

to give notice  
Why don't you give notice and marry me?

*sanoa itsensä ylös*  
*Mikset sano itseäsi ylös ja mene kanssani naimisiin?*

suddenly  
This is so sudden.  
We've known each other only three years.

*Sirkka*  
*äkkiarvaamatta*  
*Kylläpä tuo tuli äkkiarvaamatta.*  
*Emmehän ole tunteneet toisiamme kuin kolme vuotta.*

## OSA B—SANAOPPIA<sup>4</sup> JA PERUSLAUSEITTEN JÄLKIKATSAUS<sup>5</sup>

### 1. Sanaoppia

Review carefully the *Word Study* sections of units 13, 14, 15, 16 and 17.

#### *Comment One—Spelling of ä and ö*

You've learned that the letters *ä* and *ö* are printed with two dots on top of an *a* and *o*. This is the way the letters appear in print. However, in handwriting they appear usually as *ã* and *õ*.

#### *Comment Two—The Suffix -va*

*teidän on nähtävä Helsinki*    you must see Helsinki in  
*kesällä*    the summer

Notice the suffix *-va* in *nähtävä*. When added to a simple vowel stem, the suffix means roughly 'ing': *antava* 'giving', *tuleva* 'coming', *saava* 'getting'. When the same suffix is added to a verb which has the *-(t)ta*(') suffix (for which see unit 17, pages 284-6), as in *nähtävä* (*nähdä* 'to see', stem *näk-*, *nähtä-*), the meaning is usually 'to be done' or 'to be possible'. Thus, *lukea*

'to read', stem *luke-*, plus *-(t)ta*('), giving *luetta-*: *luettava* 'that which must be read' or 'readable'. With *on*, as in *on nähtävä*, the *-va* suffix means 'necessity'—'must see'. *On annettava* 'one must give', *on saatava* 'one must get', and so forth.

#### *Comment Three—Ways of Expressing Future Time*

*minä menen huomenna*    I'll go tomorrow

In general, there's no special way to denote future time in Finnish. You just use the present forms, as above.

*olen menevä*    I'll go

However, future time can be expressed by combining the present tense of *olla* 'to be' with a verb followed by the *-va* suffix.

*olin menevä*    I was about to go

Note the combination of a form in the past tense of *olla* with a verb followed by the *-va* suffix.

*tulen menemään*    I'll go

Note the combination of a present form of *tulla* 'to go' with a verb followed by the suffixes *-ma* and *-(h)xn*

<sup>4</sup>*Oppi* 'study'.

<sup>5</sup>*Jälkikatsaus* 'review'.



(see unit 19, pages 308-9) to express intention of an action in the future. Thus, also, *hän tulee lukemaan kirjeesi* 'he'll read your letter'.

## 2. Covering English and Finnish of Word Study

Give the English equivalents of all Finnish expres-

sions in the *Word Study* and the Finnish for all the English. This is individual study.

## 3. Peruslauseitten jälkikatsaus

Further oral practice with the first half of the *Basic Sentences*:

### OSA C—PERUSLAUSEITTEN JÄLKIKATSAUS (*Jatkoa*<sup>6</sup>)

#### 1. Peruslauseitten jälkikatsaus (*Jatkoa*)

Further oral practice with the second half of the *Basic Sentences*.

#### 2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences

Check your knowledge of the meaning of all words and phrases in the *Basic Sentences*. This is individual study.

#### 3. Mitä te sanoisitte?

I. Translate the English enclosed in parentheses, fitting them in their appropriate Finnish sentences.

<sup>6</sup>*Jatkoa* 'continuation'.

1. *Hänen on* (eat) *ruokansa*.
2. *Sinun on* (come) *kanssani*.
3. *Olit* (coming) *tänne junalla*.
4. *Tulet* (be) *pahoillasi tästä*.
5. *Minun on* (write) *hänelle ensi kuussa*.
6. *Sinä olit* (repairing) *hellan, eilen*.
7. *Meidän on* (look at) *tätä elokuuaa, sillä se on parhain täällä*.
8. *Tulemme* (get lost) *siinä kaupungissa*.
9. *Tulette* (sign) *tuon sekin*.
10. *Hän on* (reading) *tämän kirjeen*.
11. *Teidän on* (return) *takaisin töihin torstaina*.
12. *Tulette* (find) *poikanne jalkaväestä*.
13. *He tulevat* (be afraid of) *tuota miestä*.

14. *Te olitte* (visiting) *kaupungissa*.
15. *Tulemme* (turn to) *teidän puoleenne*.
16. *Tulet vielä kerran* (rush) *töihin*.
17. *Hän tulee* (address) *kirjeet heille*.
18. *Heidän on* (leave) *laivalla, Ruotsiin*.
19. *Tulen aina* (remember) *teitä*.
20. *He tulevat* (direct) *meitä oikeaan suuntaan*.

II. Translate the following sentences into Finnish, using as many ways of expressing future action as you can.

1. I'll read your telegram Friday night.
2. I'll fill my car with gas tomorrow.
3. I intend to mess up your stationery like this.
4. I'll leave this to you.
5. I'll give notice next week.
6. I intend to tease my employer.
7. I'll ask him to come with us.
8. Will you come to us next week?
9. I'll take my suitcase to the station later.
10. I'll be ready very soon.

## OSA D—LISTENING IN

### 1. Mitä te sanoitte?

With the other members of the group, give orally your responses to the previous exercises as the Leader calls for them.

### 2. Word Study Check-Up

Give the Finnish for all English equivalents in the *Word Study* as the Leader calls for it.

### 3. Listening In

*I. Majuri Leino menee sairaalankonttoriin maksamaan sairaala laskuansa.*

*Neiti Ahola*

*Hyvää huomenta, majuri.*

*Joko te nyt saatte lähteä kotiin?*

*Majuri Leino*

*Hyvää huomenta, neiti Ahola.*

*Kotiin menossahan minä olen.*

*Olenhan minä ja ollutkin täällä pian kuukauden.*

*Neiti Ahola*

*Oletteko te todellakin olleet täällä niin kauan?*

*Kyllä se aika menee pian.*

*Varmaankin olette iloinen että saatte palata komppaniaanne.*

*Majuri Leino*

*En palaa vielä toimeeni.*

*Olen saanut kuukauden loman parantuakseni.*

*Neiti Ahola*

*Mitä te sitten aijotte tehdä?*

*Majuri Leino*

*Olen päättänyt mennä maalle, että saisin oikein paljon raitista ilmaa ja voin kävellä ihanissa metsissä, päästäkseni vanhaan hyvään kuntoon.*

*Neiti Ahola*

*Olen kirjoittanut laskunne valmiiksi.*

*Haluatteko maksaa sen kaikki nyt, vaiko osan siitä?*

*Majuri Leino*

*Jos teille sopii kirjoitan mieluummin tuhannen markan sekin ja loput lähetän postissa, kun saan ensi kuussa rahani armeijasta.*

*Neiti Ahola*

*Hyvä on.*

*Kirjoitan teille kuitenkin.*

*Majuri Leino*

*Olkaa hyvä ja antakaa minulle mustekynä, unohdin täytekyntäni huoneeseeni.*

*Neiti Ahola*

*Lähetätkö loppulaskunne armeijaan tai kotiosoitteellanne?*

*Majuri Leino*

*Parasta on, että lähetätte sen minulle armeijaan sillä en ole aivan varma vielä milloin palaan kaupunkiin.*

*Neiti Ahola*

*Toivotan teille hauskaa matkaa ja että parannutte pian.*

*Majuri Leino*

*Kiitoksia kaikesta.*

*Olen varma, että pian olen taas toissa kuten ennen.*

*Neiti Ahola*

*En sano näkemiin, vaan hyvästi ja toivottavasti kaikki menee hyvin.*

## *II. Konttorissa.*

*a.*

*Poika—Terve isä, tulin kysymään kuinka sinä voit.*

*Isä—Liian myöhään, poikani. Äitisi kävi täällä juuri ja annoin hänelle rahani.*

*b.*

*Työnantaja—Terve, Antti, olen kuullut että sinulla on lapsi kotonasi.*

*Uusi isä—Hyvänen aika, toivottavasti häntä ei voi kuulla tänne konttoriinkin.*

*c.*

*Johtaja—Miksi te olette myöhässä taas tänä aamuna.*

*Konttoriapulainen—Nukuin liian myöhään.*

*Johtaja—Mitä? Nukutteko te kotenannekin?*

## **OSA E—KESKUSTELUA**

### **1. Covering the Finnish of Basic Sentences**

With the Finnish covered, practice until you can speak the Finnish for each English sentence without hesitation. This is individual study.

### **2. Vocabulary Check-Up**

Give the Finnish for all English sentences in the *Basic Sentences* as the Leader calls for it.

### **3. Keskustelua**

1. The manager of an office is sending his secretary to

the bank and to the post office. She asks questions as to what she is to do in each place.

2. You are telling a friend that your father is a lawyer and that you'll take over his office in a year or so. You intend to move the office to some other part of town, and you tell your friend in detail what you expect the new office to look like.

3. You go into an office and while waiting for the boss you strike up an acquaintance with the girl at the desk. You tell her that you were in the Army (a

corporal) until recently, and that you were discharged because you got wounded. Describe your wound. She tells you that her sister is a nurse. You talk about the weather and complain about the

heat. Then you offer to take her to a movie after hours—it is cool inside. She tells you that she must work overtime that evening, but will be glad to go out with you Saturday night.

## OSA F—KESKUSTELUA (*Jatkoa*)

Complete conversation. Additional check-up on the material of the *Basic Sentences* by the Leader if it seems necessary.

### *Jälkikatsaus*

Complete check-up on the material of the *Word Study* and *Basic Sentences*.

### **Sanaluettelo**

<i>allekirjoitus</i>	signature
<i>antamani</i>	that I have given
<i>hiljaa</i>	quiet
<i>jatkoa</i>	continuation
<i>Jumala</i>	God or Lord
<i>jälkikatsaus</i>	review
<i>jännitys</i>	suspense

<i>jättää</i>	to leave
<i>jäää</i>	to stay
<i>kaataa</i>	to spill or to turn over
<i>kaukopuhelu</i>	long distance call
<i>kirja</i>	book
<i>kirjoituskone</i>	typewriter
<i>kiusata</i>	to tease
<i>käytävä</i>	corridor
<i>kömpelö</i>	clumsy
<i>lukea</i>	to read
<i>lukemista</i>	reading matter
<i>mielenkiintoinen</i>	interesting
<i>muste</i>	ink
<i>musta</i>	black
<i>mutten tai mutta en</i>	but I can't

<i>nopea</i>	fast	<i>sopia</i>	to be convenient <i>or</i> to fit
<i>ooppera</i>	opera	<i>sotkea</i>	to mess up
<i>oppi</i>	study	<i>tahalla</i>	on purpose
<i>paperi</i>	paper	<i>tavallinen</i>	general <i>or</i> usual
<i>pesuhuone</i>	washroom	<i>tasku</i>	pocket
<i>pullo</i>	bottle	<i>tuomari</i>	lawyer <i>or</i> judge
<i>pyyhe</i>	towel	<i>työnantaja</i>	employer
		<i>täytekynä</i>	fountain pen
<i>romaanii</i>	novel	<i>-va</i>	verb suffix
<i>saada tehtyä</i>	get done	<i>vai</i>	<i>or</i>
<i>sanella</i>	to dictate	<i>ylityö</i>	overtime
<i>sanoa itsensä ylös</i>	to give notice	<i>äkkiarvaamatta</i>	suddenly

ULKOILU<sup>1</sup>

OSA A—PERUSLAUSEET

*Erkki Suominen ja hänen toverinsa Bill Carter laativat<sup>2</sup> listan, mitä he tarvitsevat tulevaa ulkoilua varten.*

ENGLANNIKSI

SUOMEKSI

*Erkki Suominen*

It's very nice of you to come so early.

*Olipa hauska, että tulit näin aikaisin.*

together

*yhdessä*

We can make up the list of what we need together.

*Voimme tehdä listan yhdessä mitä tarvitsemme.*

*Bill Carter*

That's exactly what I thought.

*Sitä juuri ajattelin.*

I have a list of people who want to come.

*Minulla on tässä lista henkilöistä, jotka haluavat tulla kanssamme.*

*Erkki Suominen*

admirable or excellent

*mainio*

Fine!

*Mainiota!*

<sup>1</sup>*Ulkoilu* 'camping'.

<sup>2</sup>*Laatia* 'to draw up'.

I was thinking that it would be best to go to Northern Finland.

to hunt  
to fish

We could hunt and fish there too.

to stay  
I hope the weather will stay nice.

somebody  
whole

Somebody told me that last fall when they went camping it rained all the time.

among other things  
tent  
instead

He also said that it would have been better to take a house rather than a tent.

It's still too early for the fall rains.

otherwise  
luck

Did they have good luck otherwise?

*Ajattelin että olisi parasta mennä Pohjois-Suomeen.*

*metsästää  
kalastaa*

*Siellä voimme sekä metsästää että kalastaa.*

*pysyä  
Toivon että ilmat pysyvät kauniina.*

*Bill Carter*

*joku  
koko*

*Joku kertoi että viime syksynä, kun he olivat ulkoilemassa, satoi koko ajan.*

*muunmuassa<sup>3</sup>  
teltta  
asemasta*

*Muunmuassa hän sanoi että olisi ollut parempi ottaa talo mukaan teltan asemasta.*

*Erkki Suominen*

*Nyt on vielä liian aikaista syksysateille.*

*muuten  
onni*

*Oliko heillä muuten hyvä onni?*

<sup>3</sup>Abbreviated as *m.m.*



*Bill Carter*

They stayed only one week.

trip  
on account of

The whole trip turned out to be a big drinking party  
on account of the rain.

*He olivat vain yhden viikon.*

*retki  
vuoksi*

*Koko retki muuttui<sup>a</sup> yhdeksi ryyppyretkeksi sateen  
vuoksi.*

*Erkki Suominen*

I hope it won't happen that way with us.

Oh, well, let's get down to it.

First of all, we need a tent.

*Toivottavasti ei meidän käy samalla tavalla.*

*No niin, asiaan.*

*Ensiksikin tarvitsemme teltan.*

*Bill Carter*

I think it would be best to take two tents, since there  
are twelve of us.

*Luulen että on parasta ottaa kaksi telttaa, sillä meitä  
on kaksitoista miestä.*

*Erkki Suominen*

rope  
axe  
hammer  
nail

Okay. Two tents, a rope, and axe, a hammer and some  
nails. What else?

*köysi  
kirves  
vasara  
naula*

*Hyvä on, kaksi telttaa, köysi, tirves, vasara ja nauloja.  
Mitä muuta?*

---

<sup>a</sup>Here meaning 'to become' or 'to turn out'.

*Bill Carter*

pillow  
blanket  
sheet

Also pillows, blankets and sheets.

lamp *or* bulb  
How about a flashlight?

*tyyny  
huopa  
lakana*

*Myöskin tyynyjä, huopia ja lakanoita.*

*lamppu  
Entäs taskulamppu?*

*Erkki Suominen*

I don't think we'll need that.

*En luule, että tarvitsemme sitä.*

*Bill Carter*

some kind  
Anyway, we must take some kind of stove.  
We intend to cook, don't we?

*jonkinlainen  
Mutta kuitenkin meidän on otettava jonkinlainen hella.  
Sillä aijommehan me keittää?*

*Erkki Suominen*

unnecessary  
Nonsense!  
possible  
We'll take with us as little as possible.

stone  
space  
We'll make a fire between two rocks and that's where  
we'll cook.

*turha  
Mitä turhia!  
mahdollinen  
Otamme mukaamme niin vähän kuin mahdollista.*

*kivi  
väli  
Teemme tulen kahden kiven väliin ja siinä voimme  
keittää.*

important  
pan  
frying  
pot

*tärkeä  
pannu  
paistin-  
kattila*

It's important to take a coffee-pot, frying pan and a couple of pots.

*Tärkeätä on ottaa kahvipannu, paistinpannu ja pari kattilaa.*

*Bill Carter*

knife  
fork  
spoon

*veitsi  
kahveli<sup>5</sup>  
lusikka*

Could we take some knives, forks and spoons?  
Or do you think we should eat with our hands?

*Voimmeko ottaa veitsiä, kahveleita ja lusikoita?  
Vai luuletko, että olisi parasta syödä käsin?*

*Erkki Suominen*

Oh, come now.

*No älähän nyt tuossa.*

*Bill Carter*

without a gun  
rifle

*pyssyttä  
kivääri*

Anyway, we can't go without a gun.  
I have a rifle.

*Pyssyttä emme kuitenkaan voi mennä.  
Minulla on kivääri.*

*Erkki Suomen*

double-barrelled gun  
I think a shotgun would be better for hunting.

*haulikko  
Luulisin, että haulikko olisi parempi metsästykseseen.*

<sup>5</sup>A word of Swedish origin. Very common for *haarukka*.

*Bill Carter*

I almost forgot!

*Olin aivan unohtaa.*

boat  
We'll have to have a boat, won't we?

*vene*  
*Meillähän täytyy olla vene.*

*Erkki Suominen*

to worry  
Don't worry; we'll rent one there.

*surra*  
*Älä sure, son vuokraamme sieltä.*

*Bill Carter*

mosquito  
I've heard that there are lots of mosquitoes in Northern Finland.

*sääski<sup>6</sup>*  
*Olen kuullut että Pohjois-Suomessa on Paljon sääskiä.*

without  
net  
I don't like to go there without a mosquito net.

*ilman*  
*harso*  
*En halua mennä sinne ilman sääskiharsoa.*

*Erkki Suominen*

paste  
And let's not forget the toothpaste and shaving cream, either.

*tahna*  
*Emme saa myöskään unohtaa hammastahnaa ja parranajosaippuaa.*

*Bill Carter*

And remember, a couple of bottles of whiskey, too.

*Älä unohda paria pulloa wiskiä myöskään.*

---

<sup>6</sup>In some parts of Finland you will hear *hyttynen*.

Well, I guess that's all.

I hope we haven't forgotten anything.

No, siinä kai on sitten kaikki.

Toivottavasti emme ole unohtaneet mitään.

## OSA B—SANAOPPIA JA PERUSLAUSEITTEN JÄLKIKATSAUS

### 1. Sanaoppia

Review carefully the *Word Study* sections of units 19, 20, 21 and 22.

*Comment One—The Suffix -tta*  
*pyssyttä* without a gun

The case suffix *-tta* in *pyssyttä* (stem *pyssy-*) means 'without' or '-less'. Thus, also, *rahatta* 'without money' or 'penniless', *työnantajatta* 'without an employer', *työnantajitta* 'without employers'.

*Comment Two—Relationship Terms*

#### Type A 1

<i>Helsingin ulkopuolella</i>	outside of Helsinki
<i>sateen vuoksi</i>	on account of the rain
<i>vihannesten kanssa</i>	with vegetables
<i>Jyväskylän kautta</i>	by Jyväskylä

Words like *ulkopuolella* 'outside', *vuoksi* 'on account of', *kanssa* 'with', and *kautta* 'by' or 'via', are called relationship terms. There are many relationship terms in Finnish, and you can find them in any dictionary. Relationship terms fall into four types, A 1, A 2, B 1 and B 2. Terms belonging to the A 1 type are distinguished by two characteristics: they always *follow* the noun or pronoun which they modify; and the noun or pronoun which they modify generally takes the *-n* suffix (for which see unit 14, pages 237-8).

<i>kanssani</i>	with me
<i>vuoksemme</i>	on account of us
<i>tule meidän kauttamme</i>	come by our house

Note that relationship terms may take a possessive suffix (compare with unit 4, pages 72-3).

### Type A 2

*voi matkustaa ympäri Suomen* } one could travel  
*voi matkustaa Suomen ympäri* } around Finland  
*kesken kaiken* by the way

In the above sentences, *ympäri* 'around' and *kesken* 'in the midst of' (*kesken kaiken* means literally 'in the midst of all') are relationship terms. As you see, the nouns they accompany take the *-n* suffix (*Suomen, kaiken*), but in general they *precede* the noun or pronoun they modify, though some may follow it as well, as an alternative.

### Type B 1

*Sveniä varten* for Sven  
*neljännestä vailla* a quarter off

The words *varten* 'for' and *vailla* 'off' are relationship terms of another sort. They always *follow* the noun or pronoun which they modify; but the noun or pronoun which they modify generally takes the *-(t)a* suffix (for which see unit 9, pages 161-3).

### Type B 2

*ennen kukon laulua* before cock-crow  
*ilman sääskiharsoa* without a mosquito net  
*sitä vastapäätä* opposite it

*lähellä asemaa* near the station  
*voi matkustaa ympäri Suomea* one could travel here and there in Finland

The words *ennen* 'before', *ilman* 'without', *vastapäätä* 'opposite', *lähellä* 'near', are also relationship terms which *precede* the noun or pronoun they modify, and the modified word takes *-(t)a* (*laulua, asemaa*, and so on). Note that *ympäri* belongs to both types A 2 and B 2 with slight change of meaning.

Hereafter, if you come across a new relationship term, determine for yourself from the context in which it is used what type it belongs to.

### Comment Three—Summary

1. You have learned one more case suffix, the *-tta*, bringing the total up to thirteen.
2. You have learned a number of verb suffixes: *-ta* (') (free form suffix, or infinitive I), *-ma* (infinitive II), and *-va*. You also know how to give a negative order, and how to express future time in Finnish.
3. You have learned four more types of pronouns.
4. You have learned four types of so-called relationship terms.
5. You will recognize variant spellings of the letters *ä* and *ö*.

## 2. Covering English and Finnish of Word Study

Give the English equivalents of all Finnish expressions in the *Word Study* and the Finnish for all the English. This is individual study.

## 3. Peruslauseitten jälkikatsaus

Further oral practice with the first half of the *Basic Sentences*.

### OSA C—PERUSLAUSEITTEN JÄLKIKATSAUS (*Jatkoa*)

#### 1. Peruslauseitten jälkikatsaus (*Jatkoa*)

Further oral practice with the second half of the *Basic Sentences*.

#### 2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences

Check your knowledge of the meaning of all words and phrases in the *Basic Sentences*. This is individual study.

#### 3. Mitä te sanoisitte?

I. Put these sentences into Finnish and say them aloud:

- How could you go fishing without a boat?
- You can't sleep in the woods without a mosquito-net.
- My father was without work for two years.

- I tell you, I can't eat without a spoon.
- He returned from the war with no arms.
- The town is without a hospital.

II. Put these sentences into Finnish and say them aloud:

- I made this long trip on account of you.
- My brother arrived here with his wife.
- I looked for her around the house.
- I want some more wine for dinner.
- He came home before his vacation started.
- You can't see without lights, so bring your flashlight.
- Did you look at that interesting building opposite the university?
- He was very close to death when he was brought to the hospital.

- i. You almost got hurt!
- j. I have to go to the office, by the way.
- k. In the middle of his dinner he noticed that he was missing his knife and fork.
- l. As you go by the school, pick up the books.
- m. He walked around his fields, but he stopped outside the barn.
- n. I want two tickets for the trip around Sweden.
- o. The corporal went to bed before the sergeant, because his wound was more serious.

## OSA D—LISTENING IN

### 1. Mitä te sanoitte?

With the other members of the group, give orally your responses to the previous exercises as the Leader calls for them.

### 2. Word Study Check-Up

Give the Finnish for all English equivalents in the *Word Study* as the Leader calls for it.

### 3. Listening In

*Bill Carter ja Erkki Suominen ovat saapuneet ulkoilua varten Pohjois-Suomeen ja keskustelevat siitä mitä he aikovat tehdä.*

*Bill Carter*

*Kyllä meidän matkamme on mennyt hyvin, eikö olekin?*

*Erkki Suominen*

*Niin on.*

*Nyt meidän täytyy laittaa teltat kuntoon.*

*Bill Carter*

*Löysin jo mainiot paikat niille.*

*Aivan tuossa veden lähellä.*

*Erkki Suominen*

*Katso tätä!*

*Nämä ovat nyt ne kaksi kiveä, joista puhuin. Laitamme tulen näiden väliin ja siinä keitämme.*

*Bill Carter*

*Missä ovat toiset pojat?*



*Erkki Suominen*

*Osa heistä meni lähimpään taloon venettä vuokraamaan  
ja osa lähti jo kalastamaan.*

*Bill Carter*

*Sepä hauskaa.*

*Keitämme kahvin valmiiksi siksi kun he tulevat.*

*Erkki Suominen*

*Ja sitten menemme kaikki uimaan.*

*Bill Carter*

*No, siinä se nyt on.*

*Tiesin, että olin unohtanut jotakin.*

*Erkki Suominen*

*Mitä nyt?*

*Bill Carter*

*Olen unohtanut uimahousuni.*

*Nyt en voi mennä uimaan kanssanne.*

*Erkki Suominen*

*Kuka sanoi, ettet voi mennä uimaan?*

*Bill Carter*

*Sanoinhan, että minulla ei ole uimahousuja.*

*Erkki Suominen*

*Eihän meillä muillakaan ole.*

*Ei täällä niitä tarvita.*

*Lähin talo on neljän kilometrin päässä.*

*Bill Carter*

*No, maassa maan tavalla tai maasta pois.<sup>7</sup>*

*Erkki Suominen*

*Mihin sinä panit sen kirveen?*

*Meillä täytyy olla puita tulta varten.*

*Bill Carter*

*Tuossahan se on.*

*Kuka laittaa huomen aamulla aamiaisen?*

*Erkki Suominen*

*Jaa, meidän täytyy lähteä ennen kukonlaulua, jos ai-  
jomme lähteä metsästäämään.*

*Bill Carter*

*Toivon, ettemme ainakaan ole unohtaneet haulikoi-  
tamme.*

<sup>7</sup>Proverb: 'When in Rome, do as the Romans do'.

## OSA E—KESKUSTELUA

### 1. Covering the Finnish of Basic Sentences

With the Finnish covered, practice until you can speak the Finnish for each English sentence without hesitation. This is individual study.

### 2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Give the Finnish for all English sentences in the *Basic Sentences* as the Leader calls for it.

### 3. Keskustelua

1. You're a sergeant in the Quartermaster Corps and the major in charge is telling you to procure sup-

plies for a bivouac. He gives you a list and you go over it, discussing item after item.

2. You discuss with a friend the advantages of hunting as against fishing, and make plans to spend your vacation one way rather than the other. Then you talk about the supplies you'll need on your trip.
3. You rent an unfurnished room and plan to fix it up. You need a bed first of all, with blankets, sheets and pillows. You have a broken table; you need a hammer and nails to fix it. You need a rope to haul up your books. You must furnish the kitchenette with a stove, frying pans, pots, and so forth.

## OSA F—KESKUSTELUA (*Jatkoa*)

Complete conversation. Additional check-up on the material of the *Basic Sentences* by the Leader if it seems necessary.

### *Jälkikatsaus*

Complete check-up on the material of the *Word Study* and *Basic Sentences*.

### Sanaluettelo

*asemasta*

instead

*haarukka*

fork

*harso*

net

*haulikko*

double-barrelled gun

<i>huopa</i>	blanket	<i>naula</i>	nail
<i>hyttynen</i>	mosquito	<i>onni</i>	luck
<i>ilman</i>	without	<i>paistin-</i>	frying
<i>joku</i>	somebody	<i>pannu</i>	pan
<i>jonkinlainen</i>	some kind	<i>pyssy</i>	gun
<i>kahveli</i>	fork	<i>pysyä</i>	to stay
<i>kalastaa</i>	to fish	<i>retki</i>	trip
<i>kattila</i>	pot	<i>surra</i>	to worry
<i>kirves</i>	axe	<i>sääski</i>	mosquito
<i>kivi</i>	stone	<i>tahna</i>	paste
<i>kivääri</i>	rifle	<i>teltta</i>	tent
<i>koko</i>	whole	<i>turha</i>	unnecessary
<i>köysi</i>	rope	<i>-tta</i>	without <i>or</i> -less
<i>laatia</i>	to draw up	<i>tyyny</i>	pillow
<i>lakana</i>	sheet	<i>tärkeä</i>	important
<i>lamppu</i>	lamp <i>or</i> bulb	<i>ulkoilu</i>	camping
<i>lusikka</i>	spoon	<i>vasara</i>	hammer
<i>mahdollinen</i>	possible	<i>veitsi</i>	knife
<i>mainio</i>	admirable <i>or</i> excellent	<i>vene</i>	boat
<i>metsästää</i>	to hunt	<i>vuoksi</i>	on account of
<i>muunmuassa</i>		<i>väli</i>	space
( <i>m.m.</i> )	among other things	<i>yhdessä</i>	together
<i>muuten</i>	otherwise		

## REVIEW

## SECTION A—WHAT DO YOU KNOW IN FINNISH?

The procedure in this unit will be the same as in unit 18.

## SECTION B—HOW WOULD YOU SAY IT?

(Individual Study)

Prepare to give orally the Finnish for each of the following sentences. Do not write anything down.

## I

1. Pack the razor blades, shaving cream and tooth-paste.
2. Don't worry, I've a gun.
3. Waiter, could you give us some knives, forks and spoons?
4. Good luck!
5. Spring is the best time to fish around here.
6. Otherwise there's nothing new.

7. The rope broke and so he died.

8. He didn't forget the hammer and nails either.

## II

1. I've read all good detective stories.
2. Oh, Lord, you're the stupidest fellow I ever saw!
3. His flashlight looked like a fountain pen.
4. Shut up! I know you did it on purpose.
5. I want a girl who can type and who knows Swedish.
6. You shouldn't tease your employer.
7. He left quite suddenly.
8. Paper towels are cheaper.

### III

1. I saw you in my dreams last night, darling.
2. I'm sorry, sir, it was my fault.
3. He was on the front for six months but he got wounded right here in the bathroom shaving.
4. I'm sure she's wonderful, but I hope you're not thinking about her seriously.
5. He has a horrible scar from his eye to his mouth.
6. The dog's nose is dry.
7. The major is unconscious, but he might live.
8. He has a little fever, but that doesn't mean anything.

### IV

1. I was in the infantry and I'm trying to forget it.
2. Make the receipt out to the U. S. Government.
3. I'm not going to sign any papers.

4. The barracks are about eleven kilometers to the north.
5. Hurry up, the company commander wants to see you.
6. The photo is of my face only.
7. The Red Army is not far from here.
8. I want to close my account.

### V

1. There's an air mail letter in your box.
2. He collects old letters.
3. He has a different address now.
4. Were they yellow or black?
5. In that case I'll get someone to help you.
6. The envelope as well as its contents must be left in the office.
7. There was a French stamp on it.
8. His life isn't worth a penny.

## SECTION C—HOW DID YOU SAY IT?

Quiz by the Leader on the sentences in Section *B*, asking various members of the group: „*Kuinka te sanotte suomeksi . . . ?*”

## SECTION D—HOW WOULD YOU SAY IT? (Cont.)

### (Individual Study)

Do the following exercises. Read all sentences aloud with correct solutions. Have everything well fixed in your mind, and ready to speak in the next group meeting.

#### I

Figure out this puzzle. If you get the right answer, explain how you got it, and why it is the only possible solution; if you fail, explain why you can't figure it out. Members of the group should discuss.

*Antti ja Matti ovat kalastamassa.*

*He molemmat ovat saaneet kaloja.*

*Antti sanoo Matille:*

*"Anna sinä minulle yksi sinun kaloistasi niin minulla on kaksi kertaa niin paljon kuin sinulla."*

*Matti sanoo Antille:*

*"Se ei ole oikein."*

*Miksi sinulla pitäisi olla niin paljon enempi kuin minulla.*

*Anna sinä minulle yksi sinun kaloistasi niin meillä molemmilla on yhtä monta."*

*Kuinka monta kalaa oli Antilla?*

*Ja kuinka monta kalaa oli Matilla?*

#### II

Here are some relationship terms. Make up a series of *complete* sentences, each including one.

- |                  |                        |
|------------------|------------------------|
| a. <i>edellä</i> | g. <i>lähellä</i>      |
| b. <i>ennen</i>  | h. <i>ulkopuolella</i> |
| c. <i>ilman</i>  | i. <i>vailla</i>       |
| d. <i>kanssa</i> | j. <i>varten</i>       |
| e. <i>kautta</i> | k. <i>vastapäätä</i>   |
| f. <i>kesken</i> | l. <i>vuoksi</i>       |
|                  | m. <i>ympäri</i>       |

#### III

Translate the English words in parentheses and fit them into respective sentences.

1. *Tämä sotilas* (always) *unohti henkilöllisyyskorttinsa.*
2. *Kuulin sisareltani, että konsertissa oli* (many) *hyvää laulajaa.*
3. *Luulen, että* (someone) *kävi konttorissa eilen.*
4. (Something) *on tapahtunut hänelle, olen varma.*

5. Hän oli kaupungissa vain päivän ja (even then) hän pyysi minua ulos kanssansa.
6. Oletko varma, että (somebody) on lähettänyt sähkeen.

#### IV

Take each sentence from the previous exercise (1-6) and make a negative sentence out of it.

7. \_\_\_\_\_
8. \_\_\_\_\_
9. \_\_\_\_\_
10. \_\_\_\_\_
11. \_\_\_\_\_
12. \_\_\_\_\_
13. \_\_\_\_\_

#### V

Change the action of these sentences to future, making changes only where necessary.

14. Hän on hyvin väsynyt tänään.
15. Tänään on sunnuntai.
16. Minä kiiruhdan niin paljon kuin mahdollista.
17. Hän on luutnantti, siksi kun hän haavoittui sodassa.
18. Suuni on kuiva kaiken tuon viskin jälkeen.

19. Annan hänelle morffiniruiskeen heti.
20. Missä osastossa te olette?
21. Minun kasvoni ovat punaiset.
22. Hän ei tiedä sen hintaa.
23. Vaimoni oli perillä kello puoli kymmenen.

#### VI

In the column to the left you will find a series of pronouns, and in the column to the right a series of suffixes. Combine each pronoun with at least one suffix, and each suffix with at least one pronoun; use each combination you've made up in a *complete* sentence. Sample: *minä, -kin, minäkin, minäkin menen teatteriin tänä iltana.*

- |           |            |
|-----------|------------|
| a. hän    | a. -(t)a   |
| b. itse   | b. -n      |
| c. joka   | c. -ksi    |
| d. ken    | d. -ssa    |
| e. kuka   | e. -(ka)an |
| f. mikä   | f. -(h)xn  |
| g. se     | g. -na     |
| h. toinen | h. -pa     |
| i. tuo    | i. -nsa    |
| j. tämä   | j. -ko     |

## SECTION E—HOW DID YOU SAY IT?

Quiz by the Leader on the work you did in Section *D*. Keep your book closed. If you have a Guide, he will check on pronunciation and the correctness of your Finnish; if not, other members of your group will criticize.

## SECTION F—CONVERSATION REVIEW

The members of the group will carry on short conversations lasting from two to five minutes. Everyone should take part as often as possible. Remember to begin and end conversations with the proper greeting. By this time you have more words to use and more subjects to talk about. The group will be given one hundred minutes and you should be able to talk longer on one topic. Don't be afraid to bring in other things that you can think of and talk about besides those suggested here. Let the talk be as natural as possible, try to answer what is asked you and to keep the conversation moving by asking questions in turn.

### *Suggested Topics:*

1. Tell some jokes in Finnish.
2. Give the plot of a movie or a play you saw recently.

3. Have you ever been in a hospital? Tell your experiences—why were you there, how were you treated, were you cured when discharged?
4. Do you know any puzzles? Tell the other members of the group and let them guess the solution.
5. You are a postal clerk. Various people come to the window and want different things.
6. You are a bank clerk. Various people come to the window and want different things.
7. Go shopping in preparation for a camping trip.
8. Your girl works in an office. She tells you about the daily routine, and her boss, whom you don't like.
9. What sort of books do you like to read?
10. Do you like hunting or fishing? Talk about your experiences in this connection.



SUOMEN HALLITUS<sup>1</sup>

## OSA A—PERUSLAUSEET

*Eino Kallio selittää<sup>2</sup> Suomen hallitusta Joe Scott'ille, joka aikoo lähteä matkalle Suomeen.*

## ENGLANNIKSI

## SUOMEKSI

When do you intend to leave?

*Eino*

*Milloin sinä aijot lähteä?*

The boat leaves early tomorrow morning.

*Joe*

*Laiva lähtee aikaisin huomen aamulla.*

to travel

*matkustaa*

I'll travel on a Swedish boat, which'll arrive at Göteborg Wednesday afternoon.

*Matkustan ruotsalaisella laivalla, joka saapuu Göteborgiin keskiviikkona iltapäivällä.*

From there I'll continue by train to Stockholm, and from there by plane to Helsinki.

*Sieltä jatkan matkaani junalla Tukholmaan ja Tukholmasta lentokoneella Helsinkiin.*

*Eino*

Have you already packed all your things?

*Joko sinulla on kaikki matkatavarat pakattuna?*

<sup>1</sup>*Hallitus* 'government'.

<sup>2</sup>*Selittää* 'to explain'.

almost  
Almost everything.

to get  
difficulty  
customs *or* duty  
I'll try to take with me as little as possible so I won't  
get into difficulties with the customs.

severe *or* strict  
In my opinion the customs aren't strict in Finland.  
You can take presents to your friends duty-free, if  
you tell them straight out that they're meant for  
gifts.

Is that so?  
to be born  
You were born in Finland and lived there, didn't you?  
grateful  
beforehand  
I'd be grateful if you'd tell me a little about the coun-  
try and its government so I'll know something  
beforehand.

I'll be glad to.  
378 [25-A]

Joe  
*melkein*  
*Melkein kaikki.*

*joutua*  
*vaikeus*  
*tulli*  
*Koetan ottaa mukaani niin vähän kuin mahdollista,*  
*etten joutuisi vaikeuksiin tullissa.*

Eino  
*ankara*  
*Tulli ei minusta ole ankara Suomessa.*  
*Voit viedä lahjoja ystävilleesi ilman tullia kun sanot*  
*suoraan, että olet tarkoittanut ne lahjoiksi.*

Joe  
*Vai niin.*  
*syntyä*  
*Sinähän olet syntynyt Suomessa ja asunut siellä.*

*kiitollinen*  
*etukäteen*  
*Olisin kiitollinen jos kertoisit minulle vähän tuosta*  
*maasta ja sen hallituksesta, että tietäisin vähän*  
*etukäteen.*

Eino  
*Teen sen mielelläni.*

Well, where shall I start?

republic  
difference

Finland is a republic, like the United States, but  
naturally there are differences.

to represent  
president  
party

Does your president represent some party?

No.

above

The president is usually above party distinctions.

to choose

How is he elected?

elector

The president is elected by three hundred electors,  
every sixth year.

duty

What are his duties?

*No niin, mistä alkaisin?*

*tasavalta  
eroavaisuus*

*Suomi on tasavalta, kuten Yhdysvallatkin, mutta luon-  
nollisesti on eroavaisuuksia.*

*Joe*

*edustaa  
presidentti  
puolue*

*Edustaako presidenttinne jotakin puoluetta?*

*Eino*

*Ei.*

*yläpuolella*

*Presidentti on tavallisesti puoluerajojen yläpuolella.*

*Joe*

*valita*

*Kuinka hänet valitaan?*

*Eino*

*valitsija*

*Presidentin valitsee joka kuudes vuosi kolmesataa valit-  
sijamiestä.*

*Joe*

*tehtävä*

*Mitä kaikkea kuuluu hänen tehtäviinsä?*

to appoint *or* to name  
minister  
to form  
cabinet

Among other things, he appoints the prime minister,  
who then forms the cabinet.

ministry  
What are the ministries?

justice *or* court  
defense

The most important are the Ministry of Foreign Affairs, Ministry of Justice, Ministry of Defense and the Ministry of the Interior, as well as some six others.

diet *or* parliament  
majority  
support

The ministers must have the support of the majority  
in parliament.

to organize  
Tell me how the parliament is organized in Finland.

*Eino*

*nimittää*  
*ministeri*  
*muodostaa*  
*valtioneuvosto*

*Muunmuassa hän nimittää pääministerin, joka sitten muodostaa valtioneuvoston.*

*Joe*

*ministeriö*  
*Mitkä ovat ministeriöt?*

*Eino*

*oikeus*  
*puolustus*  
*Tärkeimmät ovat Ulkoasiainministeriö, Oikeusministeriö, Puolustusministeriö, ja Sisäasiainministeriö sekä noin kuusi muuta.*

*eduskunta*  
*enemmistö*  
*kannatus*  
*Ministereillä täytyy olla eduskunnan enemmistön kannatus.*

*Joe*

*järjestää*  
*Kerrohan miten eduskunta on järjestetty Suomessa.*

chamber  
with a hundred  
with its representatives  
citizen  
to vote

There's only one chamber in the parliament, with two hundred representatives, whom citizens over twenty-one vote for for three years at a time.

Are there many parties in Finland?

social democratic  
agrarian

There are about seven parties, of which the Social Democratic and the Agrarian are the biggest at present.

supposing  
village  
to divide  
administrative

But supposing now I'm in a Finnish village—by the way, how is Finland divided administratively?

*Eino*

*kamari  
sataisine  
edustajineen  
kansalainen  
äänestää*

*Siellä on vain yksi kamari eduskunnassa kaksisataisine edustajineen jotka kansalaiset, jotka ovat yli kaksikymmentä yksi vuotta vanhoja äänestävät kolmeksi vuodeksi kerrallaan.*

*Joe*

*Onko Suomessa monta puoluetta?*

*Eino*

*sosialidemokraatti  
maalaisliitto*

*Siellä on noin seitsemän puoluetta, joista sosialidemokraatti ja maalaisliitto puolueet ovat suurimmat nykyään.*

*Joe*

*olettaen  
kylä  
jakaa  
hallinnollinen*

*Mutta olettaen nyt, että olen suomalaisessa kylässä—kesken kaiken—miten on Suomi jaettu hallinnollisesti?*

province  
governor  
It's divided into ten provinces, which are governed by  
a governor.

trouble  
to whom  
How about if I get into some kind of trouble—to  
whom could I turn?

to depend  
It depends on where you are.

sheriff or bailiff  
If you're in the country, it's best to consult the sheriff.  
In the city, you go to the police station, where they'll  
advise you.

Of course, being an American, you can always turn to  
the American Legation or Consulate.

That's clear.

Thanks for the advice.

382 [25-A]

*Eino*

*lääni*  
*maaherra*  
*Se on jaettu kymmeneen eri lääniin, joiden päänä on*  
*maaherra.*

*Joe*

*ikävyys*  
*kenen puoleen*  
*Entäs jos joutuisin jonkinlaisiin ikävyyksiin kenen*  
*puoleen voisin kääntyä?*

*Eino*

*riippua*  
*Se riippuu siitä missä olet.*  
*nimismies*  
*Jos olet maalla on paras kääntyä nimismiehen puoleen.*  
*Kaupungissa menet poliisiasemalle, missä he neuvovat*  
*sinoa.*  
*Tietysti voit aina amerikkalaisena kääntyä Yhdysval-*  
*tojen lähetystön tai konsulaatin puoleen.*

*Joe*

*Sehän on selvä.*  
*Kiitos kaikista neuvoistasi.*

passport

I should tell you besides always to keep your passport about you.

And I'm sure that if you 'do in Rome as the Romans do', you don't have to be afraid of getting into trouble.

passi

*Vielä tahtoisin sanoa, että pidä passi aina mukanas.*

*Ja olen varma, että jos elät maassa maan tavalla ei sinun tarvitse pelätä joutuvasi ikävyyksiin.*

## OSA B—SANAOPPIA JA PERUSLAUSEITTEN JÄLKIKATSAUS

### 1. Sanaoppia

*Comment One—The Suffix -(t)e-*  
*olettaen*                      supposing

The suffix *-(t)e-*, in the above example, is added to the stem *oletta-* of the verb *olettaa* 'to suppose', and is followed by the suffix *-n*. This suffix is added to the consonant stem of verbs of the second class and must always be followed by one of two suffixes, namely *-n* (see unit 15, page 253) or *-ssa* (see unit 3, page 55). After a short vowel (the *-a-* of *oletta-*, for instance) the *-t-* of the suffix drops out and thus it becomes merely *-e-*; otherwise it will appear as *-te-*. When before the *-n* suffix, the meaning of *-(t)e-* is roughly 'the way in which something is done.' Further examples: *kävelleen*

'walking' (remember that *t* after *l* is replaced by *l*); *mennen* 'going', (remember that *t* after *n* is replaced by *n*); *käyden* 'visiting' (from *käy-te-n*, with automatic change of *t* to *d*), *varaten* 'reserving' (from *varat-te-n*, with automatic change of *tt* to *t*), *ohjaten* 'directing', and so forth.

<i>peljätessä</i>	while afraid
<i>huolehtiessa</i>	while attending to
<i>tullessa</i>	while coming
<i>juodessa</i>	while drinking

When the *-(t)e-* suffix is followed by *-ssa*, it means roughly that the action goes on while something else happens, as the above examples show.

## 2. Covering English and Finnish of Word Study

Give the English equivalents of all Finnish expressions in the *Word Study* and the Finnish for all the English. This is individual study.

## 3. Peruslauseitten jälkikatsaus

Further oral practice with the first half of the *Basic Sentences*.

# OSA C—PERUSLAUSEITTEN JÄLKIKATSAUS (*Jatkoa*)

## 1. Peruslauseitten jälkikatsaus (*Jatkoa*)

Further oral practice with the second half of the *Basic Sentences*.

## 2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences

Check your knowledge of the meaning of all words and phrases in the *Basic Sentences*. This is individual study.

## 3. Mitä te sanoisitte?

I. Translate the words in parentheses and fit them into their respective sentences; then say each sentence aloud.

1. *Toverini kertoi, että hän oli koko viime kesän maalla* (fishing) *ja* (hunting) *kaiket päivät.*
2. *On turhaa koettaa mennä sinne* (driving) *autolla,* *sillä tiet ovat niin huonot.*

3. (Thinking) *asiaa enemmän en luule, että hän tar-*  
*koitti loukata sinua.*
4. (Writing) *kirjeen koneella saatte sen valmiiksi pal-*  
*jon nopeammin.*
5. *Työnantaja lähti* (muttering) *kotiinsa.*
6. (Travelling) *Tanskassa tänä talvena olin suuressa*  
*junaonnettomuudessa.*
7. (Coming) *teille eilen illalla näimme paljon ihmisiä*  
*kadulla.*
8. *Kuulitteko mitään mielenkiintoista* (visiting) *Edus-*  
*kuntatalossa viime viikolla?*
9. (Answering) *tuolla tavalla tulitteko ajatelleeksi*  
*mitä sanoitte?*
10. (Singing) *aika menee nopeasti.*

II. Discuss these questions relating to Finnish government as fully as possible.

1. *Kuinka mones vuosi Suomessa aina valitaan presi-*  
*dentti?*



2. *Kuka on presidentin yläpuolella?*
3. *Onko Suomessa enemmän kuin kaksi puoluetta?*
4. *Kuka on läänin päämies?*
5. *Kuka muodostaa valtioneuvoston?*
6. *Jos hukkaat passisi ollessasi maalla, Suomessa, kenen puoleen sinun on parasta kääntyä?*

7. *Onko Suomi jaetta hallinnollisesti kyliin?*
8. *Kuinka monta edustajaa on Suomen eduskunnassa?*
9. *Montako ministeriä on Valtioneuvostossa?*
10. *Kuinka vanha täytyy Suomen kansalaisen olla voidakseen äänestää?*

## OSA D—LISTENING IN

### 1. Mitä te sanoisitte?

With the other members of the group, give orally your responses to the previous exercises as the Leader calls for them.

### 2. Word Study Check-Up

Give the Finnish for all English equivalents in the *Word Study* as the Leader calls for it.

### 3. Listening In

*Oikeudessa*

*I*

*Suomalainen maanviljelijä, joka halusi tulla Amerikan kansalaiseksi oli oikeudessa ja tuomari kysyi häneltä:*

*—Pidätkö te tästä maasta?*

*—Kyllä varmasti, vastasi mies.*

*—Ja pidätkö myöskin meidän hallituksestamme?*

*—Kyllä, mutta haluaisin saada sadetta vähän enemmän.*

*II*

*Yksinkertainen suomalainen mies oli oikeudessa tullakseen Yhdysvaltojen kansalaiseksi.*

*Tuomari:—Kuka on Yhdysvaltojen presidentti?*

*Mies vastasi siihen oikein.*

*—Ja kuka sitten on New Yorkin kaupunginjohtaja?*

*Siihenkin mies vastasi oikein.*

*—Voisitteko te tulla Yhdysvaltain presidentiksi?*

*—En.*

—No miksi ette?

—Anteeksi tuomari. Minulla on hyvin kiire. Olen työssä joka päivä koko päivän nykyään.

### III

Tuomari kysyi mieheltä:

—Voitteko te lukea ja kirjoittaa?

—Voin kirjoittaa, mutta en lukea, vastasi mies.

—Kirjoittakaa nimenne sitten tuohon, olkaa hyvä.

Mies kirjoitti jotakin paperille.

—Mitä te kirjoititte? —kysyi hämmästynyt tuomari.

—En tiedä, sillä sanoinhan etten voi lukea.

### IV. Isä ja poika keskusteleval Suomesta

#### Poika

Hei isä!

Mitä tiedät?

Oliko sinulla kiirettä konttorissa tänään?

#### Isä

Terve Jorma.

Ei niin kovin, mutta olen kuitenkin väsynyt.

#### Poika

Tahtoisin, että auttaisit minua kotitehtävässäni tänään jos et ole liian väsynyt.

#### Isä

Tietysti, hyvä lapsi, kerrohan nyt miten voin sinua auttaa.

Siitä on pitkä aika kun minä kävin koulua ja olen unohtanut paljon asioita.

#### Poika

Asia on aivan toista.

Sinähän kerroit minulle, että olit kerran Suomessa käymässä silloin kun minä en ollut vielä syntynyt-kään.

#### Isä

Aivan oikein.

Äitisi ja minä olimme Suomessa monta viikkoa eräänä kesänä, odotahan, siitä on jo yksitoista vuotta.

#### Poika

Katsos, me luemme koulussa nyt juuri Suomesta ja ajattelin että pyydän sinua kertomaan minulle jotakin siitä maasta.

*Isä*

*No, mitä kaikkea haluaisit tietää?*

*Poika*

*Ensiksikin kuka hallitsee Suomea?*

*Isä*

*Suomen valtion päämies on presidentti samalla tavalla  
kuin Yhdysvalloissakin.*

*Poika*

*Valitaanko hänet neljäksi vuodeksi kerrallaan?*

*Isä*

*Ei, kuudeksi.*

*Poika*

*Kuka saa äänestää Suomessa?*

*Isä*

*Kaikki miehet ja naiset, jotka ovat yli kaksikymmentäneljä vuotta vanhoja.*

*Poika*

*Kuinka paljon ihmisiä asuu Suomessa?*

*Isä*

*Vain noin puolet siitä mitä asuu New Yorkin kaupungissa.*

*Poika*

*Mutta opettaja sanoi, että Suomi on suurempi kuin Englanti.*

*Isä*

*Se on totta myöskin.*

*Nyt lapseni minun täytyy mennä vuoteeseen ja parasta on, että sinä myös menet, kello on pian puoli yksitoista.*

## OSA E—KESKUSTELUA

### 1. Covering the Finnish of Basic Sentences

With the Finnish covered, practice until you can speak the Finnish for each English sentence without hesitation. This is individual study.

### 2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Give the Finnish for all English sentences in the *Basic Sentences* as the Leader calls for it.

### 3. Keskustelua

1. A soldier is buying books and he asks the bookseller about the contents of various books which he picks up from the counter. The bookseller tells him that one book is on languages, another is a cookbook, the third is a detective story, the next deals with government, and so on.
2. A Finn is asking an American soldier friend about

the organization of the United States government. Later the soldier explains where his friend would have to turn if he got involved in a street accident in, say, Chicago.

3. Compare the government of Finland with the government of the United States (or of any other country you know), pointing out how they differ and how they are alike.

### OSA F—KESKUSTELUA (*Jatkoa*)

Complete conversation. Additional check-up on the material of the *Basic Sentences* by the Leader if it seems necessary.

#### *Jälkikatsaus*

Complete check-up on the material of the *Word Study* and *Basic Sentences*.

#### Sanaluettelo

<i>ankara</i>	severe or strict
<i>edustaa</i>	to represent
<i>edustajineen</i>	with its representatives
<i>enemmistö</i>	majority

<i>eroavaisuus</i>	difference
<i>etukäteen</i>	beforehand
<i>hallinnollinen</i>	administrative
<i>hallitus</i>	government
<i>ikävyys</i>	trouble
<i>jakaa</i>	to divide
<i>joutua</i>	to get
<i>järjestää</i>	to organize
<i>kamari</i>	chamber
<i>kannatus</i>	support
<i>kansalainen</i>	citizen

<i>kenen puoleen</i>	to whom
<i>kiitollinen</i>	grateful
<i>kylä</i>	village
<i>lääni</i>	province
<i>maalaisliitto</i>	agrarian
<i>maaherra</i>	governor
<i>matkustaa</i>	to travel
<i>melkein</i>	almost
<i>ministeri</i>	minister
<i>ministeriö</i>	ministry
<i>muodostaa</i>	to form
<i>nimismies</i>	sheriff <i>or</i> bailiff
<i>nimittää</i>	to appoint <i>or</i> to name
<i>oikeus</i>	justice <i>or</i> court
<i>olettaa</i>	to suppose
<i>passi</i>	passport
<i>presidentti</i>	president

<i>puolue</i>	party
<i>puolustus</i>	defence
<i>riippua</i>	to depend
<i>sataisine</i>	with a hundred
<i>selittää</i>	to explain
<i>sosialdemokraatti</i>	socialdemocratic
<i>syntyä</i>	to be born
<i>tasavalta</i>	republic
<i>-(t)e</i>	verb suffix
<i>tehtävä</i>	duty
<i>tulli</i>	customs <i>or</i> duty
<i>vaikeus</i>	difficulty
<i>valita</i>	choose
<i>valitsija</i>	elector
<i>valtioneuvosto</i>	cabinet
<i>yläpuolella</i>	above

SUOMEN TEOLLISUUS<sup>1</sup>

OSA A—PERUSLAUSEET

*Jaakko Hirvi ja Bob Emerson keskusteleivat Suomen teollisuudesta.*

ENGLANNIKSI

SUOMEKSI

*Bob Emerson*

nature  
A friend of mine has talked a lot about Finland and  
its countryside.

luonto  
*Toverini on kertonut minulle niin paljon Suomesta ja  
sen luonnosta.*

*Jaakko Hirvi*

So you have some other Finnish friends too.

*Sinulla on siis muitakin suomalaisia tovereita.*

*Bob Emerson*

Yes.

*On kyllä.*

to study  
The fellow was here to study in the same university  
with me.

opiskella  
*Hän oli opiskelemassa täällä samassa yliopistossa  
minun kanssani.*

We were roommates.

*Olimme huonetoverit.*

<sup>1</sup>*Teollisuus* 'industry'.

*Jaakko Hirvi*

to mention  
Did he ever happen to talk about Finnish industry?

*mainita*  
*Tuliko hän koskaan maininneeksi mitään Suomen*  
*teollisuudesta?*

*Bob Emerson*

No.  
idealist  
practicality  
He was more idealistic than practical.

*Ei.*  
*idealisti*  
*käytäntö*  
*Hän oli enempi idealisti kuin käytännön mies.*

*Jaakko Hirvi*

lately  
powerful or enormous  
step  
Lately Finnish industry has grown by leaps and  
bounds.

*viime aikoina*  
*valtava*  
*askel*  
*Viime aikoina on Suomen teollisuus mennyt eteenpäin*  
*valtavin askelin.*

*Bob Emerson*

is mentioned  
branch  
It's said that timber is one of the main branches of  
your industry.

*on mainittu*  
*haara*  
*On mainittu että puuteollisuus on yksi teollisuutemme*  
*päähaara.*

*Jaakko Hirvi*

So it is.

*Niin on.*

reason  
green  
Not without reason, we Finns call our forests 'the  
green gold of Finland'.

<sup>227</sup>  
vihreä  
*Ilman sytä emme me suomalaiset kutsu metsiämme  
„Suomen vihreäksi kullaksi.”*

*Bob Emerson*

Very interesting.

*Hyvin mielenkiintoista.*

to suppose  
wooded  
I suppose your largest forests are in the east and  
north of Finland.

olettaa  
metsäinen  
*Oletan, että, Itä—ja Pohjois—Suomi ovat metsäisimmät.*

*Jaakko Hirvi*

They are.

*Niin ovat.*

log  
to float  
river  
lake  
along  
sawmill  
to be located  
railroad junction  
From there the logs are floated down the rivers and  
lakes to the sawmills, which are usually located at  
the mouths of rivers or at railroad junctions.

tukki  
uittaa  
joki  
järvi  
myöten  
sahalaitos  
sijaita  
rautatieristeys  
*Sieltä tukit uitetaan jokia ja järviä myöten sahalaitok-  
siin, jotka tavallisesti sijaitsevat jokien suissa tai  
rautatie risteyksissä.*



to be continued  
transportation  
further  
port  
load  
export

From there the transportation continues to the ports  
where the timber is loaded on ships for export.

*jatkua  
kuljetus  
edelleen  
satama  
lastata  
vienti*

*Siitä jatkuu kuljetus edelleen satamiin, joissa puutavara  
lastataan laivoihin ulkomaille vientiä varten.*

*Bob Emerson*

Which are your largest sawmills and loading ports?

*Mitkä ovat suurimmat sahalaitok senne ja lastaus-  
satamanne?*

*Jaakko Hirvi*

The largest ones are in Kemi, Oulu, Kokkola, Rauma,  
Kotka and Käkisalmi.

*Suurimmat ovat Kemissä, Oulussa, Kokkolassa, Rau-  
malla, Kotkassa ja Käkisalmissa.*

*Bob Emerson*

next  
What branches of your industry are next in size?

*seuraava  
Mitkä ovat seuraaviksi suurimmat teollisuushaaranne?*

*Jaakko Hirvi*

technical  
power  
Next should be mentioned the electrotechnical indus-  
try.

*teknillinen  
voima  
Seuraavaksi voin mainita sähköteknillisen teollisuuden.*

The largest of these is the Imatra Power Station  
owned by the State.

*Suurin niistä on valtion omistama Imatran Voimalaitos.*

How about Outokumpu?

*Bob Emerson*

*Entäs Outokumpu?*

Aha!

*Jaakko Hirvi*

*Ahaa!*

copper  
mine

*kupari  
kaivos*

Outokumpu is our well known coppermine.

*Outokumpu on tunnettu kuparikaivoksemme.*

It's also owned by the State.

*Se on myöskin valtion omistama.*

*Bob Emerson*

Have you other mines too?

*Onko teillä muita kaivoksia?*

*Jaakko Hirvi*

nickel  
iron

*nikkeli  
rauta*

Sure, we have a nickel mine in Petsamo and also iron  
mines.

*Kyllä, meillä on nikkeli-kaivos Petsamossa ja myöskin  
rautakaivoksia.*

*Bob Emerson*

linen  
cotton

*pellava  
pumpuli*

My friend told me that at Tampere they have many  
linen and cotton mills.

*Toverini kertoi Tampereella olevan monta pellava-ja  
pumpulitehdasta.*

*Jaakko Hirvi*

Finlayson, in Tampere is the largest cotton mill in northern Europe.

*Finlayson Tampereella on Pohjois-Euroopan suurin pumputitehdas.*

We also have many linen and wool factories.

*Myöskin on meillä paljon pellava-ja villatehtaita.*

*Bob Emerson*

textile  
standard *or* attitude

*kutoma  
kanta*

The textile industry seems to have very high standards.

*Kutomateollisuus näyttää olevan hyvin korkealla kannalla.*

*Jaakko Hirvi*

skin *or* leather  
connection

*nahka  
yhteys*

In connection with the leather industry I could mention the leather and shoe factories of Aaltonen, also in Tampere.

*Nahkateollisuuden yhteydessä voin muunmuassa mainita Aaltosen Kenkä ja Nahkatehtaat, myöskin Tampereella.*

china  
product

*porsliini  
tuote*

I've seen the products of your china and glass industry here in America.

*Olen nähnyt teidän porsliini-ja lasiteollisuutenne tuotteita täällä Amerikassa.*

*Jaakko Hirvi*

line

*ala*

By way of home industries one must mention the grain, tobacco and sugar industries.

*Kotiteollisuuden alalla on hyvin tärkeätä myöskin mainita viljatupakka-ja sokeriteollisuus.*

furniture  
special  
chair

I specially like the products of your furniture industry, such as the chairs and tables, etc.

huonekalu  
erikoinen  
tuoli

*Pidän erikoisesti teidän huonekaluteollisuutenne tuotteista niinkuin uudenaikaisista tuoleista, pöydistä, j.n.e.*

## OSA B—SANAOPPIA JA PERUSLAUSEITTEN JÄLKIKATSAUS

### 1. Sanaoppia

*Comment One—The Suffix -ne*

*kaikkine yksityiskohtineen* with all the particulars  
*kaksisataisine edustajineen* with its two hundred representatives

The suffix *-ne*, used in the above illustrations is a case suffix meaning 'with'. It is always preceded by the plural marker *-i-*, even when the meaning is singular, and followed by one of the possessive suffixes. The possessive *-nsa* is often replaced, as above, by *-n*, before which *-ne-* becomes *-nee-*. Here are some more examples: *menin oopperaan vaimoineni* 'I went to the opera with my wife', *hän on pellolla lehminensä* (or *lehmineen*) 'he's on the field with his cows', *komppania*

*miehineen päivineen lähti rintamalle* 'the company went with all men and equipment to the front'.

*Comment Two—The Suffix -u*

*on korjattu* is repaired  
*on mainittu* is said

The suffix *-u* always follows the *-(t)ta(')*-suffix added to the stem, but the latter loses its *-a(')*- before the *-u*. Thus, *korjata* 'to repair', consonant stem *korjat-*, becomes *korjat-t-u*; *mainita* 'to mention', stem *mainit-*, becomes *mainit-t-u*. With *on*, the meaning of these forms is illustrated by the above phrases. Note these forms: *se on tunnettu kirja* 'it's a known book' (*tuntea* 'to know'), *se on tiedetty koko Suomessa* 'it's known all over Finland' (*tietää* 'to know'), *on nähty monta kertaa*

'it has been seen many times' (*nähdä* 'to see'), *työ on tehty* 'the work is done' (*tehdä* 'to do').

### Comment Three—Suffix *-inen*

*metsäinen*                      wooded

You've learned the word *metsä* 'forest', and you've had *metsäinen* 'wooded'. Note the suffix *-inen*: this suffix is often added to nouns, especially those meaning quantity, age, or quality. Study these further examples: *tässä on tämän päiväinen postinne* 'here's your mail of today' *se on viimevuotinen sanomalehti* 'it's last year's paper', *nälkäinen lapsi meni kadulle* 'the hungry child went to the street'.

Note that the stem form of *-inen* is *-ise-*, *-is-*; *viimeviikkoiset ruokatavarat ovat lopussa* 'last week's food supplies are exhausted'.

*poika(i)nen*                      little boy

The *-inen* suffix is also diminutive, though it's usually found as *-nen*: *poikanen*; *tyttönen* 'little girl', *laulun* 'little song'.

### Comment Four—Place Names

*suurimmat ovat*                      the largest ones are in  
*Kemissä*                              in Kemi

<i>Oulussa</i>	in Oulu
<i>Kokkolassa</i>	in Kokkola
<i>Raumalla</i>	in Rauma
<i>Kotkassa</i>	in Kotka
<i>Käkisalmissa</i>	in Käkisalmi

Note the way you say 'in Rauma': *Raumalta*; but in all other cases the suffix *-ssa* is used. For some place names, like *Tampere* or *Rovaniemi*, you must use the *-lta*, for others, like *Helsinki*, *Turku*, or *Tonio*, you must use the *-ssa*. There is no way of knowing which to use, except to learn each place name separately.

<i>Oulusta</i>	from Oulu
<i>Raumalta</i>	from Rauma

Note that place names which take *-ssa* for 'in', take *-sta* for 'from', and those which take *-lla* for 'in' take *-lta* for 'from'.

<i>Ouluun</i>	to Oulu
<i>Raumalle</i>	to Rauma

Note that place names which take *-ssa* and *-sta* take *-(h)xn* for 'to'; but those which take *-lla* and *-lta* take *-lle* for 'to'.

## 2. Covering English and Finnish of Word Study

Give the English equivalents of all Finnish expressions in the *Word Study* and the Finnish for all the English. This is individual study.

## 3. Peruslauseitten jälkikatsaus

*Jatkakaa peruslauseitten ensi osan harjoitusta<sup>2</sup> suullisesti<sup>3</sup>.*

## OSA C—PERUSLAUSEITTEN JÄLKIKATSAUS (*Jatkoa*)

### 1. Peruslauseitten jälkikatsaus

*Jatkakaa peruslauseitten toisen osan harjoitusta suullisesti.*

### 2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences

Check your knowledge of the meaning of all words and phrases in the *Basic Sentences*. This is individual study.

### 3. Mitä te sanoisitte?

I. Translate the expressions in parentheses and fit them into their respective sentences. Say each sentence aloud.

1. *Sisareni matkusti* (with her children) *kesälomalle*.

<sup>2</sup>*Harjoitus* 'practice'. <sup>3</sup>*Suullisesti* 'by mouth'.

2. *Laiva saapui satamaan* (with its passengers).

3. *Sotilaat lähtivät* (with their rifles) *rintamalle*.

4. *Maanviljelijä osti talon* (with the forests).

5. *Kaupunki* (with its factories and large buildings) *näytti kauniilta*.

6. *Kesä on jo lopussa* (with its warm days).

7. *Talvi tulee* (with excellent skiing conditions).

8. (With all his knowledge) *ei hän kuitenkaan ollut tyytyväinen*.

9. *Liikkeessä oli paljon tavaraa* (with different prices).

10. *Pidän hänestä hyvin paljon* (with all her nonsense).

II. Fit the words in parentheses into their respective sentences.

1. *Posti on (lähettää) Ruotsiin jo kauan sitten*.

2. *Raha on (panna) pankkiin talletustilille*.

3. *On (sanoa), että metsät ovat Suomen vihreätä kultaa.*
4. *Lippu on (ostaa) tämän illan teatteria varten.*
5. *Tukit on (kuljettaa) sahalaistokseen.*
6. *Suomesta on (viedä) paljon tavaraa ulkomaille.*

7. *Kello on (siirtää) kolme tuntia eteenpäin.*
8. *Kuparikaivoksesta on (löytää) myöskin nikkeliä.*
9. *Koulussa on (laululla) samusta iltaan.*
10. *Liikkeessä ei (tietää) paljonko sen hinta on.*

## OSA D—LISTENING IN

### 1. Mitä te sanoitte?

*Yhdessä luokan toisten oppilaitten kanssa vastatkaa suullisesti edellisiin<sup>4</sup> harjoituksiin kun ohjaaja<sup>5</sup> kysyy.*

### 2. Word Study Check-Up

*Give the Finnish for all English equivalents in the Word Study as the Leader calls for it.*

### 3. Listening In

*I. Kysymyksiä ja vastauksia Suomen teollisuudesta.*

*Mikä on Suomen pääteollisuus?*

*Suomen pääteollisuus on puuteollisuus.*

*Missä on Suomen suurin pumpulitehdas?*

*Suurin pumpulitehdas on Tampereella.*

*missä ovat suurimmat metsät Suomessa?*

*Suurimmat metsät ovat Itä- ja Pohjois-Suomessa.*

*Mikä ovat kotiteollisuutemme tärkeimmät haarat?*

*Vilja- tupakka- ja sokeriteollisuus.*

*Millaisella kannalla on kutomateollisuus?*

*Kutomateollisuus on hyvin korkealla kannalla.*

*Missä on Suomen nikkeli-kaivos?*

*Nikkelikaivos on Petsamossa.*

*Mitä muita kaivoksia on Suomessa?*

*Suomessa on myöskin rauta- ja kuparikaivoksia.*

*Mikä on Suomen suurin teollisuuskaupunki?*

*Tampere on Suomen suurin teollisuuskaupunki.*

*Mikä on Pohjoiseuroopan suurin pumpulitehdas?*

*Finlayson on Pohjoiseuroopan suurin pumpulitehdas.*

*Onko Suomessa nahkateollisuutta?*

*Kyllä.*

<sup>4</sup>Edellinen 'previous'. <sup>5</sup>Ohjaaja 'leader'.

*Missä ovat suurimmat lastaus-satamamme?*  
*Ne ovat Kemissä, Oulussa, Kokkolassa, Raumalla,*  
*Kotkassa ja Käkisalmissa.*  
*Kuinka puutavara kuljetetaan lastauspaikkoihin?*  
*Puutavara uitetaan jokia ja järviä myöten lastauspaik-*  
*koihin.*  
*Kuinka suomalaiset kutsuvat metsiään?*  
*He kutsuvat metsiään "Suomen vihreäksi kullaksi".*  
*Mikä on Outokumpu?*  
*Outokumpu on kuparikaivos.*  
*Mitä tehtaita on Tampereella?*  
*Tampereella on kenkä- ja nahkatehtaita, pellava-*  
*pumpuli- ja villatehtaita.*  
*Missä sahalaitokset tavallisesti sijaitsevat?*  
*Ne sijaitsevat jokien suissa tai rautatieristeyksissä.*

*Onko Imatran Voimalaitos valtion omistama?*  
*Kyllä, valtio omistaa sen.*

## II. Miksi opiskella?

*Mitä enemmän me opiskelemme, sitä enemmän me*  
*tiedämme.*  
*Mitä enemmän me tiedämme, sitä enemmän me unoh-*  
*damme.*  
*Mitä enemmän me unohdamme, sitä vähemmän me*  
*tiedämme.*  
*Mitä vähemmän me tiedämme, sitä vähemmän me*  
*unohdamme.*  
*Mitä vähemmän me unohdamme, sitä enemmän me*  
*tiedämme.*  
*Miksi opiskella?*

## OSA E—KESKUSTELUA

### 1. Covering the Finnish of Basic Sentences

With the Finnish covered, practice until you can speak the Finnish for each English sentence without hesitation. This is individual study.

### 2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Give the Finnish for all English sentences in the *Basic Sentences* as the Leader calls for it.



### 3. Keskustelua

1. A and B are discussing the products of American and Finnish industries. A mentions what is manufactured in the United States and B answers that such a product is either manufactured in Finland or has to be imported.
2. Captain Kangas of the U. S. Army used to import furniture from Finland and sell it in New York.

He runs across one of the merchants from whom he used to import. They talk about the present situation between the two countries, especially with regard to export and import of goods.

3. Two noncoms are asking a waiter about the various industries in the city where they are stationed. The latter tells them they used to have glass factories, but they were transformed for war.

### OSA F—KESKUSTELUA (*Jatkoa*)

Complete conversation. Additional check-up on the material of the *Basic Sentences* by the Leader if it seems necessary.

#### *Jälkikatsaus*

Complete check-up on the material of the *Word Study* and *Basic Sentences*.

#### Sanaluettelo

<i>ala</i>	line
<i>askel</i>	step
<i>edelleen</i>	further
<i>edellinen</i>	previous
<i>erikoiseeti</i>	special

<i>haara</i>	branch
<i>harjoitus</i>	practice
<i>huonekalu</i>	furniture
<i>idealisti</i>	idealist
<i>-inen</i>	noun suffix, diminutive
<i>jatkua</i>	to be continued
<i>joki</i>	river
<i>järvi</i>	lake
<i>kaivos</i>	mine
<i>kanta</i>	standard <i>or</i> attitude
<i>kuljetus</i>	transportation
<i>kupari</i>	copper

<i>kutoma</i>	textile
<i>käytäntö</i>	practicality
<i>lastata</i>	to load
<i>luonto</i>	nature
<i>mainita</i>	to mention
<i>myöten</i>	along
<i>nahka</i>	skin <i>or</i> leather
<i>-ne</i>	with
<i>nikkeli</i>	nickel
<i>ohjaaja</i>	leader
<i>olettaa</i>	to suppose
<i>on mainittu</i>	is mentioned
<i>opiskella</i>	to study
<i>pellava</i>	linen
<i>porsiini</i>	china
<i>pumpuli</i>	cotton
<i>rauta</i>	iron
<i>rautatieristeys</i>	railroad junction

<i>sahalaitos</i>	sawmill
<i>satama</i>	port
<i>seuraava</i>	next
<i>sijaita</i>	to be located
<i>suullisesti</i>	by mouth
<i>syy</i>	reason
<i>teknillinen</i>	technical
<i>teollisuus</i>	industry
<i>tukki</i>	log
<i>tuoli</i>	chair
<i>tuote</i>	product
<i>-u</i>	verb suffix
<i>uittaa</i>	to float
<i>valtava</i>	powerful <i>or</i> enormous
<i>vienti</i>	export
<i>vihreä</i>	green
<i>viime aikoina</i>	lately
<i>voima</i>	power
<i>yhteys</i>	connection

# KASVATUSJÄRJESTELMÄ<sup>1</sup>

## OSA A—PERUSLAUSEET

### ENGLANNIKSI

compulsory education  
full

Compulsory education came in full effect in Finland in 1937.

going  
compulsory  
age

It is compulsory for children to go to school between the ages of seven and sixteen.

study

The children may continue their education in several ways.

elementary school  
extension

After elementary school they may continue their studies in extension classes for the two years following.

### SUOMEKSI

*oppivelvollisuus*  
*täysi*

*Oppivelvollisuus tuli täyteen voimaan Suomessa vuonna yhdeksäntoistasataakolmekymmentäseitsemän.*

*käynti*  
*pakollinen*  
*ikä*

*Koulunkäynti on pakollinen lapsille seitsemästä kuuteentoista ikävuoteen.*

*opinto*

*Lapset voivat jatkaa opintojaan monella eri tavalla.*

*kansakoulu*  
*jatko*

*Kansakoulun jälkeen he jatkavat opintojaan jatkoluokissa kahtena seuraavana vuotena.*

<sup>1</sup>*Kasvatus* 'education'; *järjestelmä* 'sys.em'.

illiterate  
percentage

The percentage of illiterates is very small.

training college for teachers

There are four training colleges for prospective teachers in Finland.

country youth  
peoples high school

The country youth may go from elementary school to the people's high school.

theoretical  
teaching  
practical  
subject *or* material  
household

Beside theoretical subjects they teach also practical subjects, such as handicrafts, home economics, and agriculture.

working men's institute  
district

The working men's institute has the same function in the cities and factory districts as the people's high school in the country.

*lukutaidoton  
prosentti*

*Lukutaidottomien prosentti on hyvin pieni.*

*seminaari*

*Suomessa on neljä seminaaria kansakoulun opettajiksi aikovia varten.*

*maalaisnuoriso  
kansanopisto*

*Maalaisnuoriso voi mennä kansakouluista kansanopistoihin.*

*tietopuolinen  
opetus  
käytännöllinen  
aine  
talous*

*Niissä tietopuolisen opetuksen lisäksi opetetaan myös käytännöllisiä aineita, kuten käsitöitä kotitaloutta ja maataloutta.*

*työväenopisto  
seutu*

*Työväenopistoilla on sama tehtävä kaupungeissa ja tehdasseuduilla kuin kansanopistoilla maaseuduilla.*

freedom  
worker  
union

After Finland's War of Independence the workers, who now have an eight hour working day, formed a union.

social  
knowledge

Its purpose is to spread social knowledge among the people.

to support  
course  
library  
activity *or* pursuit

It supports courses of study, libraries, artistic and other activities.

student  
schooling  
secondary school

Students who want further schooling may attend secondary schools.

Latin  
mathematics

In these schools they study languages such as Latin, German, Swedish, as well as mathematics, etc.

*vapaus*  
*työläinen*  
*liitto*

*Suomen vapaussodan jälkeen työläiset, joilla nyt on kahdeksan tunnin työpäivä ovat muodostaneet liiton.*

*yhteiskunnallinen*  
*tieto*

*Sen tehtävänä on opettaa yhteiskunnallista tietoa kansalle.*

*ylläpitää*  
*kurssi*  
*kirjasto*  
*harrastus*

*Se ylläpitää opintokursseja, kirjastoja, taide- ja muita harrastuksia.*

*opiskelija*  
*koulutus*  
*oppikoulu*

*Opiskelijat, jotka haluavat korkeampaa koulutusta voivat mennä oppikouluihin.*

*latina*  
*matematiikka*

*Näissä kouluissa opetetaan kieliä kuten latinaa, saksaa, ruotsia, sekä matematiikkaa j. n. e.*

voluntary *or* by choice  
Some of these languages are compulsory, others by choice.

pupil  
There are in Finland about 230 secondary schools, with some 54,000 pupils.

Four fifths of these schools are Finnish, one fifth Swedish.

scientific  
The center of Finnish scientific life is the University of Helsinki.

Institute of Technology  
to be trained  
engineer  
chemist  
Engineers and chemists are trained at the Institute of Technology.

Other technical schools include industrial, trade, craft, and agricultural schools.

There are dairy schools at Kuopio, Kokemäki, and Kakkola.

*vapaaehtoinen*  
*Toiset kielet ovat pakollisia toiset vapaaehtoisia.*

*oppilas*  
*Suomessa on noin kaksisataakolmekymmentä oppikoulua ja niissä noin viisikymmentäneljätuhatta oppilasta.*

*Neljä viidettä osaa näistä kouluista on suomalaisia, yksi viides osa ruotsalaisia.*

*tieteellinen*  
*Tieteellisen elämän keskus on Helsingin Yliopisto.*

*Teknillinen Korkeakoulu*  
*valmistua*  
*insinööri*  
*kemisti*  
*Teknillisessä Korkeakoulussa valmistuu insinöörejä ja kemistejä.*

*On muitakin teknillisiä kouluja kuten teollisuuskouluja, ammattikouluja, käsityökouluja maanviljelyskouluja.*

*Meijerikouluja on Kuopiossa, Kokemäellä ja Kokkolassa.*

significance or weight  
history  
folklore  
studying

Great weight is given in Finland to the study of Finnish history, Finnish language and folklore.

*merkitys*  
*historia*  
*kansanrunous*  
*opiskelu*

*Suuri merkitys Suomessa pannaan Suomen historian, suomenkielen ja kansanrunouden opiskelulle.*

## OSA B—SANAOPPIA JA PERUSLAUSEITTEN JÄLKIKATSAUS

### 1. Sanaoppia

*Comment One—The Suffix -tta-*

*menettää*      to lose      *uittaa*      to float

You know the verbs *mennä* 'to go', and *uida* 'to swim'. When you add the suffix *-tta-* to these verbs they come to mean 'to cause to go' or 'to lose', 'to cause to swim' or 'to float'. The meaning of the suffix, therefore, is 'to cause to'. The suffix is added to stems of one syllable (thus, *juoda* 'to drink', stem *juo-*, *juottaa* 'to make drink' (animals, for example); *syödä* 'to eat', stem *syö*, *syöttää* 'to feed'). The suffix is also added to stems of two syllables, ending in a short vowel (thus, *laulaa* 'to sing', stem *laula-*, *laulattaa* 'to make sing'), and to the vowel stem of two syllable verbs belonging to stem type II (thus, *panna* 'to put', stem *pane-*, *panettaa* 'to make someone put'; don't

confuse this suffix with *-(t)ta()*-, unit 17, pages 284-6, which is always added to the consonant stem of these verbs: contrast *menettä-* and *mentä-*). Certain other verb stems take slightly different variants of this same suffix (*-ta-* or *-utta-*).

*Comment Two—Suffix -u-*

*jatkua*      to be continued      *parantua*      to get well  
*valmistua*      to be trained

You've learned the verb *jatkaa* 'to continue'; contrast it with *jatkua* 'to be continued'. Similarly, while *parantaa* means 'to cure', *parantua* means 'to get well'; *valmistaa* means 'to make ready' or 'to prepare', *valmistua* 'to be made ready' or 'to be trained'. The meaning of the *-u-* suffix, therefore, is 'to be done to' (reflexive) in contrast to 'to do'. Compare also *kääntää* 'to turn' something or someone else and *kääntyä* 'to

turn' (oneself). The suffix is added to stems ending in *-a-*, *-ä-*, *-e-*, and the latter usually disappears before the *-u-*, as in the above examples (note also *sulkea* 'to close', *sulkeutua* 'to be closed automatically'). Certain other verb stems take slightly different variants of this same suffix (*-utu-*, *-pu-*).

*Comment Three—Variations on a Stem*

	<i>oppi</i>	study
<i>opinto</i>	<i>opetus</i>	<i>opiskelu</i>
<i>oppia</i>	<i>opettaa</i>	<i>opiskella</i>
<i>oppilas</i>	<i>opettaja</i>	<i>opiskelija</i>
<i>oppinut</i>	<i>opettajatar</i>	
<i>opisto</i>		

A glance at these eleven words will show that they are related in some way. Let's see what they have in common. Everyone of the words has the element *op-*; four words, moreover, have the element *opp-*. These two are merely variants of one another, as you know from the discussion in unit 11, pages 201-3 (just as *kupp-* is a variant of *kup-*; compare *kuppi* and *kupit*). Taking arbitrarily *opp-* as the basic form, we note that it's followed by either *-i-* or *-e-*. As you know, further, *-i-* is replaced by *-e-* in Finnish before certain suffixes, so the two vowels may be taken as variants

of one another. Now, taking *-i-* as the basic form, we arrive at the element *oppi-* which is common to all the above words. Having noted how these words are related, let's see now how they differ.

If we take *oppi-* as a basic stem underlying all the forms, then *oppi* 'study' is a basic free form.

Let's take the words in the column to the left, one by one.

*Opinto* consists of the stem *oppi-* and the suffix *-nto*, including the regular automatic replacement of *pp* by *p*. This suffix *-nto*, and the closely related suffixes *-nta*, *-nti*, mean roughly 'the act of'. Thus, *opinto* is 'the act of studying'; *etsintä* 'the act of looking for', 'the search' (from *etsiä* 'to look for'); *vienti* 'export' (from *viedä* 'to take away'); *tuonti* 'import' (from *tuoda* 'to bring').

*Oppia* 'to learn' consists of the stem and the suffix *-ta()*, which was discussed in unit 19, pages 307-8. In contrast to *oppi*, which we called a basic free form, we might call *oppia* a derived free form.

*Oppilas* 'pupil' consists of the stem and the suffix *-las*, the same which you've had in *sotilas* 'soldier', and *potilas* 'patient'.

*Oppinut* 'scholar' consists of the stem and the suffix *-nut*, which was discussed in unit 16, pages 270-1. The meaning, more exactly, is 'learned'; *oppinut mies* 'man of learning'. Note also, *oppinut maailma* 'the learned world'.



*Opisto* 'institute' consists of the stem and the suffix *-(i)sto*, which has a collective meaning. For example, *laiva* 'boat'; *laivasto* 'navy'; *kirja* 'book', *kirjasto* 'library'; *mies*, 'man', *miehistö* 'men' or 'crew'; *osa* 'part', *osasto* 'branch'.

Now we may take the words in the middle column. Note that *-i-* is replaced by *-e-* before all the suffixes here.

Earlier in this unit you learned the suffix *-tta-* 'to cause to'. 'To cause to learn' means 'to teach'. Hence *oppi-* plus *-tta-* form the derived stem *opetta-*.

*Opetus* (further derived stem *opetukse-*) 'teaching' is a rather special formation from the stem *opetta-* with the suffix *-us*, meaning, with the closely related suffix *-os* 'the act of'. Before these suffixes *-tta-* is replaced by *-t-*: thus also *kiitos* 'thanks, the act of thanking' from *kiittää* 'to thank' (note the further derived noun stem *kiitokse-*); *katsaus* 'review' from *katsoa* 'to look'; *tarkoittaa* 'to mean', *tarkoitus* 'meaning'; *merkilä* 'to mean', *merkitys* 'meaning'.

*Opettaa* 'to teach' consists of the derived stem *opetta-*, and the suffix *-ta(')* (see the form *oppia* above).

*Opettaja* 'teacher' consists of the derived stem *opetta-*, and the suffix *-ja*, which means 'one who acts'; *lukea* 'to read', *lukija* 'reader' (note that *-e-* is replaced by *-i-* before *-j-*); *mennä* 'to go', *menijä* 'one who goes'; *käydä* 'to go', *kävijä* 'visitor'; *antaa* 'to give', *antaja* 'giver'; and so on.

*Opettajatar* 'teacher' or 'school-mistress' is the same as the former, plus the suffix *-tar*, which was discussed in unit 15, page 252, and which designates people of feminine sex.

Let's turn to the words in the column to the right.

In addition to the basic stem form *oppi-*, the forms in this column have another common element, namely, the suffix *-skele-*. This suffix is one of several meaning roughly 'to do repeatedly', 'to do often', 'to do steadily'. 'To learn steadily' means 'to study'. Hence *oppi-* plus *-skele-* from the derived stem *opiskele-*.

*Opiskelu* 'studying' consists of the derived stem *opiskele-*, and the suffix *-u* (before which *-e-* disappears). This *-u* suffix means, like the closely related suffix *-o*, and like *-nto*, *-nta*, *-nti*, *-us*, *-os* discussed above, 'the act of'. For example, *löytää* 'to find', *löytö* 'discovery'; *jatkaa* 'to continue', *jatko* 'continuation'; *alkaa* 'to begin', *alku* 'beginning'.

*Opiskella* 'to study' consists of the derived stem *opiskele-*, and the suffix *-ta(')* (see the forms *oppia* and *opettaa* above).

*Opiskelija* 'student' consists of the derived stem *opiskele-*, and the suffix *-ja*, discussed above (see *opettaja*).

Many other suffixes could be added to the stem *oppi-*. Can you dig up other sets of related forms, based on some other stem? This process of derivation per-

vades the entire Finnish language and it is therefore important that you should understand it thoroughly.

## 2. Sanaopin jälkikatsaus

*Peittämällä<sup>2</sup> ensiksi englantilaiset ja sitten suomalaiset sanontatavat ääntäkää itsekseenne englantilaiset sanon-*

*tatavat suomeksi ja sitten vastaavat suomalaiset sanontatavat englanniksi.*

## 3. Peruslauseitten jälkikatsaus

*Jatkakaa peruslauseitten ensi osan harjoitusta suullisesti.*

# OSA C—PERUSLAUSEITTEN JÄLKIKATSAUS (Jatkoa)

## 1. Peruslauseitten jälkikatsaus (Jatkoa)

*Jatkakaa peruslauseitten toisen osan harjoitusta suullisesti.*

## 2. Peruslauseitten kertausta<sup>3</sup>

*Kerratkaa itsekseenne kaikki peruslauseet ja sanontatavat niin että osaatte<sup>4</sup> ne ja tiedätte niiden tarkoituksen.*

## 3. Mitä te sanoisitte?

I. Say each sentence aloud. When you are sure that you understand it, mark it true (T) or false (F), assuming that the information contained in this and the previous units is correct.

<sup>2</sup>Peittää 'to cover'. <sup>3</sup>Kerrata 'to repeat' or 'to review'.

<sup>4</sup>Osata 'to know how'.

1. *On mahdollonta matkustaa lentokoneella Tukholmasta Helsinkiin.*
2. *Suomessa presidentti aina edustaa puoluetta.*
3. *Presidentti valitaan kuudeksi vuodeksi kerrallaan.*
4. *Suomen eduskunnassa on kaksi kamaria samalla tavalla kuin Yhdysvalloissa.*
5. *Suomi on jaettu kymmeneen läänin, joiden pääinä on maaherra.*
6. *Suomen suurimmat metsät ovat Itä- ja Länsi-Suomessa.*
7. *Puutavaraa tuodaan Suomeen ulkomailta.*
8. *Imatran Voimalaitos on valtion omistama.*
9. *Outokumpu ja muut kuparikaivokset eivät ole valtion omistamia.*
10. *Suomesta viedään porsiinia ja lasitavaroita Yhdysvaltoihin.*
11. *Kaikkien lasten täytyy käydä koulua Suomessa.*

12. *Lukutaidottomien prosentti Suomessa on hyvin suuri.*
13. *Suomessa ei ole työväen liittoja.*
14. *Insinöörejä ja kemistejä valmistuu Helsingin Yliopistossa, mikä on Suomen oppineen maailman keskus.*
15. *Kansanrunoudelle ei anneta mitään merkitystä Suomessa, ja sitä ei opeteta missään kouluissa.*

## OSA D—LISTENING IN

### 1. Mitä te sanoitte?

*Yhdessä luokan toisten oppilaitten kanssa vastatkaa suullisesti edellisiin harjoituksiin kun ohjaaja kysyy.*

### 2. Sanaopin kertausta

*Ohjaajan sanoessa englanninkieliset vastineet<sup>5</sup> sanoista kääntäkää ne suomeksi.*

### 3. Listening In

*Kirje pojalta hänen vanhemmilleen*

*Vaasassa, syyskuun 7 p. 1944.*

*Terve Äiti ja Isä!*

*Ensimmäinen viikkoni koulutiellä on lopussa.*

*Junamatka tänne meni oikein hyvin.*

<sup>5</sup>*Vastine* 'equivalent'.

II. Make all the variations you can on the basic stem *löy-* (for instance, *löytää* 'to find'). List each derived form that you can think of; add all suffixes that you can. Then take each form that you've worked out, and use it in a sentence. At the next group meeting say each of your sentences aloud; the Guide or other members of the group will criticize.

*Junassa oli paljon ihmisiä.*

*Näin paljon sotilaita, jotka olivat tulossa lomalle rintamalta.*

*Toiset olivat haavoittuneet käteen ja toiset jalkaan.*

*He olivat jo niin paljon parantuneet, että saivat mennä kotiin.*

*Junassa oli myös monta henkilöä meidän kylästä.*

*Muunmuassa naapurin isäntä, joka tuli kaupunkiin ostoksille.*

*Hän sanoi ostavansa uuden radion.*

*Aikani meni niin nopeasti keskustellessani hänen kanssaan kaikista asioista, etten huomannutkaan kun olimme jo Vaasan asemalla.*

*Ajoin vuokra-autolla asemalta asuntoa paikkaani.*

*Huoneeni on pieni mutta kaunis.*

*Pää-asia on, että minulla on hyvä kirjoituspöytä.*

*Isännän huoneessa on suuri kirjasto.*

*Hän sanoi, että saan ottaa sieltä lukemista milloin vain haluan.*

*Koko tämä perhe, jossa asun on hyvin hauska.*

*Ruoka on mainiota, ei kuitenkaan niin hyvää kuin äiti keittää.*

*Pidän erikoisesti Laurista, joka on vain kaksi vuotta vanhempi kuin minä.*

*Hän käy samaa koulua, mutta on jo kolmannella luokalla.*

*Hän sanoi auttavansa minua mielellään kotitehtävissäni. Olen iloinen että koulu on niin lähellä asuntoani.*

*Koulu alkaa kahdeksalta ja minun ei tarvitse lähteä asunnostani kuin kymmentä vaille.*

*Koko viikon on ollut hyvin kaunista, vain tänään satoi vähän.*

*Eilen koulun jälkeen kävelin Laurin kanssa satamaan.*

*Siellä oli monta laivaa, muunmuassa yksi suuri Saksan sotalaivastoon kuuluva laiva.*

*Ja sitten koulusta.*

*Minun täytyy sanoa, että kesäloman jälkeen koulunkäynti ei tunnu erikoisen hauskalta.*

*Kuitenkin haluan tulla insinööriksi kuten isä.*

*Ja ymmärrän, että minun on parasta alkaa heti alusta sitä silmällä pitäen.*

*Onneksi pidän matematiikan opettajastani oikein paljon, sillä sehän on lempiaineeni.*

*Luulen, ettei minulla tule olemaan siinä paljon vaikeuksia.*

*Saa nähdä sitten, kuinka hyvin tulen toimeen kielissä. Ensimmäisellä luokalla ei opeteta muita vieraita kieliä kuin ruotsia.*

*Toisella luokalla aletaan opettaa saksaa; kuudennella englantia, ranskaa ja latinaa.*

*Vain yksi näistä kolmesta kielestä on pakollinen.*

*Luulen, että minä haluan opiskella englantia, sillä toivon että voin kerran käydä Amerikassa opintomat-kalla.*

*Mutta siitähän voimme puhua myöhemmin.*

*Siihenhan on vielä pitkä aika.*

*Tänä iltana menemme Laurin kanssa elokuviin katso-maan erästä amerikkalaista elokuva.*

*Sen nimi on Buffalo Bill.*

*Luin sen kirjan jo monta vuotta sitten ja pidin siitä hyvin paljon.*

*Ensi kirjeessä kerron siitä enemmän.*

*Nyt luulen, että minun täytyy alkaa valmistaa kotiteh-täviäni.*

*Jos teen sen tänään, ei minun tarvitse lukea huomenna kun on sunnuntai.*

*Toivon, että kirjoitatte minulle pian kuinka te kaikki voitte siellä kotona.*

*Pitäkää hyvää huolta Halli koirastani.*

*Kun meillä on ensimmäinen lomapäivä, tulen kotona käymään.*

*Teidän poikanne  
Toivo.*

## OSA E—KESKUSTELUA

### 1. Peruslauseitten kertausta

*Peittäen suomenkielisen tekstin<sup>6</sup> harjoitelkaa itseksenne kunnes osaatte suomeski jokaisen englanninkielisen lauseen.*

### 2. Sanojen kertausta

*Ohjaajan lausussa peruslauseet englanniksi kääntäkää ne suomeksi.*

### 3. Keskustelua

1. Give your educational background, telling what schools you've attended, stating the time you spent at each. Include the main subjects you've studied.

Give any occupations you've had after leaving school, including the age at which you held various positions, the location, reasons for leaving, and so forth.

2. Have you had a favorite teacher in school or in college? Tell your friend all about this teacher—why you liked him (or her), and why all teachers should be like that.
3. An American and a Finn compare the educational system of their respective countries. Bring out clearly how they are alike and show how they differ.

## OSA F—KESKUSTELUA (*Jatkoa*)

Complete conversation. Additional check-up on the material of the *Basic Sentences* by the Leader if it seems necessary.

### *Jälkikatsaus*

Complete check-up on the material of the *Word Study* and *Basic Sentences*.

<sup>6</sup>*Teksti* 'text'.

### Sanaluettelo

*aine*

subject *or* material

*harrastus*

activity *or* pursuit

*historia*

history

*ikä*

age

*insinööri*

engineer

<i>jatko</i> <i>järjestelmä</i>	extension system	<i>oppilas</i> <i>oppivelvollisuus</i> <i>osata</i>	pupil compulsory education to know how
<i>kansakoulu</i> <i>kansanopisto</i> <i>kansanrunous</i> <i>kasvatus</i> <i>kemisti</i> <i>kerrata</i> <i>kirjasto</i> <i>koulutus</i> <i>kurssi</i> <i>käytännöllinen</i>	elementary school people's high school folklore education chemist to repeat <i>or</i> to review library schooling course practical	<i>pakollinen</i> <i>peittää</i> <i>prosentti</i>  <i>seminaari</i> <i>seutu</i>  <i>talous</i> <i>Teknillinen Korkeakoulu</i> <i>teksti</i> <i>tieteellinen</i> <i>tietopuolinen</i> <i>-tta</i> <i>työläinen</i> <i>työväenopisto</i> <i>täysi</i>  <i>-u</i>	compulsory to cover percentage  training college for teachers district  household Institute of Technology text scientific theoretical verb suffix worker working men's institute full  verb suffix
<i>maalaisnuoriso</i> <i>matematiikka</i> <i>merkitys</i>	country youth mathematics significance <i>or</i> weight	<i>valmistua</i> <i>vapaaehtoinen</i> <i>vapaus</i> <i>vastine</i>  <i>ylläpitää</i>	to be trained voluntary <i>or</i> by choice freedom equivalent  to support
<i>opetus</i> <i>opinto</i> <i>opiskelija</i> <i>opiskelu</i> <i>oppikoulu</i>	teaching learning student studying secondary school		

ARMEIJASSA<sup>1</sup>

OSA A—PERUSLAUSEET

ENGLANNIKSI

What's your rank?

I'm a private first class.

My comrade here is a private.

We are all *noncommissioned officers*.

(*Replace 'noncommissioned officer' by the following ranks:*)

corporal  
sergeant  
officer

My brother is serving in the infantry.

SUOMEKSI

*Mikä on sotilasarvonne?*

*Minä olen korpraali.*

*Toverini on sotamies.*

*Olemme kaikki aliupseereita.*

(*Korvatkaa sana 'aliupseeri' seuraavilla sotilasarvoilla:*)

*alikersantti*  
*kersantti*  
*upseeri*

*Veljeni palvelee jalkaväessä.*

<sup>1</sup>This unit should be used with the *Finnish Phrase Book* TM30-617 of the War Department. Many of the expressions given in this unit are in the form of fill-in-sentences. For example, you may find a sentence *Oletteko sotamies?* 'Are you a private?' You should practice this sentence replacing *sotamies* by *luutnantti*, *kapteeni* and so forth. New words in the text are italicized in English.

He's a *second lieutenant*.

(Replace 'second lieutenant' by:)

first lieutenant

captain

major

lieutenant *colonel*

The regiment *is commanded* by the colonel.

The *division* is *under* the command of the *general*.

My *grandfather* used to be in the Navy.

He was an *ensign*.

My father was a *seaman*.

What's your *outfit*?

(Replace 'outfit' by:)

company

battery

troop

flight

battalion

squadron

group

I'm in the Marines.

<sup>2</sup>*Meri* 'sea'.

416 [28-A]

*Hän on vänrikki.*

(*Korvatkaa sana 'vänrikki' arvoilla:*)

*luutnantti*

*kapteeni*

*majuri*

*everstiluutnantti*

*Eversti* komentaa *rykmenttiä*.

Divisioona *on* kenraalin *komennuksen* alainen.

Isoisäni *oli* *Laivastossa*.

*Hän oli* aliluutnantti.

*Isäni oli* matruusi.

*Mikä on* joukko-osastonne?

(*Korvatkaa sana 'joukkoosasto' sanoilla:*)

*komppania*

*patteri*

*eskadroona*

*lentue*

*pataljoona*

*laivue*

*lentoryhmä*

*Olen Meri<sup>2</sup>jalkaväessä.*



(Replace 'Marines' by:)

Air Forces  
Armored Command  
Artillery  
Cavalry  
Engineers  
Medical Corps  
Ordnance Corps  
Quartermaster Corps  
Signal Corps

There are five *Military Policemen*.

They *arrested* a *pilot*.

(Replace 'pilot' by:)

*the parachutist*  
*the machine gunner*  
*the sniper*  
*the radio operator*

Have the *mechanic* repair the machine gun.

(Replace 'machine gun' by:)

*heavy gun*  
*plane*  
*tank*  
*telephone lines*  
*motorcycle*  
*equipment*

(*Korvatkaa sana 'Merijalkaväki' sanoilla:*)

*Ilmavoimat*  
Panssarijoukot  
Tykistö  
Ratsuväki  
Pioneerit  
Lääkintäjoukot  
Taisteluvälineosasto  
Huoltojoukot  
Viestijoukot

*Tuolla on viisi sotapoliisia.*

*He pidättivät lentäjän.*

(*Korvatkaa sana 'lentäjä' sanoilla:*)

*laskuvarjosotilas*  
*konekivääriampuja*  
*tarkka-ampuja*  
*radisti*

*Korjauttakaa konekivääri mekaanikolla.*

(*Korvatkaa 'konekivääri' sanoilla:*)

*raskas tykki*  
*lentokone*  
*hyökkäysvaunu*  
*puhelinjohdot*  
*moottoripyörä*  
*varusteet*

Bring *your ammunition*.

(Replace 'ammunition' by:)

*bayonet*

*grenade*

*pistol*

pocket flashlight

Are there soldiers near here?

Are they our *enemies*?

The captured soldier spoke Swedish.

(Replace 'Swedish' by:)

Danish

English

German

Norwegian

Russian

Help!

*Danger!*

*Step forward!*

Quickly!

Don't *shoot!*

<sup>3</sup>*Vanki* 'prisoner'.

418 [28-A]

*Tuokaa* ammuksenne.

(*Korvatkaa sana 'ammukset' sanoilla:*)

pistin

kranaatti

pistooli

taskulamppu

*Onko täällä sotilaita lähellä?*

*Ovatko he vihollisiamme?*

*Vangiksi<sup>3</sup>joutunut sotilas puhui ruotsia.*

(*Korvatkaa sana 'ruotsia' sanoilla:*)

*tanskaa*

*englantia*

*saksaa*

*norjaa*

*venäjää*

*Auttakaa!*

Vaara!

Astukaa esiin!

*Nopeasti!*

*Älkää ampuko!*

Advance!

*Surrender!*

Obey or I'll fire!

I'm wounded!

Bring a doctor!

Bring *help!*

The Germans shot many people in this village.

You'd better *hide* in the *cellar*.

(Replace 'cellar' by:)

stable  
barn  
woods

The Germans *are fleeing*.

The city is now in the hands of the Americans.

Is there a river near here?

(Replace 'river' by:)

*a well*  
a railroad  
a telephone exchange  
a radio station

*Eteenpäin!*

Antautukaa!

Totelkaa *tai ammun!*

*Olen haavoittunut!*

Hakekaa *lääkäri!*

*Hakekaa apua!*

*Saksalaiset ampuivat paljon ihmisiä tässä kylässä.*

*Parasta on että piiloudutte kellariin.*

(*Korvatkaa sana 'kellari' sanoilla:*)

*talli*  
*navetta*  
*metsä*

*Saksalaiset pakenevat.*

*Kaupunki on nyt amerikkalaisten käsissä.*

*Onko täällä joki lähellä?*

(*Korvatkaa sana 'joki' sanoilla:*)

*kaivo*  
*rautatie*  
*puhelinasema*  
*radioasema*

a village  
a city  
a lake  
a forest

Is this *bridge* good?

(Replace 'good' by:)

bad  
*passable*  
*impassable*

Draw me a map!

My girl-friend *enlisted* in the Lotta Svärd.<sup>4</sup>

*kylä*  
*kaupunki*  
*järvi*  
*metsä*

*Onko tämä silta hyvä?*

(*Korvatkaa sana 'hyvä' sanoilla:*)

*huono*  
*kulkukelpoinen*  
*kulkukelvoton*

*Piirtäkää minulle kartta!*

*Tyttötoverini yhtyi Lotta Svärdeihin.*

## OSA B—SANAOPPIA JA PERUSLAUSEITTEN JÄLKIKATSAUS

### 1. Sanaoppia

*Comment One—The Suffix -la*

*sairaala* hospital      *kanala* chicken house

The word *sairas* 'sick, invalid', has a vowel stem form *sairaa-*, to which the *-la* suffix is added in the above example; similarly, *kana* 'chicken' has the *-la*

suffix. This *-la* means roughly 'place where' (invalids are, chickens are, and so on). Thus also *sika* 'pig', *sikala* 'pig sty'.

*Comment Two—The Suffix -ue(')*

*laivue* squadron      *lentue* flight

The suffix *-ue(')* (stem form *-uee-*) has a roughly

<sup>4</sup>For the Lotta Svärd see Alexander Matson, 'Finland's Army of Women', *The American Scandinavian Review* 28.39-44 (1940).

collective meaning ('a group of people') like *-(i)sto* ('a group of things'). Thus also *matkue* 'party (of travellers)', *joukkue* 'group'.

*Comment Three—The Suffix -kas*  
*nenäkäs*                      impertinent

The word *nenä* means 'nose', and the suffix *-kas* (stem form *-kkaa-*) means 'endowed with a certain quality'; the literal meaning of *nenäkäs*, then, is 'nosy'. Thus also *voimakas* 'strong' (*voima* 'power, strength'), *arvokas* 'valuable' (*arvo* 'value').

*Comment Four—The Suffix -llinen*  
*tyypillinen*      typical      *rauhallinen*      peaceful

The suffix *-llinen* (stem form *-llise-*) usually means 'pertaining to'. You've had such examples as *virallinen* 'official' (*virka* 'position'), *teknillinen* 'technical', and you may add *kirjallinen* 'literary', *taivaallinen* 'heavenly', *onnellinen* 'happy, lucky' (from *onni* 'luck', with rather different meaning).

*Comment Five—The Suffix -ton*  
*kulkukelvoton*      impassable      *tajuton*      unconscious

The suffix *-ton* (stem form *-ttoma-*) means 'without' ('un-', 'in-', '-less'), as in the above examples (*kulku-*

*kelpo-inen* 'passable', *taju* 'consciousness'). Note these further examples: *isätön ja äiditön* 'fatherless and motherless', *avuton* 'helpless' (from *apu* 'help'; the replacement here of *p* by *v* is due to the back formation on the analogy of the stem form *avuttoma-*), *toivoton* 'hopeless', *onneton* 'unhappy, unlucky'.

Note: The suffixes *-la*, *-ue()*, *-kas*, *-llinen* and *-ton* are all added to *noun* stems.

*Comment Six—The Suffix -mus*  
*kysymys*                      question

*Kysyä* 'to ask' has the stem form *kysy-*, to which *-mus* (stem form *-mukse-*) is added; the latter means 'the action of'—*kysymys* 'the action of asking'. Note also *täyttymys* 'fulfillment', from *täyttää* 'to fill (out)'.

*Comment Seven—The Suffix -e()*  
*pyyhe*                      towel

*Pyyhkiä* 'to wipe' has the stem form *pyyhki-*, to which the suffix *-e()* (stem form *-ee-*) is added; the latter means 'the act of'. Thus also *puhe* 'speech' (from *puhua* 'to speak'), *sida* 'bandage' (from *sitota* 'to bind, wrap').

*Comment Eight—The Suffix -mo*  
*kutomo*                      textile mill

*Kutoa* 'to weave' has the stem form *kuto-*, to which the suffix *-mo* is added; the latter means 'place where they do something'. Thus also *sitomo* 'bindery', *leipomo* 'bakery' (from *leipoa* 'to bake'), *polttimo* 'distillery' (from *polttaa* 'to burn').

Comment Nine—The Suffix *-in*  
avain key

*Avata* 'to open' has the stem form *ava-*, to which the suffix *-in* (stem form *-ime-*) is added; the latter means 'instrument with which'. Thus also, *puhelin* 'telephone', *soitin* 'musical instrument' (from *soittaa* 'to call' or 'to play').

Note: The suffixes *-mus*, *-e()*, *-mo* and *-in* are all added to *verb* stems.

## 2. Sanaopin jälkikatsaus

*Peittämällä ensiksi englantilaiset ja sitten suomalaiset sanontatavat ääntäkää itseksenne englantilaiset sanontatavat suomeksi ja sitten vastaavat suomalaiset sanontatavat englanniksi.*

## 3. Peruslauseitten jälkikatsaus

*Jatkakaa peruslauseitten ensi osan harjoitusta suullisesti.*

# OSA C—PERUSLAUSEITTEN JÄLKIKATSAUS (*Jatkoa*)

## 1. Peruslausitten jälkikatsaus (*Jatkoa*)

*Jatkakaa peruslauseitten toisen osan harjoitusta suullisesti.*

## 2. Peruslauseitten kertausta

*Kerratkaa itseksenne kaikki peruslauseet ja sanontatavat niin että osaatte ne ja tiedätte niiden tarkoituksen.*

## 3. Mitä te sanoisitte?

Below you will find sets of two words or phrases (*a* to *t*). Fit each pair into a sentence and say each finished sentence aloud. Sample: *x. lääkäri/sairaala; Lääkäri hoitaa potilaita sairaalassa* 'the doctor takes care of the patients in the hospital'.

- Ratsuväki/hevonen*
- Yhtyä/joukko-osasto*

- c. *Taisteluvälineosasto/kersantti*
- d. *Piilottaa/pistooli*
- e. *Pioneerit/silta*
- f. *Vihollinen/joutua vangiksi*
- g. *Matruusi/laiva*
- h. *Radisti/lentokone*
- i. *Hakea/kaivo*
- j. *Ampua/raskas tykki*
- k. *Totella/upseeri*

- l. *Sotamies/paeta*
- m. *Lääkäri/lääkintäjoukot*
- n. *Divisioona/komentaa*
- o. *Silta/pitkä*
- p. *Mekaanikko/korjata*
- q. *Antautua/vihollinen*
- r. *Sotapoliisi/pidättää*
- s. *Lentäjä/lentokone*
- t. *Vänrikki/aliupseeri*

## OSA D—KUUNTELUHARJOITUSTA

### 1. Mitä te sanoitte?

*Yhdessä luokan toisten oppilaitten kanssa vastatkaa suullisesti edellisiin harjoituksiin kun ohjaaja kysyy.*

### 2. Sanaopin kertausta

*Ohjaajan sanoessa englanninkieliset vastineet sanoista kääntäkää ne suomeksi.*

### 3. Kuunteluharjoitusta

#### I. Naimisiin meno.

*Sotilas: Herra kapteeni, haluaisin viikon loman.*

*Kapteeni: Miksi? Mitä te aiotte tehdä?*

*Sotilas: Mennä naimisiin.*

*Kapteeni: Vai niin! Kuinka kauan olette tunteneet tämän tytön?*

*Sotilas: Viikon.*

*Kapteeni: Mutta hyvänen aika, mies, se ei ole tarpeeksi kauan.*

*Ehdotan, että odottaisitte pari kuukautta ja jos sitten vielä haluatte mennä naimisiin, annan teille loman.*

*Kaksi kuukautta myöhemmin sotilas tulee takaisin ja pyytää lomaa.*

*Kapteeni: Te siis todellakin haluatte mennä naimisiin.  
En tiennyt, että nuori mies nykyään menee  
ulos saman tytön kanssa näin kauan.*

*Sotilas: Ymmärrän hyvin mitä tarkoitate, herra  
kapteeni.  
Mutta tämä ei olekkaan sama tyttö.*

## *II. Sotilas elämää*

*Kersantti komentaa sotamiehiä.*

*“Oikealle!” hän komentaa.*

*Heti sen jälkeen “Käännös vasemmalle!”*

*Alokas jättää komppaniansa palatakseen parakkeihin.*

*“Hei sinä, minne luulet meneväsi!”*

*Sotamies: “Ethän sinä tiedä itsekään mitä haluat.  
Kahden minuutin sisällä olet muuttanut  
mielesi ainakin sata kertaa.”*

## *III. Maailmansota*

*Isä: Ja siinä, poikani, on koko kertomus isästäsi  
ja maailmansodasta.*

*Poika: Niinkö isä!  
Mutta mitä armeija teki kaikilla toisilla  
sotilailla?*

## *IV. Kirje*

*Matruusi: Anna minun olla rauhassa.  
Kirjoitan tyttölle.*

*Sotamies: Miksi kirjoitat niin hitaasti?*

*Matruusi: Hän ei osaa lukea nopeasti.*

## *V. Parranajo*

*Kersantti: Ajoitteko partanne tänä aamuna?*

*Sotilas: Kyllä, herra kersantti.*

*Kersantti: Huomenna menkää lähemmäksi parrana-  
jokonettanne.*

# **OSA E—KESKUSTELUA**

## **1. Peruslauseitten kertausta**

*Peittäen suomenkielisen tekstin harjoitella itsekseenne  
kunnes osaatte suomeksi jokaisen englanninkielisen  
lauseen.*

## **2. Sanojen kertausta**

*Ohjaajan lausuesssa peruslauseet englanniksi käänn-  
tää ne suomeksi.*



### 3. Keskustelua

1. A civilian wants you to explain the organization of your division. He knows nothing whatever about the Army, and you must tell him the most elementary details. For example, speaking of rank, you explain that a lieutenant is higher than a sergeant, a colonel is higher than a captain, etc.
2. Three privates are having a discussion. Joe is in the Artillery, Bill in the Armored Command, Jack in the Infantry. They are sitting in a bar, and each is praising the merits of the other two fellows' branches of service, but griping about his own. After a while the discussion becomes quite heated and the men raise their voices. A sailor, sitting near by, points out the superiority of life aboard ship to

that in any branch of the Army. Now each man sticks up for his own branch, and it's three against one in favor of the Army. After a while the two services stand drinks for each other, and turn to a different, but common topic of conversation: girls.

3. A parachutist has just dropped in on a farm and two Finns are telling him that the enemy is close by. The parachutist assures them that more soldiers are dropping from airplanes and the situation is well in hand. The Finns explain the position of the Germans.
4. Discuss the invasion of France or any other major military operation you know about; or describe manoeuvres you have taken part in.

### OSA F—KESKUSTELUA (*Jatkoa*)

*Lopettakaa keskustelu. Ohjaaja kertoo peruslauseet jos se on välttämätöntä.*<sup>5</sup>

*Jälkikatsaus*

*Täydellinen*<sup>6</sup> *sanaopin ja peruslauseitten kertaus.*

<sup>5</sup>*Välttämätöntä* 'necessary'.

<sup>6</sup>*Täydellinen* 'complete'.

### Sanaluettelo

*alainen*

*alikersantti*

*aliluutnantti*

*aliupseeri*

*ammukset*

under

corporal

ensign

noncommissioned officer

ammunition

<i>ampua</i>	to shoot	<i>konekivääriampuja</i>	machine gunner
<i>antautua</i>	to surrender	<i>korvata</i>	to replace
<i>apu</i>	help	<i>kranaatti</i>	grenade
<i>astua esiin</i>	to step forward	<i>kulkukelpoinen</i>	passable
<i>divisioona</i>	division	<i>-la</i>	noun based suffix, 'place where'
<i>-e(')</i>	verb based suffix, 'the act of'	<i>laskuvarjosotilas</i>	parachutist
<i>eskadroona</i>	troop	<i>lentoryhmä</i>	group
<i>eversti</i>	colonel	<i>-llinen</i>	noun based suffix, 'pertaining to'
<i>hakea</i>	to fetch	<i>Lääkintäjoukot</i>	Medical Corps
<i>Huoltojoukot</i>	Quartermaster Corps	<i>matruusi</i>	seaman
<i>hyökkäysvaunu</i>	tank	<i>mekaanikko</i>	mechanic
<i>-in</i>	verb based suffix, 'instrument with which'	<i>meri</i>	sea
<i>isoisä</i>	grandfather	<i>-mo</i>	verb based suffix, 'place where they do something'
<i>johdot</i>	lines	<i>moottoripyörä</i>	motorcycle
<i>joukko-osasto</i>	outfit	<i>-mus</i>	verb based suffix, 'the action of'
<i>kaivo</i>	well	<i>paeta</i>	to flee
<i>-kas</i>	noun based suffix, 'endowed with a certain quality'	<i>Panssarijoukot</i>	Armored Command
<i>kellari</i>	cellar	<i>pataljoona</i>	battalion
<i>kenraali</i>	general	<i>patteri</i>	battery
<i>komentaa</i>	to command	<i>pidättää</i>	to arrest
		<i>piiloutua</i>	to hide
		<i>Pioneerit</i>	Engineers

<i>pistin</i>	bayonet	<i>totella</i>	to obey
<i>pistooli</i>	pistol	<i>Tykistö</i>	Artillery
		<i>täydellinen</i>	complete
<i>radisti</i>	radio operator	<i>-ue(')</i>	noun based suffix, 'a group of'
<i>raskas tykki</i>	heavy gun	<i>vaara</i>	danger
<i>Ratsuväki</i>	Cavalry	<i>vanki</i>	prisoner
		<i>varusteet</i>	equipment
<i>silta</i>	bridge	<i>vihollinen</i>	enemy
<i>Sotapoliisi</i>	Military Police	<i>välttämätön</i>	necessary
<i>Taisteluvälineosasto</i>	Ordnance Corps	<i>vänrikki</i>	second lieutenant
<i>tarkka-ampuja</i>	sniper	<i>yhtyä</i>	to enlist <i>or</i> to join
<i>-ton</i>	noun based suffix, 'without'		

KIRJALLISUUS<sup>1</sup> JA TAIDE<sup>2</sup>

OSA A—PERUSLAUSEET

*Ted, joka on amerikkalainen vierailee Pekkalan perheessä.*

*Hän ja Hilikka Pekkala keskustelevat.*

ENGLANNIKSI

What are you reading?

Kalevala  
This is the Kalevala.

But don't they read it in the high schools?

Of course, but I just got this for my birthday.  
One never gets tired of reading it.

<sup>1</sup>*Kirjallisuus* 'literature'.

<sup>2</sup>*Taide* 'art'.

SUOMEKSI

*Ted*

*Mitä sinä luet?*

*Hilikka*

*Kalevala  
Tämä on Kalevala.*

*Ted*

*Mutta ettekö te lue Kalevalaa oppikouluissa?*

*Hilikka*

*Tietysti, mutta sain tämän syntymäpäiväkseni.  
Sitä ei väsy koskaan lukemaan.*

root  
celebrated  
century

The Kalevala has its roots in the famous old folk-songs which the people of Finland have sung for centuries.

fairy tale  
legend *or* tradition  
poem  
to collect  
to be published

They told each other fairy tales, legends and folk poems, collected by Eljas Lönnrot.

It was published for the first time in 1835.

generally  
influence

Did it have any influence on literature in general or on any of the other arts?

example  
hero

Oh yes. For example Aleksis Kivi's play Kullervo deals with a hero of the Kalevala.

*juuri  
mainehikas  
vuosisata*

*Kalevala on saanut juurensa vanhoista mainehikkaista kansanlauluista, joita Suomen kansa on laulanut vuosisatoja sitten.*

*satu  
tarina  
runo  
kerätä  
ilmestyä*

*He kertoivat toisilleen satuja, tarinoita ja kansanrunoja, jotka Eljas Lönnrot on kerännyt.*

*Kalevala ilmestyi ensimmäisen kerran vuonna 1835.*

*Ted*

*yleensä  
vaikutus*

*Onko sillä yleensä ollut vaikutusta muuhun kirjallisuuteen tai taiteeseen?*

*Hilkka*

*esimerkki  
sankari*

*Kyllä, kuten esimerkiksi Aleksis Kiven näytelmään Kullervo, jossa kerrotaan Kalevalan sankarista.*

painter  
to paint  
design *or* subject  
Painters, like A. Gallen-Kallela, have painted subjects from the Kalevala.

music  
Our music also takes its subjects from the Kalevala.  
The best known of these are Sibelius' Kullervo, Pohjolan Tytär and Tapiola.

Very interesting.

Why don't you tell me more about your artists?

famous  
writer *or* author  
Aleksis Kivi's *Seven Brothers* is well known.  
Among many others, our well known writers are:  
Ilmari Kianto, Johannes Linnankoski, Joel Lehtonen, and so forth.

How about F. E. Sillanpää?

maalari  
maalata  
aihe  
*Taidemaalarit, kuten A. Gallen-Kallela on maalannut paljon Kalevala-aiheisia maalauksia.*

musiikki  
*Myöskin on meillä Kalevala-aiheista musiikkia.*  
*Tunnetuimpia niistä ovat Sibeliuksen Kullervo, Pohjolan Tytär ja Tapiola.*

*Ted*

*Hyvin mielenkiintoista.*

*Kerro minulle enempi teidän taiteilijoistanne, ole hyvä.*

*Hilkka*

kuuluisa  
kirjailija  
*Aleksis Kiven Seitsemän Veljestä on hyvin tunnettu.*  
*Muita tunnettuja kirjailijoitamme ovat Ilmari Kianto, Johannes Linnankoski, Joel Lehtonen ja monet muut.*

*Ted*

*Entäs F. E. Sillanpää?*

international  
fame

Most famous of F. E. Sillanpää's works is his internationally known book the *Maid Silja*.

*Hilkka*

*kansainvälinen  
maine*

*Kuuluisin F. E. Sillanpään teoksista on hänen kansainvalistä mainetta saavuttanut kirjansa Nuorena Nukkunut.*

Of course I've heard of it.

I've also read the works of Seppänen.

But I'd like to hear about your painters too.

*Ted*

*Tietystikin olen kuullut siitä.*

*Olen lukenut myöskin Unto Seppäsen teoksia.*

*Haluaisin kuulla myöskin teidän taidemaalareistanne.*

*Hilkka*

Oh, there's Armas Järnefelt, Sallinen and many others.

Of our architects Eliel Saarinen is the best known.

*Armas Järnefelt, Sallinen ja monet muut.*

*Arkkitehdeistämme on Eliel Saarinen kuuluisin.*

*Ted*

academy  
He is in Michigan directing the Cranbrook Academy,  
isn't he?

What did he build here in Finland?

*akatemia*

*Hänhän on Michicanissa Cranbrook Akatemian johtajana.*

*Mitä hän on rakentanut täällä Suomessa?*

*Hilkka*

He designed the railroad station of Helsinki.

*Hän on piirtänyt Helsingin aseman.*

Together with Lindgren he drew up the Pohjola building.

The National Museum is also his work.

Do you have many other museums?

province  
There are about sixty provincial museums.

You must see the Seurasaari museum.

special  
Is there something special about it?

It is an open air museum.

ancient  
culture  
You can see there the ancient culture of the Finnish people.

The museum is scientifically directed by the University.

*Yhdessä Lindgrenin kanssa he ovat piirtäneet Pohjola rakennuksen.*

*Myöskin Kansallismuseo on hänen käsialaansa.*

*Ted*

*Onko teillä paljon muita museoita?*

*Hilkka*

maakunta  
*Meillä on noin kuusikymmentä maakuntamuseoa.*

*Sinun on nähtävä Seurasaaren museo.*

*Ted*

erikoinen  
*Onko siellä jotain erikoista?*

*Hilkka*

*Se on ulkoilma museo.*

muinainen  
kulttuuri  
*Siellä on nähtävänä muinaista kansan kulttuuria.*

*Museo on Yliopiston tieteellisen ohjauksen alaisena.*



weight

Great weight was always given to the study of Finnish culture.

professor

The first chair of folklore was established at the University of Helsinki, held by Kaarle Krohn.

*paino*

*Suomessa on aina pantu suurta painoa kulttuurin opiskelulle.*

*professori*

*Kaarle Krohn oli ensimmäinen suomenkielisen kansanrunouden professori Helsingin Yliopistossa.*

*Ted*

Tell me something about Finnish music.

*Kerrohan jotain suomalaisesta musiikista!*

*Hilkka*

I already mentioned Jean Sibelius.

*Jean Sibeliuksen olen jo ennemmin maininnut.*

Then we have others like Melartin, Madetoja and Hannikainen.

*Sitten meillä on muita, kuten Melartin, Madetoja ja Hannikainen.*

*Ted*

to love

I've noticed that the Finns love music.

*rakastaa*

*Olen huomannut, että suomalaiset rakastavat musiikkia.*

*Hilkka*

It's true.

*Se on totta.*

choir

Almost in every village there is at least one choir.

*kuoro*

*Melkein joka kylässä on ainakin yksi kuoro.*

to compose  
We have a good many beautiful songs by Palmgren,  
Kilpinen and Merikanto.

*säveltää*  
*Meillä on paljon Palmgrenin, Kilpisen ja Merikannon*  
*säveltämiä kauniita lauluja.*

There is one art you haven't told me about.

*Ted*  
*Mutta yhdestä taiteesta sinä et ole vielä kertonut.*

What art?

*Hilkka*  
*Mistä taiteesta?*

The art of love.

*Ted*  
*Rakkaustaiteesta.*

That is also on a very high level in Finland, my love.

*Hilkka*  
*Rakkaani, se on myöskin korkealla kannalla Suomessa.*

## OSA B—SANAOPPIA JA PERUSLAUSEITTEN JÄLKIKATSAUS

### 1. Sanaoppia

Review carefully the *Word Study* sections of units  
25, 26, 27 and 28.

#### *Comment One—Kinship Terms*

<i>vaimo</i>	wife	<i>isoisä</i>	grandfather
<i>sisar</i>	sister	<i>poika</i>	son

Terms, like the above, that designate a relative of yours are known as kinship terms. In dealing with a Finn you must learn to recognize the kinship terms he or she uses, and you will find it useful to know the precise meaning of these terms. Languages differ considerably in their kinship terminology and you will find that Finnish has terms of relations for which

English has none, and that a given term may have more than one English equivalent.

The Finnish kinship terms appear in the following table. Some of them you've had; others are new and will be listed in the Finder List. This is how the table must be used. There are five columns. Column 1 is a series of fixed numbers, corresponding to the English equivalents in column 5; the numbers in column 2, on the other hand, refer to the number of the corre-

sponding Finnish term, as it appears for the first time. Now, when a Finnish term occurs again, instead of repeating it, you will find simply its original number assigned. You can thus see at a glance what terms correspond to what English equivalents. In column 3 it is assumed that a Finnish male is speaking; in column 4, a Finnish female: you will note that there is only one difference in the two columns.

1	2	3	4	5
<i>Fixed Number</i>	<i>Term Number</i>	<i>Finnish Term</i>	<i>Female Speaking</i>	<i>English Equivalent</i>
1	1	<i>Isä</i>		Father
2	2	<i>Äiti</i>		Mother
3	3	<i>Veli</i>		Brother
4	4	<i>Sisar</i>		Sister
5	5		<i>Mies</i>	Husband
6	6	<i>Vaimo</i>		Wife
7	7	<i>Poika</i>		Son
8	8	<i>Tytär</i>		Daughter
9	9	<i>Isoisä</i>		Father's father
10	10	<i>Isoäiti</i>		Father's mother
11		9		Mother's father
12		10		Mother's mother
13	11	<i>Setä</i>		Father's brother
14	12	<i>Täti</i>		Father's sister
15	13	<i>Eno</i>		Mother's brother

1 Fixed Number	2 Term Number	3 Finnish Term	5 English Equivalent
16		12	Mother's sister
17		12	Father's brother's wife
18		11	Father's sister's husband
19		12	Mother's brother's wife
20		11	Mother's sister's husband
21	14	<i>Käly</i>	Brother's wife
22	15	<i>Lanko</i>	Sister's husband
23	16	<i>Miniä</i>	Son's wife
24	17	<i>Vävy</i>	Daughter's husband
25	18	<i>Appi</i> (sometimes 1)	Wife's or husband's father
26	19	<i>Anoppi</i> (sometimes 2)	Wife's or husband's mother
27	20	<i>Serkku</i>	Father's brother's son
28		20	Father's sister's son
29		20	Mother's brother's son
30		20	Mother's sister's son
31		7 & 7	Son's son
32		7 & 8	Son's daughter
33		8 & 7	Daughter's son
34		8 & 8	Daughter's daughter
35		3 & 7	Brother's son
36		3 & 8	Brother's daughter
37		4 & 7	Sister's son
38		4 & 8	Sister's daughter

Everybody, from 1-38, is your *sukulainen* 'relative'. If you are unmarried, you belong to the *perhe* 'family' headed by 1, and including 2, 3 (unmarried), 4 (unmarried); if you are married and a male, you head your own *perhe*, and it includes 6, 7 (unmarried), 8 (unmarried).

Some of the kinship terms are also used for people who are not necessarily relatives:

3—Any close man friend can be so addressed (especially in letters); also a religious term.

4—Sometimes close girl friends can be so addressed; also a religious term.

7—Any young male; boy.

11—Polite term of address by a young person to an older male.

12—Polite term of address by a young person to an older female.

Here are some combined terms:

39	1 & 2	<i>vanhemmat</i>
40	3 & 3	<i>veljekset</i>
41	4 & 4	<i>sisarukset</i>
42	3 & 4	<i>sisarukset</i> (or <i>sisarekset</i> )
43	7 & 8	<i>lapset</i>

Note the terms 31-38. Here two terms are used to describe one relative, in each case. The first term always ends in either a possessive suffix (see unit 4, pages 72-3 or in the *-n* suffix (see unit 14, pages 237-8).

For instance, 36 (3 & 8) *veljeni tytär* 'my brother's daughter'. Terms of this sort, as in English, can be extended almost indefinitely; thus, 'father's father's mother' would be 9 & 2, *isoisän äiti*, etc.

### Comment Two—Summary

1. You have learned one more case suffix, the *-ne*, so that you know altogether fourteen. There are a few, very rare, additional case suffixes, but you needn't worry about those.
2. You have learned several verb suffixes: *-(t)e-* (infinitive III), *-u-* (reflexive), *-skele-*.
3. You have learned a large number of suffixes by means of which you can make nouns of verbs, verbs of nouns.
4. You know the Finnish kinship system and terminology.

## 2. Sanaopin jälkikatsaus

*Peittämällä ensiksi englantilaiset ja sitten suomalaiset sanontatavat ääntäkää itsekseenne englantilaiset sanontatavat suomeksi ja sitten vastaavat suomalaiset sanontatavat englanniksi.*

## 3. Peruslauseitten jälkikatsaus

*Jatkakaa peruslauseitten ensi osan harjoitusta suullisesti.*

## OSA C—PERUSLAUSEITTEN JÄLKIKATSAUS (Jatkoa)

### 1. Peruslauseitten jälkikatsaus (Jatkoa)

*Jatkakaa peruslauseitten toisen osan harjoitusta suullisesti.*

### 2. Peruslauseitten kertausta

*Kerratkaa itseksenne kaikki peruslauseet ja sanontatavat niin että osaatte ne ja tiedätte niiden tarkoituksen.*

### 3. Mitä te sanoisitte?

I. Inquire among your Finnish friends and find out who the following are and what their importance is in Finnish culture:

1. *Runeberg, Juhani Aho, Maila Talvio, Mika Valtari, Eino Leino, Volter Kilpi.*
2. *Juho Rissanen, Pekka Halonen, Laitinen, Ekman, Yrjö Liipola.*
3. *Sulho Ranta, Kuula.*
4. *Juljus Krohn, Agricola, Setälä, Castren, Porthan, Erkki Karu, Cygneus, Ahlqvist, Harva, Sederholm.*

II. This is a true-false exercise like the one in unit 27, pages 400-1.

1. *Kalevalaa ei lueta Suomen oppikouluissa.*
2. *Kullervo on Kalevala-aiheinen näytelmä.*
3. *Suomessa ei ole Kalevala-aiheisia näytelmiä.*
4. *Pohjolan Tyttären on säveltänyt Kuula.*
5. *Elriel Saarinen on professorina Helsingin Yliopistossa.*
6. *Suomessa on noin kuusikymmentä maakuntamuseoa.*
7. *Kaarle Krohn oli ensimmäinen kansanrunouden professori.*
8. *Merikanto on kuuluisa taidemaalariimme.*
9. *Suomen kansa on musikaalista.*
10. *Melkein jokaisessa kylässä on oma kuoro.*
11. *Me rakastamme vihollisiamme.*
12. *Divisioonaa komentaa kenraali.*
13. *Sotamiehen tehtävänä on totella upseerin antamia määräyksiä.*
14. *Hyökkäysvaunusotilas kuuluu laivastoon.*
15. *Laskuvarjosotilas käyttää aseenaan tykistöä.*
16. *Me taistelemme vihollisiamme vastaan.*
17. *Vangiksi joutuneet sotilaat voivat olla amerikkalaisia, saksalaisia j.n.e.*
18. *Järviä ja jokia ei ole Suomessa.*
19. *Rautatie ei ole kulkuväline.*
20. *Kalevala ilmestyi ensimmäisen kerran vuonna 1835.*

## OSA D—KUUNTELUHARJOITUSTA

### 1. Mitä te sanoitte?

*Yhdessä luokan toisten oppilaitten kanssa vastatkaa suullisesti edellisiin harjoituksiin kun ohjaaja kysyy.*

### 2. Sanaopin kertausta

*Ohjaajan sanoessa englanninkieliset vastineet sanoopista kääntäkää ne suomeksi.*

### 3. Kuunteluharjoitusta

#### I. Tarina Mark Twainista.

*Puhujamatkallaan Mark Twain saapui pieneen kaupunkiin. Ennen päivällistä hän meni parturiin.*

*„Te olette vieras tässä kaupungissa,” sanoi parturi.*

*„Kyllä,” vastasi Mark Twain. „Olen ensimmäistä kertaa tässä kaupungissa.”*

*„Te tulitte hyvään aikaan,” jatkoi parturi. „Mark Twain puhuu täällä tänä iltana. Tietystikin menette sinne.”*

*„Kyllä kai.”*

*„Oletteko ostaneet jo linpun?”*

*„En vielä.”*

*„Mutta kaikki liput on jo myyty, ette voi saada istumapaikkaa enää.”*

*„Kuinka ikävää! Minulla näyttää olevan huono onni. En saa koskaan istua kun tuo mies puhuu.”*

#### II. Oopperassa

*Eräs suomalainen säveltäjä oli kunniavieraana Oopperassa. Hänen emäntänsä oli äänessä koko oopperan ajan. Loppupuolella hän kääntyi säveltäjän puoleen sanoen:*

*„Teidän täytyy tulla oopperaan ensi perjantai-iltana. Silloin esitetään ooppera Tosca. Varmaan tulette pitämään siitä.”*

*„Kyllä varmasti, mielelläni,” vastasi säveltäjä. „En ole koskaan kuullut teitä siinä.”*

#### III. Laulajatar ja Säveltäjä

*Toinen vieras kääntyi toisen puoleen ja alkoi puhua naisesta, joka juuri lauloi.*

*„Hänellä on kamala ääni. Tiedätkö te, kuka hän on?”*

*„Kyllä,” kuului vastaus. „Hän on minun vaimoni.”*

*„Suokaa anteeksi. En tietystikään tarkoita hänen ääntään, vaan tuota kamalaa laulua, jota hänen täytyy laulaa. Tiedätkö, kuka sen on säveltänyt?”*

*„Minä olen sen säveltänyt,” kuului kylmä vastaus.*

## OSA E—KESKUSTELUA

### 1. Peruslauseitten kertausta

*Peittäen suomenkielisen tekstin harjoitella itsekseenne kunnes osaatte suomeksi jokaisen englanninkielisen lauseen.*

### 2. Sanojen kertausta

*Ohjaajan lausussa peruslauseet englanniksi kääntäkää ne suomeksi.*

### 3. Keskustelua

1. Discuss the works of a great American author (Poe, Mark Twain, Eugene O'Neill, Hemingway); discuss the works of a great American painter (Whistler, Sargent, Thomas Benton, Rockwell Kent);

discuss the works of a great American sculptor (Augustus St. Gaudens, Paul Manship); discuss the compositions of a great American musician (George Gershwin, Chanler, Stephen Foster, Jerome Kern, Duke Ellington).

2. What is your favorite art form? Why? What have Finns contributed to that particular form of art?
3. You are engaged to get married. Your girl wants to know all about your relatives. You list them one by one, making brief descriptive comments about each (for example: uncle Herbert lives with us—he doesn't make a living; sister studies at the University; brother Jack is in the Marines; cousin Fred is a sportsman; aunt Matilda is an opera singer, and so forth).

## OSA F—KESKUSTELUA (*Jatkoa*)

*Lopettakaa keskustelu. Ohjaaja kertoo peruslauseet jos se on välttämätöntä.*

*Jälkikatsaus*

*Täydellinen sanaopin ja peruslauseitten kertaus.*

**Sanaluettelo<sup>3</sup>**

design or subject  
academy  
19  
18

*aihe  
akademia  
anoppi  
appi*

<sup>3</sup>Kinship terms are listed with their numbers as given on pages 435-7 of this unit.



<i>eno</i>	13
<i>erikoinen</i>	special
<i>esimerkki</i>	example
<i>ilmestyä</i>	to be published
<i>isoäiti</i>	10
<i>juuri</i>	root
<i>Kalevala</i>	Kalevala
<i>kansainvälinen</i>	international
<i>kerätä</i>	to collect
<i>kirjailija</i>	writer or author
<i>kuoro</i>	choir
<i>kulttuuri</i>	culture
<i>kuuluisa</i>	famous
<i>käly</i>	14
<i>lanko</i>	15
<i>maakunta-</i>	provincial
<i>maalari</i>	painter
<i>maalata</i>	to paint
<i>maine</i>	fame
<i>mainehikas</i>	celebrated
<i>miniä</i>	16

<i>muinainen</i>	ancient
<i>musiikki</i>	music
<i>paino</i>	weight
<i>professori</i>	professor
<i>rakastaa</i>	to love
<i>runo</i>	poem
<i>sankari</i>	hero
<i>satu</i>	fairy tale
<i>serkku</i>	20
<i>setä</i>	11
<i>sisarukset</i>	41 or 42
<i>sukulainen</i>	relative
<i>säveltää</i>	to compose
<i>tarina</i>	legend or tradition
<i>täti</i>	12
<i>vanhemmat</i>	39
<i>vaikutus</i>	influence
<i>veljekset</i>	40
<i>vuosisata</i>	century
<i>vävy</i>	17
<i>yleensä</i>	generally

## REVIEW

## SECTION A—WHAT DO YOU KNOW IN FINNISH?

The procedure in this unit will be the same as in unit 18.

## SECTION B—HOW WOULD YOU SAY IT?

Prepare to give orally the Finnish for each of the following sentences. Do not write anything down.

## I

1. Handel was a composer who lived in the 18th century.
2. Hemingway is an internationally known author.
3. The University of Paris is one of the oldest cultural centers in the world.
4. The machine gun was right under the tree.
5. My father-in-law is an influential man.
6. He collected her letters.
7. Love is wonderful.
8. Would you care to join our choir?

## II

1. The road is impassable because it has been raining all week.
2. Quickly, get a nurse!
3. Hide those tanks in the barn over there.
4. Tell the mechanic to repair the telephone lines.
5. Bring help! I'm wounded.
6. Step forward, raising your hands, and surrender.
7. You are a prisoner of war: hand over your equipment.
8. The Marines have landed (arrived).

### III

1. Where did you learn to speak Norwegian so well?
2. Support the Red Cross: give all you can.
3. Is there a library in this town?
4. Get me a Russian dictionary (word book).
5. Who is the leader of your union?
6. We lost about 25%.
7. Mathematics can be practical as well as theoretical.
8. I don't attach any significance to it.

### IV

1. The port is full of Naval vessels.
2. The factory is located at a railroad junction.
3. Old copper may be green.
4. Is it made of linen or of cotton?

5. What are the major products of the glass industry?
6. There's no reason for further discussion.
7. Next, we have an American song.
8. What is your line?

### V

1. We're almost at the village now.
2. I was born in 1917, February the second.
3. Show me your passport please: this is the Finnish border.
4. He might be a customs officer.
5. Divide and conquer!
6. What are the chief American parties?
7. He has a job at the Ministry of Defense.
8. All's well that ends well.

## SECTION C—HOW DID YOU SAY IT?

Quiz by the Leader on the sentences in Section B, asking various members of the group: „*Kuinka te sanotte suomeksi . . . ?*”

## SECTION D—HOW WOULD YOU SAY IT? (Cont.)

### (Individual Study)

Do the following exercises. Read all sentences aloud with correct solutions. Have everything well fixed in your mind, and ready to speak in the next group meeting.

#### I

For each of the following relations in the column to the left there is a single kinship term in Finnish. What is it?

Relation:	Kinship Term:
1. <i>Tyttären mies</i>	1. _____
2. <i>Veljeni vaimo</i>	2. _____
3. <i>Isämme veli</i>	3. _____
4. <i>Setäni poika</i>	4. _____
5. <i>Tädin isä</i>	5. _____
6. <i>Appeni vaimo</i>	6. _____
7. <i>Isoisäni ainoa poika</i>	7. _____
8. <i>Poikani vaimo</i>	8. _____
9. <i>Äidin veli</i>	9. _____
10. <i>Sisareni lasten isä</i>	10. _____

#### II

In the column to the right in I above, underline each kinship term that stands for a real relative of yours. Describe each relative in not less than five complete sentences, stating physical characteristics, occupation, whereabouts, and so forth, making sure that each sentence is correct and that the total description is clear and consistent.

#### III

If you are studying in a group, you may enjoy a game. Each member of the class is to take a long, narrow strip of paper. Now, everyone should write down a descriptive adjective, like *suuri*, *vanha*, etc., and having done so, fold the paper so that the word is covered up, and pass the strip to his neighbor on his left. When all strips are passed on, everybody should write a fellow's name, fold the paper to cover up, and pass on. Next, all should write *ja*, followed by another adjective, like *kaunis*, *tyhmä*, etc., fold up and pass on. Then follows a girl's name. The items

thereafter are, a place (where they met), the time when, what they did there, what he thinks of her, what she thinks of him. When the last item is down,

the papers should be unfolded, and each member of the group should read out the result on the slip before him. It should be something like this:

<i>tyhmä</i>
<i>Matti</i>
<i>ja kaunis</i>
<i>Liisa</i>
<i>tutustuivat ravintolassa</i>
<i>kello yhdeksän</i>
<i>he tanssivat</i>
<i>Liisa on ihana</i>
<i>Matti on kömpelö tanssija</i>

## IV

The Finnish game *kakiskymmentä kysymystä* is the same as the game known here as 'Animal, Vegetable, or Mineral', a guessing game. One member of the group leaves the room, while the others decide on a person or an object to be guessed. When the odd man

returns, he must ask a question of each member of the group, which are to be answered *kyllä* or *ei*. He is allowed twenty questions. If he guesses the correct solution, the last person to answer goes out. If he doesn't, he goes out again.

### SECTION E—HOW DID YOU SAY IT?

Quiz by the Leader on the work you did in parts I-II of Section D. Keep your book closed. If you have a Guide, he will check on pronunciation and the cor-

rectness of your Finnish; if not, other members of the group will criticize.

### SECTION F—CONVERSATION REVIEW

The members of the group will carry on short conversations lasting from two to five minutes.

*Suggested Topics:*

1. Tell the story of an opera you've been to.
2. Speak about one form of art, comparing the artists of different nations who have contributed.
3. Question a prisoner of war.

4. Give orders to requisition a certain set of military supplies.
5. Describe your Army (or Navy) career.
6. Interview a family on behalf of the Red Cross or the United Nations Relief and Rehabilitation Administration.
7. Do you think that a free college education should be made available to everyone?

8. What sort of industrial relations will there be, in your opinion, between Finland and the U. S.?
9. What do you think will be the political position of Finland in the near future?
10. You've probably studied foreign languages other than Finnish. What do you think of the method by which you've learned Finnish, and how does it compare with other methods?

## VOCABULARIES

The most useful dictionary at present easily available to the American student of Finnish is Severi Alanne, *Suomalais-Englantilainen Sanakirja* (Superior, Wisconsin, 1919). Aune Tuomikoski and Anna Slöör, *Englantilais-Suomalainen Sanakirja* (Helsinki, 1939) is designed for British users especially, and is hard to

get in the United States. Two pocket dictionaries which may come handy are: K. V. Arminen and Eetu Aaltio, *Suomalais Englantilainen Sanakirja* (Hancock, Michigan, 1916), and K. V. Arminen, *Englantilais-Suomalainen Sanakirja* (Hancock, Michigan, 1914).

### A. FINNISH-ENGLISH

<i>aamiainen</i>	breakfast
<i>aamu</i>	morning
<i>aihe</i>	design <i>or</i> subject
<i>aika</i>	time
<i>aikaisin</i>	early
<i>aikoa</i>	to intend
<i>aina</i>	always
<i>aine</i>	subject <i>or</i> material
<i>ainoastaan</i>	only
<i>aivan</i>	quite
<i>ajaa</i>	to ride
<i>ajatella</i>	to think
<i>ajatus</i>	idea <i>or</i> thought
<i>akatemia</i>	academy

<i>ala</i>	line
<i>alainen</i>	under
<i>alas</i>	down
<i>alikersantti</i>	corporal
<i>aliluutnantti</i>	ensign
<i>aliupseeri</i>	noncommissioned officer
<i>alkaa</i>	to begin
<i>allekirjoittaa</i>	to sign
<i>allekirjoitus</i>	signature
<i>alushousut</i>	shorts
<i>amerikkalainen</i>	American
<i>ammatti</i>	trade
<i>ammukset</i>	ammunition
<i>ampua</i>	to shoot



<i>ankara</i>	severe <i>or</i> strict
<i>annos</i>	portion
<i>anoppi</i>	26*
<i>antaa</i>	to give
<i>antautua</i>	to surrender
<i>anteeksi</i>	excuse me
<i>appi</i>	25*
<i>apleikki</i>	pharmacy
<i>apu</i>	help
<i>armeija</i>	army
<i>arpi</i>	scar
<i>arvata</i>	to guess
<i>arvo</i>	value
<i>arvoinen</i>	worth
<i>ase</i>	weapon
<i>asema</i>	station
<i>asemasta</i>	instead
<i>asia</i>	matter <i>or</i> thing
<i>askel</i>	step
<i>aste</i>	degree <i>or</i> grade
<i>astua</i>	to step
<i>asua</i>	to stay <i>or</i> to dwell
<i>Ateneumi</i>	Atheneum
<i>attashea</i>	attache
<i>auto</i>	car
<i>auttaa</i>	to help

---

\*See unit 29, Comment One, for exact meaning.

<i>avain</i>	key
<i>bensiini</i>	gasoline
<i>divisioona</i>	division
<i>edelleen</i>	further
<i>edellinen</i>	previous
<i>edellä</i>	ahead <i>or</i> before
<i>edes</i>	even
<i>eduskunta</i>	Diet <i>or</i> parliament
<i>edustaa</i>	to represent
<i>edustaja</i>	representative
<i>ehdottaa</i>	to suggest
<i>ehkä</i>	perhaps
<i>ei</i>	no
<i>eilen</i>	yesterday
<i>ei ansaitse</i>	it doesn't matter
<i>eksyä</i>	to get lost
<i>elokuu</i>	August
<i>elokuvat</i>	movies
<i>elää</i>	to live
<i>emäntä</i>	mistress <i>or</i> landlady
<i>enemmistö</i>	majority
<i>Englanti</i>	England
<i>ennen</i>	before
<i>eno</i>	15*
<i>ensi</i>	next
<i>ensin</i>	first
<i>entäs</i>	how about
<i>enää</i>	anymore

<i>erehtyä</i>	to make a mistake <i>or</i> to be mistaken	<i>harrastus</i>	activity <i>or</i> pursuit
<i>eri</i>	different	<i>harso</i>	net
<i>erikoinen</i>	special	<i>haulikko</i>	double barrelled gun
<i>eroavaisuus</i>	difference	<i>hauska</i>	gay <i>or</i> fun
<i>eräs</i>	a (certain)	<i>he</i>	they
<i>esimerkki</i>	example	<i>heinäkuu</i>	July
<i>esitellä</i>	to present	<i>hella</i>	stove
<i>eskadroona</i>	troop	<i>helmikuu</i>	February
<i>eteenpäin</i>	ahead	<i>henkilö</i>	person
<i>etelä</i>	south	<i>henkilöllisyys</i>	identification
<i>etsiä</i>	to look for	<i>herra</i>	gentleman <i>or</i> Mr.
<i>etukäteen</i>	beforehand	<i>heti</i>	at once <i>or</i> immediately
<i>että</i>	that	<i>hevonen</i>	horse
<i>eversti</i>	colonel	<i>hiihtokeli</i>	skiing condition
<i>filmi</i>	film	<i>hiihtää</i>	to ski
<i>Filosofian Maisteri</i>	Master of Arts	<i>hiljaa</i>	quiet
<i>haara</i>	branch	<i>hinta</i>	price
<i>haarukka</i>	fork	<i>hissi</i>	elevator
<i>haava</i>	wound	<i>historia</i>	history
<i>haavoittua</i>	to get wounded	<i>hitaasti</i>	slowly
<i>hakea</i>	to fetch	<i>housut</i>	trousers
<i>hallinnollinen</i>	administrative	<i>hotelli</i>	hotel
<i>hallitus</i>	government	<i>huhtikuu</i>	April
<i>halpa</i>	cheap	<i>hukata</i>	to lose
<i>haluta</i>	to want	<i>huolehtia</i>	to worry
<i>hammas</i>	tooth	<i>huoli</i>	care
<i>harjoitus</i>	practice	<i>huoltojoukot</i>	Quartermaster Corps
		<i>huomata</i>	to notice

<i>huone</i>	room
<i>huonekalu</i>	furniture
<i>huoneusto</i>	apartment
<i>huono</i>	bad
<i>huopa</i>	blanket
<i>hyttynen</i>	mosquito
<i>hyväksyä</i>	to accept
<i>hyvänen aika</i>	for goodness sake
<i>hyvästi</i>	goodbye
<i>hyökkäysvaunu</i>	tank
<i>hämmästyä</i>	to be surprised
<i>hän</i>	he or she
<i>idealisti</i>	idealist
<i>ihailija</i>	admirer
<i>ihana</i>	wonderful
<i>ihmeellinen</i>	wonderful
<i>ihminen</i>	human being or person
<i>ikä</i>	age
<i>ikävyys</i>	trouble
<i>ilma</i>	weather or air
<i>ilman</i>	without
<i>ilmestyä</i>	to be published
<i>ilmoittautua</i>	to report
<i>iloinen</i>	happy or glad
<i>ilta</i>	evening
<i>insinööri</i>	engineer

\*See unit 29, Comment One, for exact meaning.

<i>isoisä</i>	9*
<i>isoäiti</i>	10*
<i>istua</i>	to sit
<i>isä</i>	1*
<i>isäntä</i>	master or landlord
<i>itse</i>	self
<i>itä</i>	east
<i>ja</i>	and
<i>jakaa</i>	to divide
<i>jakso</i>	part
<i>jalka</i>	foot
<i>jalkaväki</i>	infantry
<i>ja niin edespäin</i>	and so forth
(j.n.e.)	(etc.)
<i>jatkaa</i>	to continue
<i>jatko</i>	extension or continuation
<i>jatkoa</i>	to be continued
<i>Japani</i>	Japan
<i>johtaja</i>	manager
<i>joka</i>	every
<i>joki</i>	river
<i>joko</i>	either
<i>jonkinlainen</i>	some kind
<i>johdot</i>	lines
<i>joukko-osasto</i>	outfit
<i>joulukuu</i>	December
<i>jos</i>	if
<i>joutua</i>	to get

<i>juhlasali</i>	auditorium
<i>Jumala</i>	God
<i>juna</i>	train
<i>juoda</i>	to drink
<i>juomaraha</i>	tip
<i>juuri</i>	root
<i>juuri</i>	just
<i>jälkeen</i>	after
<i>jälkikatsaus</i>	review
<i>jälkiruoka</i>	desert
<i>jännitys</i>	suspense
<i>järjestelmä</i>	system
<i>järjestää</i>	to organize
<i>järvi</i>	lake
<i>jättää</i>	to leave
<i>jää</i>	ice
<i>jäädä</i>	to stay
<i>jäätelö</i>	ice cream
<i>kaasu</i>	gas
<i>kaataa</i>	to spill <i>or</i> to turn over
<i>kaavake</i>	form <i>or</i> blank
<i>kahdeksan</i>	eight
<i>kahveli</i>	fork
<i>kahvi</i>	coffee
<i>kai</i>	probably <i>or</i> perhaps
<i>kaikki</i>	all
<i>kaivo</i>	well
<i>kaivos</i>	mine

<i>kaksi</i>	two
<i>kala</i>	fish
<i>kalastaa</i>	to fish
<i>kallis</i>	expensive
<i>kamala</i>	horrible
<i>kamari</i>	chamber
<i>kana</i>	chicken
<i>kanala</i>	chickenhouse
<i>kannatus</i>	support
<i>kansainvälinen</i>	international
<i>kansakoulu</i>	elementary school
<i>kansalainen</i>	citizen
<i>kansallis-</i>	national
<i>kansanopisto</i>	peoples high school
<i>kansanrunous</i>	folklore
<i>kanssa</i>	with
<i>kanta</i>	standard <i>or</i> attitude
<i>kantaja</i>	porter
<i>karamelli</i>	candy
<i>kartta</i>	map
<i>kassa</i>	cashier
<i>kasvatus</i>	education
<i>kasvot</i>	face
<i>katkaista</i>	to break
<i>katsoa</i>	to see <i>or</i> to look
<i>kattila</i>	pot
<i>katu</i>	street
<i>kauan</i>	long time

<i>kaukana</i>	far
<i>kaukopuhelu</i>	long distance call
<i>kaunis</i>	nice <i>or</i> beautiful
<i>kauppa</i>	shop <i>or</i> store
<i>kaupunki</i>	town
<i>kaurapuuro</i>	oatmeal
<i>kautta</i>	via
<i>keittää</i>	to cook
<i>kellari</i>	cellar
<i>kello</i>	watch <i>or</i> clock
<i>keltainen</i>	yellow
<i>kemisti</i>	chemist
<i>ken</i>	who
<i>kenkä</i>	shoe
<i>kenraali</i>	general
<i>kerran</i>	once
<i>kerrata</i>	to tell again <i>or</i> to review
<i>kerrassaan</i>	absolutely <i>or</i> positively
<i>kerros</i>	floor
<i>kersantti</i>	sergeant
<i>kertoa</i>	to tell
<i>kerätä</i>	to collect
<i>keski</i>	mid-
<i>keskiviikko</i>	Wednesday
<i>keskuslämmitys</i>	central heat
<i>keskustelu</i>	conversation
<i>kesä</i>	summer
<i>kesäkuu</i>	June

<i>keuhko</i>	lung
<i>kevät</i>	spring
<i>kieli</i>	language <i>or</i> tongue
<i>kiire</i>	hurry
<i>kiiruhtaa</i>	to hurry
<i>kiitos</i>	thank you
<i>kiitollinen</i>	grateful
<i>kilometri</i>	kilometer
<i>kilpa-ajot</i>	horse races
<i>kilpailu</i>	race <i>or</i> contest
<i>kilpi</i>	plate <i>or</i> sign
<i>kirja</i>	book
<i>kirjailija</i>	writer <i>or</i> author
<i>kirjasto</i>	library
<i>kirje</i>	letter
<i>kirjoittaa</i>	to write
<i>kirkko</i>	church
<i>kirves</i>	axe
<i>kiusata</i>	to tease
<i>kiwi</i>	stone
<i>kivääri</i>	rifle
<i>koettaa</i>	to try
<i>kohtelias</i>	polite
<i>kohtuullinen</i>	reasonable
<i>koira</i>	dog
<i>koko</i>	whole
<i>kolme</i>	there
<i>komentaa</i>	to command

<i>komppania</i>	company	<i>kuka</i>	who
<i>kone</i>	machine	<i>kukka</i>	flower
<i>konekivääriampuja</i>	machine gunner	<i>kukko</i>	rooster
<i>konjakki</i>	cognac <i>or</i> brandy	<i>kuljetus</i>	transportation
<i>konsertti</i>	concert	<i>kulkukelpoinen</i>	passable
<i>konservatorio</i>	conservatory	<i>kulma</i>	corner
<i>konsulaatti</i>	consulate	<i>kulta</i>	sweetheart <i>or</i> gold
<i>konsuli</i>	consul	<i>kulttuuri</i>	culture
<i>konttori</i>	office	<i>kun</i>	as <i>or</i> when
<i>konttoriapulainen</i>	clerk	<i>kunto</i>	condition
<i>koota</i>	to collect	<i>kuolla</i>	to die
<i>korjata</i>	to repair	<i>kuori</i>	cover
<i>korkea</i>	high	<i>kuoro</i>	choir
<i>korpraali</i>	private first class	<i>kupari</i>	copper
<i>kortti</i>	card	<i>kuppi</i>	cup
<i>korvata</i>	to replace	<i>kurssi</i>	course
<i>koska</i>	when	<i>kuloma</i>	textile
<i>koskea</i>	to hurt <i>or</i> to touch	<i>kuukausi</i>	month
<i>koti</i>	home	<i>kuulla</i>	to hear
<i>koulu</i>	school	<i>kuulua</i>	to include <i>or</i> to belong
<i>koulutus</i>	schooling	<i>kuuluisa</i>	famous
<i>kova</i>	hard <i>or</i> service	<i>kuume</i>	fever
<i>kranaatti</i>	grenade	<i>kuunnella</i>	to listen to
<i>kuin</i>	as <i>or</i> than	<i>kuusi</i>	six
<i>kuinka</i>	how	<i>kuvalehti</i>	magazine
<i>kuitenkin</i>	anyway	<i>kyllä</i>	yes
<i>kuitti</i>	receipt	<i>kylmä</i>	cold
<i>kuiva</i>	dry	<i>kylpyhuone</i>	bathroom

<i>kylä</i>	village
<i>kymmenen</i>	ten
<i>kynä</i>	pencil
<i>kysymys</i>	question
<i>kysyä</i>	to ask
<i>käly</i>	21*
<i>käsi</i>	hand
<i>käsivarsi</i>	arm
<i>kävellä</i>	to walk
<i>käydä</i>	to visit
<i>käymälä</i>	toilet
<i>käyttää</i>	to use
<i>käytäntö</i>	practicality
<i>käytännöllinen</i>	practical
<i>käytävä</i>	corridor
<i>käännös</i>	translation
<i>kääntyä</i>	to turn
<i>kääntää</i>	to forward or to turn or to translate
<i>kömpelö</i>	clumsy
<i>köysi</i>	rope
<i>laakso</i>	valley
<i>laatia</i>	to draw up
<i>laatikko</i>	box
<i>lahja</i>	present
<i>laittaa</i>	to put

\*See unit 29, Comment One, for exact meaning.

<i>laiva</i>	boat or steamer
<i>laji</i>	sort
<i>lakana</i>	sheet
<i>lamppu</i>	lamp or bulb
<i>lanko</i>	22*
<i>latina</i>	Latin
<i>laukku</i>	valise or bag
<i>laulu</i>	song
<i>lapsi</i>	child
<i>lasi</i>	glass
<i>lasku</i>	bill
<i>laskuvarjosotilas</i>	parachutist
<i>lastata</i>	to load
<i>lauantai</i>	Saturday
<i>laulaja</i>	singer
<i>lehmä</i>	cow
<i>leipä</i>	bread
<i>leivos</i>	pastry
<i>lempi-</i>	favorite
<i>lentokone</i>	airplane
<i>lentoposti</i>	airmail
<i>lentoryhmä</i>	group
<i>liha</i>	meat
<i>lihaliemi</i>	bullion
<i>lihapulla</i>	meatball
<i>liian</i>	too
<i>liikemies</i>	businessman
<i>litto</i>	union

<i>lippu</i>	ticket
<i>lista</i>	chart <i>or</i> list
<i>lisää</i>	more
<i>lokakuu</i>	October
<i>loma</i>	vacation
<i>loppu</i>	the rest <i>or</i> end
<i>loukkaantua</i>	to get injured
<i>loukata</i>	to hurt
<i>lounas</i>	lunch
<i>luettelo</i>	directory
<i>lukea</i>	to read
<i>lukemista</i>	reading matter
<i>luku</i>	chapter
<i>lukutaidoton</i>	illiterate
<i>lumi</i>	snow
<i>luokka</i>	class
<i>luonnollinen</i>	natural
<i>luonto</i>	nature
<i>lusikka</i>	spoon
<i>luulla</i>	to think
<i>luutnantti</i>	lieutenant
<i>lypsää</i>	to milk
<i>lyseo</i>	high school
<i>lähellä</i>	near
<i>lähettäjä</i>	sender
<i>lähettäminen</i>	sending
<i>lähettää</i>	to send
<i>lähetystö</i>	legation <i>or</i> embassy

<i>lähteä</i>	to start
<i>lämmin</i>	warm
<i>lämmittää</i>	to keep warm <i>or</i> to heat
<i>länsi</i>	west
<i>lääke</i>	medicin
<i>Lääkintäjoukot</i>	Medical Corps
<i>lääkäri</i>	doctor
<i>lääni</i>	province
<i>löytää</i>	to find
<i>maa</i>	country <i>or</i> earth <i>or</i> countryside
<i>maaherra</i>	governor
<i>maakunta</i>	province
<i>maalaisliitto</i>	agrarian
<i>maalaisnuoriso</i>	country youth
<i>maalari</i>	painter
<i>maalata</i>	to paint
<i>maaliskuu</i>	March
<i>maanantai</i>	Monday
<i>maanviljelijä</i>	farmer
<i>mahdollinen</i>	possible
<i>mahdoton</i>	impossible
<i>maine</i>	fame
<i>mainehikas</i>	celebrated
<i>mainio</i>	excellent <i>or</i> admirable
<i>mainita</i>	to mention
<i>maito</i>	milk
<i>majuri</i>	major
<i>makeinen</i>	sweet(s)



<i>markka</i>	mark
<i>maksaa</i>	to pay
<i>marraskuu</i>	November
<i>matematiikka</i>	mathematics
<i>matka</i>	trip
<i>matkustaa</i>	to travel
<i>matruusi</i>	seaman
<i>me</i>	we
<i>meijeri</i>	dairy <i>or</i> creamery
<i>mekaanikko</i>	mechanic
<i>melkein</i>	almost
<i>menettää</i>	to lose
<i>mennä</i>	to go
<i>meno</i>	way <i>or</i> going
<i>meri</i>	sea
<i>merkki</i>	mark
<i>merkitys</i>	significance <i>or</i> weight
<i>merkitä</i>	to matter <i>or</i> to mean
<i>metsä</i>	forest
<i>metsästää</i>	to hunt
<i>mielenkiintoinen</i>	interesting
<i>mieli</i>	mind
<i>mies</i>	5*
<i>mikä</i>	what
<i>millainen</i>	what kind
<i>milloin</i>	when

---

\*See unit 29, Comment One, for exact meaning.

<i>ministeri</i>	minister
<i>ministeriö</i>	ministry
<i>miniä</i>	23*
<i>minuutti</i>	minute
<i>minä</i>	I
<i>miton</i>	how
<i>molemmat</i>	both
<i>monta</i>	many
<i>moottoripyörä</i>	motorcycle
<i>morfiniinruiske</i>	morphine injection
<i>morsian</i>	bride
<i>muinainen</i>	ancient
<i>muistaa</i>	to remember
<i>mukana</i>	with
<i>muna</i>	egg
<i>muodostaa</i>	to form
<i>museo</i>	museum
<i>musiikki</i>	music
<i>musta</i>	black
<i>muste</i>	ink
<i>mutista</i>	to mutter
<i>mutta</i>	but
<i>muunmuassa (m.m.)</i>	among other things
<i>muuten</i>	otherwise
<i>muuttaa</i>	to move
<i>muuttua</i>	to be moved <i>or</i> to become <i>or</i> to turn out
<i>myyjä</i>	salesman

<i>myymälä</i>	booth <i>or</i> store	<i>nopea</i>	fast
<i>myöhään</i>	late	<i>norjalainen</i>	Norwegian
<i>myöskin</i>	also	<i>nukkua</i>	to sleep
<i>myöten</i>	along	<i>numero</i>	number
<i>naapurii</i>	neighbor	<i>nuori</i>	young
<i>nahka</i>	skin <i>or</i> leather	<i>nykyään</i>	at present
<i>naimisissa</i>	married	<i>nyt</i>	now
<i>nainen</i>	woman	<i>nähdä</i>	to see
<i>naula</i>	nail	<i>näin</i>	like this <i>or</i> so <i>or</i> thus
<i>navetta</i>	barn	<i>näkemiin</i>	so long
<i>ne</i>	them <i>or</i> those	<i>näkyä</i>	to seem
<i>neiti</i>	miss	<i>nälkä</i>	hunger
<i>neljä</i>	four	<i>näytelmä</i>	play
<i>neljännes</i>	a quarter	<i>näyttää</i>	to show
<i>nenä</i>	nose	<i>odottaa</i>	to wait
<i>nenäkäs</i>	impertinent	<i>ohjaaja</i>	leader
<i>nenäliina</i>	handkerchief	<i>ohra</i>	barley
<i>neuvo</i>	advice	<i>oi!</i>	oh!
<i>neuvoa</i>	to advise	<i>oikea</i>	right
<i>nikkeli</i>	nickel	<i>oikein</i>	very
<i>nimismies</i>	sheriff <i>or</i> bailiff	<i>oikeus</i>	justice <i>or</i> court
<i>nimittää</i>	to appoint <i>or</i> to name	<i>olettaa</i>	to suppose
<i>niin</i>	really	<i>olla</i>	to be
<i>niin. . . kuin</i>	as well as	<i>olla pahoilla</i>	to regret <i>or</i> to be sorry
<i>nimi</i>	name	<i>olla perillä</i>	to reach one's destination
<i>no</i>	well	<i>olla velkaa</i>	to owe
<i>noin</i>	about	<i>olut</i>	beer
<i>nolla</i>	zero	<i>oma</i>	own

<i>omistaa</i>	to own
<i>omistaja</i>	owner
<i>onnettomuus</i>	accident
<i>onni</i>	lunch
<i>ooppera</i>	opera
<i>opettaa</i>	to teach
<i>opettaja</i>	teacher
<i>opetus</i>	teaching
<i>opinto</i>	study
<i>opiskelija</i>	student
<i>opiskella</i>	to study
<i>opiskelu</i>	studying
<i>oppi</i>	study
<i>oppikoulu</i>	secondary school
<i>oppilas</i>	pupil
<i>oppivelvollisuus</i>	compulsory education
<i>osa</i>	part <i>or</i> section
<i>osasto</i>	branch
<i>osata</i>	to know how
<i>osoite</i>	address
<i>osoittaa</i>	to address <i>or</i> to point
<i>ostaa</i>	to buy
<i>ostos</i>	purchase
<i>osuus-</i>	co-operative
<i>ottaa</i>	to take
<i>ovi</i>	door
<i>paeta</i>	to flee
<i>paha</i>	bad

<i>pahus</i>
<i>paikka</i>
<i>paino</i>
<i>paistin</i>
<i>paita</i>
<i>pakata</i>
<i>paketti</i>
<i>pakkanen</i>
<i>pakollinen</i>
<i>palata</i>
<i>paljon</i>
<i>palvelija</i>
<i>palvelus</i>
<i>pankki</i>
<i>panna</i>
<i>pannu</i>
<i>pansarijaukot</i>
<i>paperi</i>
<i>parakki</i>
<i>parantua</i>
<i>pari</i>
<i>parranajokone</i>
<i>parta</i>
<i>parturi</i>
<i>passi</i>
<i>pataljoona</i>
<i>patteri</i>
<i>peittää</i>

darn it <i>or</i> nuisance
place
weight
frying
shirt
to pack
package
cold <i>or</i> frost
compulsory
to return
much
servant
service
bank
to put
pan
Armored Command
paper
barracks
to heal <i>or</i> to get well
a couple
razor
beard
barber
passport
battalion
battery
to cover

<i>peljätä</i>	to be afraid
<i>pellava</i>	linen
<i>pelto</i>	field
<i>penni</i>	penny
<i>perhe</i>	family
<i>perjantai</i>	Friday
<i>peruna</i>	potatoes
<i>peruslause</i>	basic sentence
<i>pesuhuone</i>	washroom
<i>pesä</i>	fire-place
<i>pian</i>	soon
<i>pidättää</i>	to arrest
<i>pieni</i>	small
<i>pihvi</i>	beefsteak
<i>piiloutua</i>	to hide
<i>piippu</i>	pipe
<i>piirtää</i>	to draw
<i>Pioneerit</i>	Engineers
<i>pistin</i>	bayonet
<i>pistooli</i>	pistol
<i>pitkä</i>	long
<i>pitää</i>	to like
<i>pohjoinen</i>	worth
<i>poika</i>	boy <i>or</i> 7*
<i>pois</i>	away <i>or</i> off
<i>poliisi</i>	policeman

\*See unit 29, Comment One, for exact meaning.

<i>polttaa</i>	to smoke
<i>porras</i>	stairway <i>or</i> stair
<i>porsliini</i>	china
<i>postimerkki</i>	stamp
<i>potilas</i>	patient
<i>presidentti</i>	president
<i>professori</i>	professor
<i>porsentti</i>	percentage
<i>prässäyttää</i>	to have pressed
<i>puhelin</i>	telephone
<i>puhelu</i>	a call
<i>puhua</i>	to speak
<i>puhutella</i>	to address
<i>pullo</i>	bottle
<i>pumpuli</i>	cotton
<i>punainen</i>	red
<i>puoli</i>	half
<i>puolue</i>	party
<i>puolustus</i>	defence
<i>puu</i>	wood
<i>pyssy</i>	gun
<i>pysyä</i>	to stay
<i>pyyhe</i>	towel
<i>pyykki</i>	laundry
<i>pyytää</i>	to ask for
<i>päivä</i>	day
<i>päivällinen</i>	dinner
<i>pää</i>	head <i>or</i> chief

<i>päällä</i>	on
<i>päällikkö</i>	commander
<i>päättää</i>	to decide
<i>pöytä</i>	table
<i>radio</i>	radio
<i>radisti</i>	radio operator
<i>raitiovaunu</i>	street car
<i>raitis</i>	fresh
<i>raja</i>	border
<i>rakastaa</i>	to love
<i>rakennus</i>	building
<i>Ranska</i>	France
<i>ranskalainen</i>	French
<i>rauha</i>	peace
<i>rauta</i>	iron
<i>rautatieristeys</i>	railroad junction
<i>raskas tykki</i>	heavy gun
<i>Ratsuväki</i>	Cavalry
<i>ravintola</i>	restaurant
<i>reilu</i>	straight forward <i>or</i> honest
<i>rengas</i>	ring
<i>retki</i>	trip
<i>riippua</i>	to depend
<i>rikki</i>	broken
<i>rintama</i>	front
<i>risti</i>	cross
<i>rohdoskauppa</i>	drugstore
<i>romaani</i>	novel

<i>rommi</i>	rum
<i>rouva</i>	Mrs.
<i>ruis</i>	rye
<i>runo</i>	poem
<i>ruokalista</i>	menu
<i>ruotsalainen</i>	Swedish
<i>Ruotsi</i>	Sweden
<i>ryyppy</i>	drink
<i>räätili</i>	tailor
<i>saada</i>	to get
<i>saapas</i>	boot
<i>saapua</i>	to arrive
<i>sahalaitos</i>	sawmill
<i>sairaala</i>	hospital
<i>sairaanhoitaja</i>	nurse
<i>saippua</i>	soap
<i>Saksa</i>	Germany
<i>saksalainen</i>	German
<i>salaatti</i>	salad
<i>sama</i>	game
<i>sana</i>	word
<i>sanella</i>	to dictate
<i>sankari</i>	hero
<i>sanoa</i>	to say
<i>sanoa itsensä ylös</i>	to give notice
<i>sanomalehti</i>	newspaper
<i>sata</i>	hundred
<i>sataa</i>	to rain

<i>salama</i>	port	<i>sisar</i>	4*
<i>satu</i>	fairy tale	<i>sisarukset</i>	42*
<i>sauna</i>	steam bath	<i>sisä</i>	inside
<i>savuke</i>	cigarette	<i>sisältö</i>	contents
<i>se</i>	it	<i>sisäänkirjoitettu</i>	registered
<i>sekki</i>	check	<i>sitten</i>	then
<i>seitsemän</i>	seven	<i>sitäpaitsi</i>	besides
<i>selittää</i>	to explain	<i>soittaa</i>	to call <i>or</i> to ring
<i>selvä</i>	clear	<i>sopia</i>	to be convenient <i>or</i> to fit
<i>seminaari</i>	training college <i>or</i> teachers' college	<i>sosiaalidemokraatti</i>	socialdemocratic
		<i>sota</i>	war
<i>serkku</i>	27*	<i>sotamies</i>	private
<i>setä</i>	13*	<i>Sotapoliisi</i>	Military Police
<i>seuraava</i>	next	<i>sotilas</i>	soldier
<i>seutu</i>	district	<i>sotkea</i>	to mess up
<i>side</i>	bandage	<i>soudella</i>	to row
<i>siirtää</i>	to move <i>or</i> to transfer	<i>sukka</i>	sock
<i>siis</i>	consequently	<i>suklaa</i>	chocolate
<i>sijaita</i>	to be located	<i>suksi</i>	ski
<i>sika</i>	pig	<i>sukulainen</i>	relative
<i>sillä</i>	because	<i>sulhanen</i>	fiancée
<i>silmä</i>	eye	<i>sulkea</i>	to close
<i>silta</i>	bridge	<i>sunnuntai</i>	Sunday
<i>sininen</i>	blue	<i>suoda</i>	to allow <i>or</i> to grant
<i>sinä</i>	you	<i>Suomi</i>	Finland
<i>sipuli</i>	onion	<i>suora</i>	straight
		<i>suositella</i>	to recommend
		<i>surra</i>	to worry

\*See unit 29, Comment One, for exact meaning.

<i>suu</i>	mouth	<i>takaisin</i>	back
<i>suunta</i>	direction	<i>takana</i>	behind
<i>suuri</i>	large	<i>takki</i>	coat
<i>suurlähettiläs</i>	ambassador	<i>talli</i>	stable
<i>suutari</i>	shoemaker	<i>talo</i>	house
<i>syksy</i>	fall	<i>talonmies</i>	janitor
<i>syntyä</i>	to be born	<i>talous</i>	household
<i>syy</i>	reason	<i>talvi</i>	winter
<i>syyskuu</i>	September	<i>tammikuu</i>	winter
<i>syödä</i>	to eat	<i>Tanska</i>	Denmark
<i>sähkö</i>	electricity	<i>tanssi</i>	dance
<i>sähköittää</i>	to wire	<i>tanssia</i>	to dance
<i>sähkösanoma</i>	telegram	<i>tapa</i>	way <i>or</i> habit
<i>säilytyshuone</i>	check-room	<i>tapahtua</i>	to happen
<i>särkeä</i>	to ache <i>or</i> to hurt	<i>tapaus</i>	case
<i>särky</i>	pain	<i>tarina</i>	legend <i>or</i> tradition
<i>säveltää</i>	to compose	<i>tarjoilija</i>	waiter
<i>sääri</i>	leg	<i>tarkalleen</i>	exactly
<i>sääski</i>	mosquito	<i>tarkka-ampuja</i>	sniper
<i>taas</i>	again	<i>tarkoittaa</i>	to mean
<i>tahalla</i>	on purpose	<i>tarve</i>	enough <i>or</i> need
<i>tahna</i>	paste	<i>tarvita</i>	to need
<i>tahtoa</i>	to want	<i>tasavalta</i>	republic
<i>tai</i>	or	<i>tasku</i>	pocket
<i>taide</i>	art	<i>tavallinen</i>	general <i>or</i> usual
<i>taisteluvälineosasto</i>	ordnance corps	<i>tavara</i>	belongings <i>or</i> goods
<i>taivas</i>	heaven	<i>tavaratalo</i>	department store
<i>tajuton</i>	unconscious	<i>te</i>	you

<i>teatteri</i>	theatre	<i>toinen</i>	other <i>or</i> second <i>or</i> another
<i>tehdas</i>	factory	<i>toivoa</i>	to hope <i>or</i> wish
<i>tehdä</i>	to do	<i>torstai</i>	Thursday
<i>tehtävä</i>	duty	<i>tosi</i>	truth
<i>teknillinen</i>	technical	<i>totella</i>	to obey
<i>Teknillinen</i>		<i>Toukokuu</i>	May
<i>Korkeakoulu</i>	Institute of Technology	<i>toveri</i>	friend <i>or</i> pal
<i>teksti</i>	text	<i>tuhat</i>	thousand
<i>teltta</i>	tent	<i>tukka</i>	hair
<i>teollisuus</i>	industry	<i>tukki</i>	log
<i>terve</i>	health	<i>tulitikki</i>	match
<i>tervetuloa</i>	welcome	<i>tulla</i>	to come
<i>terä</i>	blade	<i>tulli</i>	customs <i>or</i> duty
<i>tie</i>	road	<i>tunnettu</i>	known
<i>tieteellinen</i>	scientific	<i>tunti</i>	hour
<i>tietopuolinen</i>	theoretical	<i>tuntua</i>	to feel
<i>tietysti</i>	sure	<i>tuolla</i>	there
<i>tietää</i>	to know	<i>tupakka</i>	tobacco
<i>tiistai</i>	Tuesday	<i>turha</i>	unnecessary
<i>tilata</i>	to order	<i>tusina</i>	dozen
<i>tili</i>	account	<i>tuoda</i>	to bring
<i>todistaa</i>	to prove	<i>tuoli</i>	chair
<i>tohtori</i>	doctor	<i>tuomari</i>	lawyer <i>or</i> judge
<i>toimi</i>	occupation	<i>tuote</i>	product
<i>toinia</i>	to work	<i>tutustua</i>	to get acquainted
<i>toimisto</i>	office	<i>tyhmä</i>	stupid
		<i>Tykistö</i>	Artillery
		<i>tytär</i>	8*

\*See unit 29, Comment One, for exact meaning.



<i>tyttö</i>	girl
<i>tyyny</i>	pillow
<i>tyyppillinen</i>	typical
<i>tyytyväinen</i>	satisfied
<i>työ</i>	work
<i>työläinen</i>	worker
<i>työnantaja</i>	employer
<i>työväenopisto</i>	working man's institute
<i>tämä</i>	this
<i>tärkeä</i>	important
<i>täydellinen</i>	complete
<i>täytteenä</i>	fountain pen
<i>täti</i>	14*
<i>täysi</i>	full
<i>täytyä</i>	must
<i>täyttää</i>	to fill out
<i>uida</i>	to swim
<i>uittaa</i>	to float
<i>ulkoilu</i>	camping
<i>ulkomaa</i>	foreign country <i>or</i> abroad
<i>ulkopuolella</i>	outside
<i>ulos</i>	out
<i>uni</i>	sleep <i>or</i> dream
<i>unohtaa</i>	to forget
<i>upseeri</i>	officer
<i>uudenaikainen</i>	modern

\*See unit 29, Comment One, for exact meaning.

<i>uusi</i>	new
<i>uutinen</i>	piece of news
<i>vaara</i>	danger
<i>vai</i>	or
<i>vaihtaa</i>	to change
<i>vaikeus</i>	difficulty
<i>vaikutus</i>	influence
<i>vailla</i> }	to <i>or</i> of
<i>vaille</i> }	
<i>vaimo</i>	6*
<i>vain</i>	only <i>or</i> just
<i>vaiva</i>	trouble <i>or</i> bother
<i>vaivata</i>	to trouble
<i>vakava</i>	serious
<i>vakuumtaa</i>	to insure <i>or</i> to assure
<i>valita</i>	to choose
<i>valitsija</i>	elector
<i>valkea</i>	white
<i>valmis</i>	ready
<i>valmistua</i>	to be trained
<i>valo</i>	light
<i>valokuva</i>	photo
<i>valtava</i>	powerful <i>or</i> enormous
<i>valtio</i>	government <i>or</i> state
<i>valtioneuvosto</i>	cabinet
<i>vanha</i>	old
<i>vanhemmat</i>	39*
<i>vanki</i>	prisoner

<i>vapaa</i>	vacant
<i>varata</i>	to reserve
<i>varmaan</i>	certainly
<i>varsin</i>	especially
<i>varten</i>	for
<i>varusteet</i>	equipment
<i>vapaaehtoinen</i>	voluntary <i>or</i> by choice
<i>vapaus</i>	freedom
<i>vasara</i>	hammer
<i>vasen</i>	left
<i>vastaanottaja</i>	receiver
<i>vastapäätä</i>	opposite
<i>vastata</i>	to answer
<i>vastine</i>	equivalent
<i>vaunu</i>	car
<i>vehnä</i>	wheat
<i>veitsi</i>	knife
<i>veli</i>	3*
<i>veljekset</i>	40*
<i>vene</i>	boat
<i>venäläinen</i>	Russian
<i>vesi</i>	water
<i>viedä</i>	to take
<i>vielä</i>	still
<i>vienti</i>	export
<i>vieras</i>	stranger <i>or</i> guest

---

\*See unit 29, Comment One, for exact meaning.

<i>vihannes</i>	vegetable
<i>vihollinen</i>	enemy
<i>vihreä</i>	green
<i>viikko</i>	week
<i>viime</i>	last
<i>viina</i>	liquor
<i>viini</i>	wine
<i>viisi</i>	five
<i>vika</i>	fault <i>or</i> defect
<i>vilja</i>	grain
<i>viljellä</i>	to cultivate
<i>villainen</i>	woolen
<i>virallinen</i>	official
<i>virkailija</i>	clerk
<i>viski</i>	whiskey
<i>voi!</i>	oh!
<i>voida</i>	can
<i>voima</i>	power
<i>vuode</i>	bed
<i>vuokra</i>	rent
<i>vuokrata</i>	to rent
<i>vuoksi</i>	on account of
<i>vuosi</i>	year
<i>vuosisata</i>	century
<i>vähän</i>	a little
<i>väli</i>	space
<i>välttämätöntä</i>	necessary
<i>vänrikki</i>	Second Lieutenant.

<i>väsyä</i>	to get tired
<i>vävy</i>	24*
<i>väärä</i>	wrong
<i>vääpeli</i>	sergeant major
<i>yhdeksän</i>	nine
<i>Yhdysvallat</i>	United States
<i>yhtaikaa</i>	simultaneously
<i>yhteys</i>	connection
<i>yhtyä</i>	to enlist <i>or</i> to join
<i>yhtä . . . kuin</i>	as . . . as
<i>yksi</i>	one
<i>yksityiskohtainen</i>	particular
<i>ylhäällä</i>	up
<i>yleensä</i>	generally

---

\*See unit 29, Comment One, for exact meaning.

<i>yli</i>	part
<i>Yliopisto</i>	University
<i>ylityö</i>	overtime
<i>ylittää</i>	to cross
<i>ylläpitää</i>	to support
<i>ylpeys</i>	pride
<i>lläpuolella</i>	above
<i>ylös</i>	up
<i>ymmärtää</i>	to understand
<i>ympyrä</i>	circle
<i>yskä</i>	cold <i>or</i> cough
<i>ystävä</i>	friend
<i>yö</i>	night
<i>äiti</i>	2*
<i>äkkirvaanatta</i>	suddenly
<i>ääntää</i>	to pronounce

## B. ENGLISH-FINNISH

a (certain)  
 about  
 above  
 absolutely  
 academy  
 accept, to  
 accident  
 account  
 ache, to  
 activity  
 address  
 address, to  
 address, to  
 administrative  
 admirable  
 admirer  
 advice  
 advise, to  
 afraid, to be  
 after  
 again  
 age  
 agrarian  
 ahead  
 ahead

*eräs*  
*noin*  
*yläpuolella*  
*kerrassaan*  
*akatemia*  
*hyväksyä*  
*onnettomuus*  
*tili*  
*särkeä*  
*harrastus*  
*osoite*  
*osoittaa*  
*puhutella*  
*hallinnollinen*  
*mainio*  
*ihailija*  
*neuvo*  
*neuvoa*  
*peljätä*  
*jälkeen*  
*taas*  
*ikä*  
*maalaislutto*  
*eteenpäin*  
*edellä*

air mail  
 airplane  
 all  
 allow  
 almost  
 along  
 also  
 always  
 ambassador  
 American  
 ammunition  
 among other things  
 ancient  
 and  
 and so forth  
 answer, to  
 anymore  
 anyway  
 apartment  
 appoint, to  
 April  
 arm  
 Armored Command  
 army  
 arrest, to

*lentoposti*  
*lentokone*  
*kaikki*  
*suokaa*  
*melkein*  
*myöten*  
*myöskin*  
*aina*  
*suurlahettilas*  
*amerikkalainen*  
*ammukset*  
*muunmuassa (m.m.)*  
*muinainen*  
*ja*  
*ja niinedespäin (j.n.e.)*  
*vastata*  
*enää*  
*kuitenkin*  
*huoneusto*  
*nimittää*  
*huhtikuu*  
*kasivarsi*  
*pansarijankot*  
*armeija*  
*pidättää*

arrive, to  
art  
artillery  
as  
as  
as . . . as  
as well as  
ask, to  
ask for, to  
at once  
at present  
Atheneum  
attache  
auditorium  
August  
author  
away  
axe  
back  
bad  
bad  
bandage  
bank  
barber  
barley  
barn  
barracks  
basic sentence

*saapua*  
*laide*  
*iykisto*  
*kuin*  
*kun*  
*yhtä . . . kuin*  
*niin . . . kuin*  
*kysyä*  
*pyytää*  
*heti*  
*nykyään*  
*Atheneumi*  
*attashea*  
*juhlasali*  
*elokuu*  
*kirjailija*  
*pois*  
*kirves*  
*takaisin*  
*huono*  
*paha*  
*side*  
*paukki*  
*parturi*  
*ohra*  
*navetta*  
*parakki*  
*peruslause*

bathroom  
battalion  
battery  
bayonet  
be, to  
beard  
because  
become, to  
bed  
beefsteak  
beer  
before  
before  
beforehand  
begin, to  
behind  
belongings  
besides  
bill  
black  
blade  
blanket  
blue  
boat  
boat  
book  
boot  
booth

*kylpyhuone*  
*pataljoona*  
*patteri*  
*pistin*  
*olla*  
*parta*  
*sillä*  
*muuttua*  
*vuode*  
*pihvi*  
*olut*  
*edellä*  
*ennen*  
*etukateen*  
*alkaa*  
*takana*  
*tavara*  
*sitäpaitsi*  
*lasku*  
*musta*  
*terä*  
*huopa*  
*sininen*  
*vene*  
*laiva*  
*kirja*  
*saapas*  
*myymälä*

border  
born, to be  
both  
bottle  
box  
boy  
branch  
branch  
bread  
break, to  
breakfast  
bride  
bridge  
bring, to  
broken  
brother  
building  
buillon  
businessman  
but  
buy, to  
cabinet  
call, a  
call, to  
camping  
can  
candy  
car

*raja*  
*syntyä*  
*molemmat*  
*pullo*  
*laatikko*  
*poika*  
*haara*  
*osasto*  
*leipä*  
*kalkaista*  
*vaamiainen*  
*morsian*  
*silta*  
*tuoda*  
*rikki*  
*veli*  
*rakennus*  
*lihaliemi*  
*liikemies*  
*mutta*  
*ostaa*  
*valtioneuvosto*  
*puhelu*  
*soittaa*  
*ulkoilu*  
*voida*  
*karamelli*  
*auto*

car  
card  
care  
case  
cashier  
Cavalry  
celebrated  
cellar  
central heat  
century  
certainly  
chair  
chamber  
change, to  
chapter  
chart  
cheap  
check  
check-room  
chemist  
chicken  
chickenhouse  
children  
chocolate  
choice, by  
choir  
choose, to  
church

*vaunu*  
*kortti*  
*huoli*  
*ta paus*  
*kassa*  
*Ratsuväki*  
*mainehikas*  
*kellari*  
*keskuslämmitys*  
*vuosisata*  
*varmaan*  
*tuoli*  
*kamari*  
*vaihtaa*  
*luku*  
*lista*  
*halpa*  
*sekki*  
*säilytys huone*  
*kemisti*  
*kana*  
*kanala*  
*lapsi*  
*suklaa*  
*vapaaehtoinen*  
*kuoro*  
*valita*  
*kirkko*

cigarette  
circle  
citizen  
class  
clear  
clerk  
clerk  
close, to  
clumsy  
coat  
coffee  
cognac  
cold  
cold  
cold  
collect, to  
collect, to  
colonel  
come, to  
command, to  
commander  
company  
complete  
compose, to  
compulsory  
compulsory education  
concert  
condition

*savuke*  
*ympyrä*  
*kansalainen*  
*luokka*  
*selvä*  
*konthoriapulainen*  
*virkaileja*  
*sulkea*  
*kömpelö*  
*takki*  
*kahvi*  
*konjakki*  
*kylmä*  
*pakkanen*  
*yskä*  
*kerätä*  
*koota*  
*eversti*  
*tulla*  
*komentaa*  
*päällikkö*  
*komppania*  
*täydellinen*  
*säveltää*  
*pakollinen*  
*oppivelvollisuus*  
*konsertti*  
*kunto*

connection  
consequently  
conservatory  
consul  
consulate  
contents  
continuation  
continue, to  
continued, to be  
conversation  
converse, to  
convenient, to be  
cook, to  
co-operative  
corner  
copper  
corporal  
corridor  
cotton  
cough  
country  
country side  
country youth  
couple, a  
course  
cover  
cover, to  
cow

*yhteys*  
*süs*  
*konservatorio*  
*konsuli*  
*konsulaatti*  
*sisältö*  
*jatkoa*  
*jatkaa*  
*jatkoa*  
*keskustelu*  
*kertoa*  
*sopia*  
*keittää*  
*ossus-*  
*kulma*  
*kupari*  
*alikersantti*  
*käytävä*  
*pumpuli*  
*yskä*  
*maa*  
*maa*  
*maalaisnuoriso*  
*pari*  
*kurssi*  
*kuori*  
*peittää*  
*lehmä*

cross  
cross, to  
cultivate, to  
culture  
cup  
customs  
dairy  
dance  
dance, to  
danger  
darn it  
day  
December  
decide, to  
defence  
degree  
Denmark  
department-store  
depend, to  
design  
desert  
dictate, to  
die, to  
Diet  
difference  
different  
difficulty  
dinner

*risti*  
*ylittää*  
*viljellä*  
*kulttuuri*  
*kuppi*  
*tulli*  
*meijeri*  
*tanssi*  
*tanssia*  
*vaara*  
*pahus*  
*päivä*  
*joulukuu*  
*päättää*  
*puolustus*  
*aste*  
*Tanska*  
*tavaratalo*  
*riippua*  
*aihe*  
*jälkiruoka*  
*sanella*  
*kuolla*  
*eduskunta*  
*eroavaisuus*  
*eri*  
*vaikeus*  
*päivällinen*

direction  
directory  
district  
divide  
division  
do, to  
doctor  
doctor  
dog  
door  
double barrelled gun  
down  
dozen  
draw, to  
draw up, to  
drink  
drink, to  
drugstore  
dry  
duty  
duty  
early  
earth  
east  
eat, to  
education  
egg  
eight

*suunta*  
*luettelo*  
*seutu*  
*jakaa*  
*divisioona*  
*tehdä*  
*lääkäri*  
*tohtori*  
*koira*  
*ovi*  
*haulikko*  
*alas*  
*tusina*  
*piirtää*  
*laatia*  
*ryyppy*  
*juoda*  
*rohdoskauppa*  
*kuiva*  
*tehtävä*  
*tulli*  
*aikaisin*  
*maa*  
*itä*  
*syödä*  
*kasvatus*  
*muna*  
*kahdeksan*



either  
elector  
elementary school  
electricity  
elevator  
employer  
enemy  
engineer  
Engineers  
English  
enlist, to  
enough  
ensign  
equipment  
equivalent  
especially  
even  
every  
exactly  
example  
excellent  
excuse me  
expensive  
explain, to  
export  
extension  
eye  
face

*joka*  
*valitsija*  
*kansakoula*  
*sähkö*  
*hissi*  
*työnantaja*  
*vihollinen*  
*insinööri*  
*Pioneerit*  
*englantia*  
*yhtyä*  
*tarve*  
*aliluutnantti*  
*varusteet*  
*vastine*  
*varsin*  
*edes*  
*joka*  
*tarkalleen*  
*esimerkki*  
*mainio*  
*anteeksi*  
*kallis*  
*selittää*  
*vienti*  
*jatko*  
*silmä*  
*kasvot*

factory  
fairy tale  
fall  
fame  
family  
famous  
far  
farmer  
fast  
fault  
favorite  
February  
feel, to  
fetch, to  
fever  
fiancée  
field  
fill out, to  
film  
find, to  
Finland  
fire-place  
first  
fish  
fish, to  
fit, to  
five  
flee, to

*tehdas*  
*satu*  
*syksy*  
*maine*  
*perhe*  
*kuuluisa*  
*kaukana*  
*maanviljelijä*  
*nopea*  
*vika*  
*lempi-*  
*helmikuu*  
*tuntua*  
*hakea*  
*kuume*  
*sulhanen*  
*pelto*  
*täyttää*  
*filmi*  
*löytää*  
*Suomi*  
*pesä*  
*ensin*  
*kala*  
*kalastaa*  
*sopia*  
*viisi*  
*paeta*

float, to  
floor  
flower  
folklore  
foot  
for  
for goodness sake  
foreign country  
forest  
forget, to  
fork  
fork  
form  
form, to  
forward, to  
fountain pen  
four  
France  
freedom  
French  
fresh  
Friday  
friend  
friend  
front  
frost  
frying  
full

*uittaa*  
*kerros*  
*kukka*  
*kansanrunous*  
*jalka*  
*varten*  
*hyvänen aika*  
*ulkomaa*  
*metsä*  
*unohtaa*  
*haarukka*  
*kahveli*  
*kaavake*  
*muodostaa*  
*kääntää*  
*täytekynä*  
*neljä*  
*Ranska*  
*vapaus*  
*ranskalainen*  
*raitis*  
*perjantai*  
*loveri*  
*ystävä*  
*rintama*  
*pakkanen*  
*paistin-*  
*täysi*

fun  
furniture  
further  
gas (stove)  
gasoline  
gay  
general  
generally  
general  
gentleman  
German  
Germany  
get, to  
get, to  
get acquainted, to  
get injured, to  
get lost, to  
get tired, to  
get wounded, to  
girl  
give, to  
give notice, to  
glass  
go, to  
God  
good-bye  
goods  
government

*hauska*  
*hvonekalu*  
*edelleen*  
*kaasu*  
*benssiini*  
*hauska*  
*kenraali*  
*yleensä*  
*tavallinen*  
*herra*  
*saksalainen*  
*Saksa*  
*joutua*  
*saada*  
*tutustua*  
*loukkaantua*  
*eksyä*  
*väsyä*  
*haavoittua*  
*tyttö*  
*antaa*  
*sanoa itsensä ylös*  
*lasi*  
*mennä*  
*Jumala*  
*hyvästi*  
*tavara*  
*hallitus*

government  
governor  
grade  
grain  
grandfather  
grant  
grateful  
green  
grenade  
group  
guess, to  
gun  
habit  
hair of the head  
half  
hammer  
hand  
handkerchief  
happen, to  
happy  
hard  
have pressed, to  
he  
head  
heal, to  
hear, to  
heaven  
heavy gun

*valtio*  
*maaherra*  
*aste*  
*vilja*  
*isoisä*  
*suokaa*  
*kiitollinen*  
*vihreä*  
*kranaatti*  
*lentoryhmä*  
*arvata*  
*pyssy*  
*tapa*  
*tukka*  
*puoli*  
*vasara*  
*käsi*  
*nenäliina*  
*tapahtua*  
*iloinen*  
*kova*  
*prässäyttää*  
*hän*  
*pää*  
*parantua*  
*kuulla*  
*taivas*  
*raskas tykki*

hello!  
help  
help, to  
hero  
hide, to  
high  
high school  
history  
home  
hope, to  
horrible  
horse  
horse races  
hospital  
hotel  
hour  
house  
household  
how  
how  
how about  
human being  
hundred  
hunger  
hunt, to  
hurry  
hurry, to  
hurt, to

*terve*  
*apu*  
*aultaa*  
*sankari*  
*piiloutua*  
*korkea*  
*lyseo*  
*historia*  
*koti*  
*toivoa*  
*kamala*  
*hevonen*  
*kilpa-ajot*  
*sairaala*  
*hotelli*  
*tunti*  
*talo*  
*talous*  
*kuinka*  
*miten*  
*entäs*  
*ihminen*  
*sata*  
*nälkä*  
*metsästää*  
*kiire*  
*kiiruhtaa*  
*koskea*

hurt, to  
 hurt, to  
 I  
 ice  
 ice cream  
 idea  
 idealist  
 identification  
 if  
 illiterate  
 immediately  
 impertinent  
 important  
 impossible  
 includes  
 industry  
 infantry  
 influence  
 ink  
 inside  
 instead  
 Institute of Technology

insure, to  
 intend, to  
 interesting  
 international  
 iron

*loukata*  
*särkeä*  
*minä*  
*jää*  
*jäätelö*  
*ajatus*  
*idealisti*  
*henkilöllisyys*  
*jos*  
*lukutaidoton*  
*heti*  
*nenäkäs*  
*tärkeä*  
*mahdoton*  
*kuulua*  
*teollisuus*  
*jalkaväki*  
*vaikutus*  
*muste*  
*sisä*  
*asemasta*  
*Teknillinen Korkea-*  
*koulu*  
*vakuuttaa*  
*aijotte*  
*mielenkiintoinen*  
*kansainvälinen*  
*rauta*

it  
 it doesn't matter  
 janitor  
 January  
 Japan  
 join, to  
 July  
 June  
 just now  
 justice  
 keep warm, to  
 key  
 kilometer  
 knife  
 know, to  
 known  
 know how, to  
 lake  
 lamp  
 landlord  
 language  
 large  
 last  
 late  
 Latin  
 laundry  
 lawyer  
 leader

*se*  
*ei ansaitse*  
*talonmies*  
*tammikuu*  
*Japani*  
*yhtyä*  
*heinäkuu*  
*kesäkuu*  
*juuri*  
*oikeus*  
*lämmittää*  
*avain*  
*kilometri*  
*veitsi*  
*tietää*  
*tunnettu*  
*osata*  
*järvi*  
*lamppu*  
*isäntä*  
*kieli*  
*suuri*  
*viime*  
*myöhään*  
*latina*  
*pyykki*  
*tuomari*  
*ohjaaja*

learn, to	<i>jättää</i>	lose, to	<i>menettää</i>
left	<i>vasen</i>	love, to	<i>rakastaa</i>
leg	<i>sääri</i>	luck	<i>onni</i>
legation	<i>lähetystö</i>	lunch	<i>lounas</i>
legend	<i>tarina</i>	lung	<i>keuhko</i>
letter	<i>kirje</i>	machine gunner	<i>konekivääriampuja</i>
library	<i>kirjasto</i>	magazine	<i>kuvalehti</i>
lieutenant	<i>luutnantti</i>	major	<i>majuri</i>
light	<i>valo</i>	majority	<i>enemmistö</i>
like, to	<i>pitää</i>	mark	<i>merkki</i>
like this <i>or</i> so <i>or</i> thus	<i>näin</i>	master	<i>isäntä</i>
line	<i>ala</i>	mistake, make a	<i>erehtyä</i>
linen	<i>pellava</i>	mistaken, to be	<i>erehtyä</i>
lines	<i>johdot</i>	manager	<i>johtaja</i>
liquor	<i>viina</i>	many	<i>monta</i>
list	<i>lista</i>	map	<i>kartta</i>
listen to, to	<i>kuunnella</i>	March	<i>maaliskuu</i>
little, a	<i>vähän</i>	mark	<i>markka</i>
live, to	<i>elää</i>	married	<i>naimisissa</i>
load, to	<i>lastata</i>	Master of Arts	<i>Filosofian Maister</i>
located, to be	<i>sijaita</i>	matches	<i>tulitikki</i>
log	<i>tukki</i>	material	<i>aine</i>
long	<i>pitkä</i>	mathematics	<i>matematiikka</i>
long distance call	<i>kaukopuhelu</i>	matter	<i>asia</i>
long time	<i>kauan</i>	matter, to	<i>merkitä</i>
look for, to	<i>etsiä</i>	May	<i>toukokuu</i>
Lord	<i>Jumala</i>	mean, to	<i>tarkoittaa</i>
lose, to	<i>hukata</i>	mean, to	<i>merkitä</i>

meat  
meatballs  
mechanic  
Medical Corps  
medicin  
mention, to  
menu  
mess up, to  
mid-  
Military Police  
milk  
milk, to  
mind  
mine  
minister  
ministry  
minute  
miss  
Mr.  
mistress  
modern  
Monday  
month  
more  
morning  
morphine injection  
mosquito  
mosquito

*liha*  
*lihapulla*  
*mekaanikko*  
*Lääkintäjoukot*  
*lääke*  
*mainita*  
*ruokalista*  
*sotkea*  
*kesdi*  
*Sotapoliisi*  
*maito*  
*lypsää*  
*mieli*  
*kaivos*  
*ministeri*  
*ministeriö*  
*minuutti*  
*neiti*  
*herra*  
*emäntä*  
*uudenaikainen*  
*maanantai*  
*kuukausi*  
*lisää*  
*aamu*  
*morfiiniruiske*  
*hyttynen*  
*sääski*

motorcycle  
mouth  
moved, to be  
moved, to be  
move in, to  
movies  
his  
much  
museum  
music  
must  
mutter, to  
nail  
name  
name, to  
national  
natural  
nature  
near  
necessary  
need  
need, to  
neighbor  
net  
new  
newspaper  
next  
next

*moottoripyörä*  
*suu*  
*siirtää*  
*muuttua*  
*muuttaa*  
*elokuvat*  
*rouva*  
*paljon*  
*museo*  
*musiikki*  
*täytyä*  
*mutuista*  
*naula*  
*nimi*  
*nimittää*  
*kansallis-*  
*luonnollinen*  
*luonto*  
*lähellä*  
*välttämätöntä*  
*tarve*  
*tarvita*  
*naapurin*  
*harso*  
*uusi*  
*sanomalehti*  
*ensi*  
*seuraava*

nice	<i>kaunis</i>	on	<i>päälle</i>
nickel	<i>nikkeli</i>	on account of	<i>vuoksi</i>
night	<i>yö</i>	on purpose	<i>tahalla</i>
nine	<i>yhdeksän</i>	once	<i>kerran</i>
no	<i>ei</i>	one	<i>yksi</i>
noncommissioned officer	<i>aliupseeri</i>	only	<i>ainoastaan</i>
north	<i>pohjoinen</i>	only	<i>vain</i>
Norwegian	<i>Norjalainen</i>	opera	<i>ooppera</i>
nose	<i>nenä</i>	opposite	<i>vastapäätä</i>
notice, to	<i>huomata</i>	or	<i>tai</i>
novel	<i>romaani</i>	or	<i>vai</i>
November	<i>marraskuu</i>	order, to	<i>tilata</i>
now	<i>nyt</i>	Ordnance Corps	<i>taisteluvälineosasto</i>
nuisance	<i>pahus</i>	organize, to	<i>järjestää</i>
number	<i>numero</i>	other	<i>toinen</i>
nurse	<i>sairaanhoitaja</i>	otherwise	<i>muuten</i>
oatmeal	<i>kaurapuuro</i>	out	<i>ulos</i>
obey, to	<i>totella</i>	outfit	<i>joukko-osasto</i>
occupation	<i>toimi</i>	outside	<i>ulkopuolella</i>
October	<i>lokakuu</i>	overtime	<i>ylityö</i>
off	<i>pois</i>	owe, to	<i>olla velkaa</i>
office	<i>konttori</i>	own	<i>oma</i>
office	<i>toimisto</i>	own, to	<i>omistaa</i>
officer	<i>upseeri</i>	owner	<i>omistaja</i>
official	<i>virallinen</i>	onion	<i>sipuli</i>
oh!	<i>oi!</i>	pack, to	<i>pakata</i>
oh!	<i>voil</i>	package	<i>paketti</i>
old	<i>vanha</i>	pain	<i>särky</i>

paint, to  
painter  
pal  
pan  
paper  
parachutist  
parents  
parliament  
part  
part  
particulars  
party  
passable  
passport  
past  
paste  
pastry  
patient  
pay, to  
peace  
pencil  
penny  
peoples high school  
percentage  
perhaps  
person  
person  
pharmacy

*maalata*  
*maalari*  
*toveri*  
*pannu*  
*paperi*  
*laskuvarjosotilas*  
*vanhemmat*  
*eduskunta*  
*jakso*  
*osa*  
*yksityiskohtineen*  
*puolue*  
*kulkukelpoinen*  
*passi*  
*yli*  
*tahna*  
*leivos*  
*potilas*  
*maksaa*  
*rauha*  
*kynä*  
*penni*  
*kansanopisto*  
*prosentti*  
*ehkä*  
*henkilö*  
*ihminen*  
*apteekki*

photo  
piece of news  
pig  
pillow  
pipe  
pistol  
place  
plate  
play  
pocket  
poem  
point, to  
policeman  
polite  
port  
porter  
portion  
possible  
positively  
pot  
potatoes  
power  
powerful  
practical  
practicality  
practice  
present  
present, to

*valokuva*  
*uutinen*  
*sika*  
*tyyny*  
*piippu*  
*pistooli*  
*paikka*  
*kilpi*  
*näytelmä*  
*tasku*  
*runo*  
*osoittaa*  
*poliisi*  
*kohtelias*  
*satama*  
*kantaja*  
*annos*  
*mahdollinen*  
*kerrassaan*  
*kattila*  
*peruna*  
*voima*  
*valtava*  
*käytännöllinen*  
*käytäntö*  
*harjoitus*  
*lahja*  
*esitellä*



president	<i>presidentti</i>	railroad-junction	<i>rautatieristeys</i>
previous	<i>edellinen</i>	rain, to	<i>sataa</i>
price	<i>hinta</i>	razor	<i>parranajokone</i>
pride	<i>ylpeys</i>	reach one's destination, to	<i>olla perillä</i>
prisoner	<i>vanki</i>	read, to	<i>lukea</i>
private	<i>sotamies</i>	reading matter	<i>lukemista</i>
private first class	<i>korpraali</i>	ready	<i>valmis</i>
probably	<i>kai</i>	really	<i>niin</i>
product	<i>tuote</i>	reason	<i>syy</i>
professor	<i>professori</i>	reasonable	<i>kohtuullinen</i>
pronounce, to	<i>ääntää</i>	receipt	<i>kuitti</i>
prove, to	<i>todista</i>	receiver	<i>vastaanottaja</i>
province	<i>lääni</i>	recommend, to	<i>suositella</i>
provincial	<i>maakunta</i>	red	<i>punainen</i>
published, to be	<i>ilmestyä</i>	register	<i>sisäänkirjoitettu</i>
pupil	<i>oppilas</i>	regret, to	<i>olla pahoilla</i>
purchase	<i>ostos</i>	relative	<i>sukulainen</i>
pursuit	<i>harrastus</i>	remember, to	<i>muistaa</i>
put, to	<i>laittaa</i>	rent	<i>vuokra</i>
put, to	<i>panna</i>	rent, to	<i>vuokrata</i>
quarter, a	<i>neljännes</i>	repair, to	<i>korjata</i>
Quartermaster Corps	<i>Huoltojoukot</i>	replace, to	<i>korvata</i>
question	<i>kysymys</i>	report, to	<i>ilmoittautua</i>
quiet	<i>hiljaa</i>	represent, to	<i>edustaa</i>
quite	<i>aivan</i>	representative	<i>edustaja</i>
race	<i>kilpailu</i>	republic	<i>tasavalta</i>
radio	<i>radio</i>	reserve, to	<i>varata</i>
radio operator	<i>radisti</i>	rest, the	<i>loppu</i>

restaurant  
return, to  
review  
rifle  
right  
ring  
ring, to  
river  
road  
room  
rooster  
root  
rope  
row, to  
rum  
Russian  
rye  
salad  
salesman  
same  
satisfied  
Saturday  
sawmill  
say, to  
scar  
school  
schooling  
scientific

*ravintola*  
*palata*  
*jälkikatsaus*  
*kivääri*  
*oikea*  
*rengas*  
*soittaa*  
*joki*  
*tie*  
*huone*  
*kukko*  
*juuri*  
*köysi*  
*soudella*  
*rommi*  
*venäläinen*  
*ruis*  
*salaatti*  
*myyjä*  
*sama*  
*tyytyväinen*  
*lauantai*  
*sahalaitos*  
*sanoa*  
*arpi*  
*koulu*  
*koulutus*  
*tieteellinen*

sea  
seaman  
second lieutenant  
second  
secondary school  
see, to  
see, to  
seem, to  
self  
send, to  
sender  
sending  
September  
sergeant  
sergeant major  
serious  
servant  
service  
seven  
severe  
severe  
shave, to  
she  
sheet  
sheriff  
shirt  
shoe  
shoemaker

*meri*  
*matruusi*  
*vänrikki*  
*toinen*  
*oppikoulu*  
*katsoa*  
*nähdä*  
*näkyä*  
*itse*  
*lähettää*  
*lähettäjä*  
*lähettäminen*  
*syyskuu*  
*kersantti*  
*vääpeli*  
*vakava*  
*palvelija*  
*palvelus*  
*seitsemän*  
*ankara*  
*kova*  
*ajaa*  
*hän*  
*lakana*  
*nimismies*  
*paita*  
*kenkä*  
*suutari*

shoot, to  
shop  
shorts  
show, to  
sign  
sign, to  
signature  
significance  
simultaneously  
singer  
sit, to  
six  
ski  
ski, to  
skiing condition  
skin  
sleep  
sleep, to  
slowly  
small  
smoke, to  
sniper  
snow  
so long  
soap  
social-democratic  
sock  
soldier

*ampua*  
*kauppa*  
*alushousut*  
*näyttää*  
*kilpi*  
*allekirjoittaa*  
*allekirjoitus*  
*merkitys*  
*yhtaikaa*  
*laulaja*  
*istua*  
*kuusi*  
*suksi*  
*hiihtää*  
*hiihtokeli*  
*nahka*  
*uni*  
*nukkua*  
*hitaasti*  
*pieni*  
*polttaa*  
*tarkka-ampuja*  
*lumi*  
*näkemiin*  
*saippua*  
*sosialidemokraatti*  
*sukka*  
*sotilas*

some kind  
son  
song  
soon  
sorry, to be  
sort  
south  
space  
speak, to  
special  
spill, to  
spoon  
spring  
stable  
stair  
stairway  
stamp  
standard  
start, to  
state  
station  
stay, to  
stay, to  
stay, to  
steambath  
steamer  
step  
step, to

*jonkinlainen*  
*poika*  
*laulu*  
*pian*  
*olla pahoilla*  
*laji*  
*etelä*  
*väli*  
*puhua*  
*erikoinen*  
*kaataa*  
*lusikka*  
*kevät*  
*talli*  
*porras*  
*porras*  
*postimerkki*  
*kanta*  
*lähteä*  
*valtio*  
*asema*  
*asua*  
*jäädä*  
*pysyä*  
*sauna*  
*laiva*  
*askel*  
*astua*

still  
stone  
store  
store  
stove  
straight  
straightforward  
stranger  
strict  
street  
street-car  
student  
study  
study  
study, to  
studying  
stupid  
subject  
subject  
suddenly  
suggest, to  
summer  
Sunday  
support  
support, to  
suppose, to  
sure  
surprised, to be

*vielä*  
*kiivi*  
*myymälä*  
*kauppa*  
*hella*  
*suora*  
*reilu*  
*vieras*  
*ankara*  
*katu*  
*railiovaunu*  
*opiskelija*  
*opinto*  
*oppi*  
*opiskella*  
*opiskelu*  
*tyhmä*  
*aihe*  
*aine*  
*äkkäarvaamatta*  
*ehdottaa*  
*kesä*  
*sunnuntai*  
*kannatus*  
*ylläpitää*  
*olettaa*  
*tietysti*  
*hämmästyä*

surrender, to  
suspense  
Sweden  
Swedish  
sweet(s)  
sweetheart  
swim, to  
system  
table  
tailor  
take, to  
take, to  
tank  
teach, to  
teacher  
teaching  
tease, to  
technical  
telegram  
telephone  
tell again, to  
ten  
tent  
text  
textile  
thank you  
that  
theatre

*antautua*  
*jännitys*  
*Ruotsi*  
*ruotsalainen*  
*makeinen*  
*kulta*  
*uida*  
*järjestelmä*  
*pöytä*  
*räätäli*  
*ottaa*  
*viedä*  
*hyökkäysvaunu*  
*opettaa*  
*opettaja*  
*opetus*  
*kiusata*  
*teknillinen*  
*sähkösanoma*  
*puhelin*  
*kerrata*  
*kymmenen*  
*teltta*  
*teksti*  
*kutoma*  
*kiitos*  
*että*  
*teatteri*

them  
then  
theoretical  
there  
they  
thing  
think, to  
think, to  
this  
those  
thought  
thousand  
there  
Thursday  
ticket  
time  
tip  
to  
to  
tobacco  
toilet  
tongue  
too  
tooth  
towel  
town  
trade  
tradition

*ne*  
*sitten*  
*tietopuolinen*  
*tuolla*  
*he*  
*asia*  
*ajatella*  
*luulla*  
*tämä*  
*ne*  
*ajatus*  
*tuhat*  
*kolme*  
*torstai*  
*lippu*  
*aika*  
*juomaraha*  
*vailla*  
*vaille*  
*tupakka*  
*käymälä*  
*kieli*  
*liian*  
*hammas*  
*pyyhe*  
*kaupunki*  
*ammatti*  
*tarina*

train  
trained, to be  
training college for teachers  
transfer, to  
translation  
translate, to  
transportation  
travel, to  
trip  
trip  
troop  
trouble  
trouble  
trouble, to  
trousers  
truth  
try, to  
Tuesday  
turn, to  
turn, to  
turn out, to  
turn over, to  
two  
typical  
unconscious  
under  
usual  
understand, to

*juna*  
*valmistua*  
*seminaari*  
*siirtää*  
*käännös*  
*kääntää*  
*kuljetus*  
*matkustaa*  
*matka*  
*retki*  
*eskadroona*  
*ikävyys*  
*vaiva*  
*vaivata*  
*housut*  
*tosi*  
*koettaa*  
*tiistai*  
*kääntyä*  
*kääntää*  
*muuttua*  
*kaataa*  
*kaksi*  
*tyypillinen*  
*tajuton*  
*alainen*  
*tavallinen*  
*ymmärtää*

United States  
union  
University  
unnecessary  
up  
up  
use, to  
vacant  
vacation  
valise  
valley  
value  
vegetable  
very  
via  
village  
visit, to  
voluntary  
wait, to  
waiter  
walk, to  
want, to  
want, to  
war  
warm  
washroom  
watch  
water

*Yhdysvallat*  
*litto*  
*Yliopisto*  
*turha*  
*ylhäällä*  
*ylös*  
*käyttää*  
*vapaa*  
*loma*  
*laukku*  
*laakso*  
*arvo*  
*vihanneksi*  
*oikein*  
*kautta*  
*kylä*  
*käydä*  
*vapaaehtoinen*  
*odottaa*  
*tarjoilija*  
*kävellä*  
*haluta*  
*tahtoa*  
*sota*  
*lämmiin*  
*pesuhuone*  
*kello*  
*vesi*

way  
we  
weapon  
weather  
Wednesday  
week  
weight  
weight  
well, to get  
welcome  
well  
well  
west  
what  
what kind  
wheat  
when  
when  
when  
which  
whiskey  
white  
who  
who  
who  
whole  
wife  
wine

*meno*  
*me*  
*ase*  
*ilma*  
*keskiviikko*  
*viikko*  
*merkitys*  
*paino*  
*parantua*  
*tervetuloa*  
*kaivo*  
*no*  
*länsi*  
*mika*  
*millainen*  
*vehnä*  
*koska*  
*kun*  
*milloin*  
*joka*  
*viski*  
*valkea*  
*joka*  
*ken*  
*kuka*  
*koko*  
*vaimo*  
*viini*

winter  
will, to  
wish  
with  
with  
without  
woman  
wonderful  
wonderful  
wood  
woolen  
word  
work  
work, to  
worker  
working men's institute

*talvi*  
*sähköttää*  
*toivoa*  
*kanssa*  
*mukana*  
*ilman*  
*nainen*  
*ihana*  
*ihmeellinen*  
*puu*  
*villainen*  
*sana*  
*työ*  
*toimia*  
*työläinen*  
*työväenopisto*

worry, to  
worry, to  
worth  
wound  
write, to  
writer  
wrong  
year  
yellow  
yes  
yesterday  
you  
you  
young  
zero

*huolehtia*  
*surra*  
*arvoinen*  
*haava*  
*kirjoittaa*  
*kirjailija*  
*väärä*  
*vuosi*  
*keltainen*  
*kyllä*  
*eilen*  
*sinä*  
*te*  
*nuori*  
*nolla*











142

[illegible]

128158



3 1262 00140 6718

494.541  
S4433

KEEP CARD IN POCKET

Date Due

DUE	RETURNED	DUE	RETURNED
